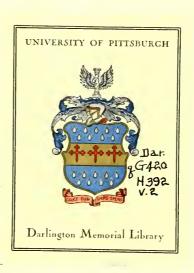
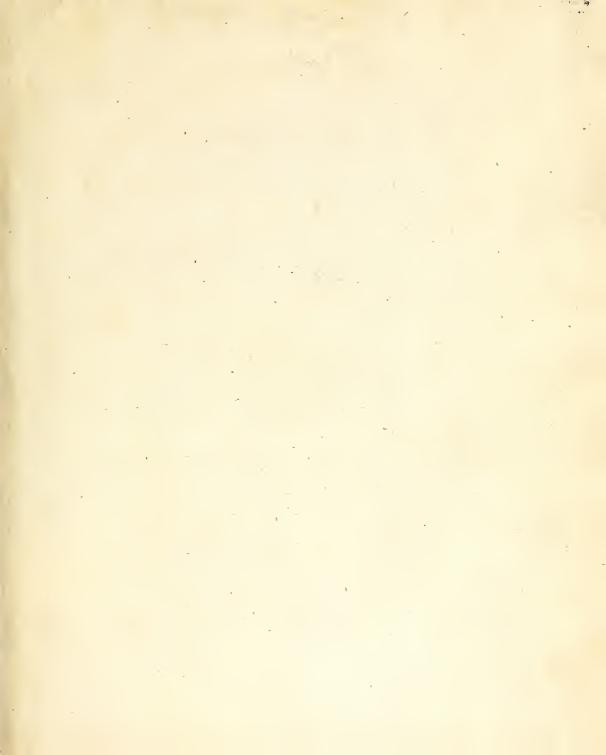
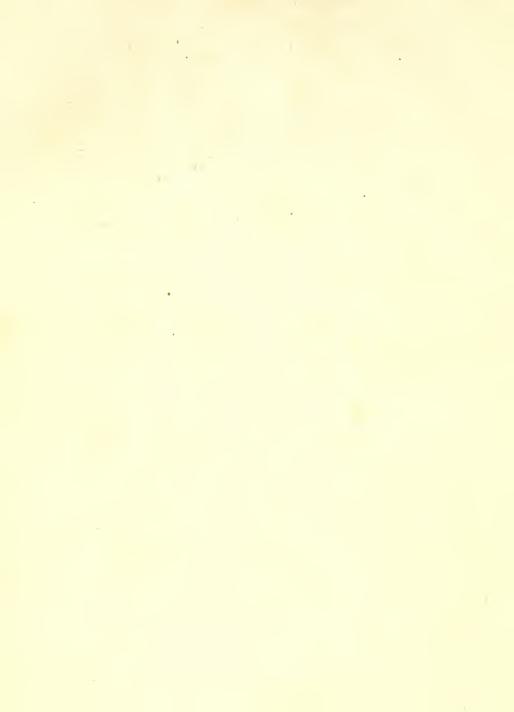


PREMORING (MY KATY
MEMORING (MY KATY
MEMORING (MY KATY
MINISTRACT)







ACCOUNT

OF THE

V O Y A G E S

UNDERTAKEN BY THE

ORDER OF HIS PRESENT MAJESTY

FOR MAKING

Discoveries in the Southern Hemisphere,

And fucceffively performed by

COMMODORE BYRON, CAPTAIN CARTERET, CAPTAIN WALLIS, And CAPTAIN COOK,

In the DOLPHIN, the SWALLOW, and the ENDEAVOUR:

DRAWN UP

From the Journals which were kept by the feveral Commanders, And from the Papers of JOSEPH BANKS, Efq;

By JOHN HAWKESWORTH, LL.D.

IN THREE VOLUMES.

Illustrated with CUTS, and a great Variety of CHARTS and MAPS relative to Countries now first discovered, or hitherto but imperfectly known.

VOL. II.

LONDON:

Printed for W. STRAHAN; and T. CADELL in the Strand.

MDCCLXXIII.



OFTHE

SECOND VOLUME.

BOOK I.

CHAP. I.

The Passage from Plymouth to Madeira, with some Account of that
Island.

CHAP. U.

The Passage from Madeira to Rio de Janeiro, with some Account of the Country, and the Incidents that happened there.

CHAP. III.

The Passage from Rio de Janeiro to the Entrance of the Streight of
Le Maire, with a Description of some of the Inhabitants of Terra
del Fuego.

CHAP. IV.

An Account of what happened in ascending a Mountain to search for Plants.

46

CHAP. V.

The Passage through the Streight of Le Maire, and a further Description of the Inhabitants of Terra del Fuego, and its Productions. 54

CHAP. VI.

A general Description of the south east Part of Terra del Fuego, and the Streight of Le Maire; with some Remarks on Lord Anson's Account

Account of them, and Directions for the Passage Westward, round this Part of America, into the South Seas.

CHAP. VII.

The Sequel of the Passage from Cape Horn to the newly discovered Islands in the South Seas, with a Description of their Figure and Appearance; some Account of the Inhabitants, and several Insidents that happened during the Course, and at the Ship's Arrival among them.

CHAP. VIII.

The Arrival of the Endeavour at Otaheite, called by Captain Wallis, King George the III.'s Island. Rules established for Traffic with the Natives, and an Account of several Incidents which happened in a Visit to Tootahah and Toubourai Tamaida, two Chiefs.

CHAP. IX.

A Place fixed upon for an Observatory and Fort: an Excursion into the Woods, and its Consequences. The Fort erected: a Visit from several Chiefs on board and at the Fort, with some Account of the Music of the Natives, and the Manner in which they dispose of their Dead.

CHAP. X.

An Excursion to the Eastward, an Account of several Incidents that happened both on Board and on Shore, and of the first Interview with Oberea, the Person who, when the Dolphin was here, was supposed to be Queen of the Island, with a Description of the Fort.

CHAP. XI.

The Observatory set up; the Quadrant stolen, and Consequences of the Thest: A Visit to Tootahah: Description of a Wrestling-match: European Seeds sown: Names given to our People by the Indians.

III

CHAP. XII.

Some Ladies wifit the Fort with very uncommon Ceremonies: The Indians attend Divine Service, and in the Evening exhibit a most extraordinary Spectacle: Tubourai Tamaide falls into Temptation. 124

CHAP. XIII.

Another Visit to Tootahah, with various Adventures: Extraordinary Annusement of the Indians, with Remarks upon it: Preparations to observe the Transit of Venus, and what happened in the mean time at the Fort.

CHAP. XIV.

The Ceremonies of an Indian Funeral particularly described: General Observations on the Subject: A Character found among the Indians to which the Ancients paid great Veneration: A Robbery at the Fort, and its Consequences; with a Specimen of Indian Cookery, and various Incidents.

CHAP. XV.

An Account of the Circumnavigation of the Island, and various Incidents that happened during the Expedition; with a Description of a Burying-place and Place of Worship, called a Morai.

CHAP. XVI.

An Expedition of Mr. Banks to trace the River: Marks of Subterraneous Fire: Preparations for leaving the Island: An Account of Tupia.

CHAP. XVII.

A particular Description of the Island; its Produce and Inhabitants; their Dress, Habitations, Food, domestic Life and Amusements. 184

CHAP. XVIII.

Of the Manufactures, Boats, and Navigation of Otaheite.

210

CHAP. XIX.

Of the Division of Time in Otaheite; Numeration, Computation of Distance, Language, Diseases, Disposal of the Dead, Religion, War, Weapons, and Government; with some general Observations for the Use of suture Navigators.

CHAP. XX.

A Description of several other Islands in the Neighbourhood of Otaheite, with various Incidents; a dramatic Entertainment; and many Particulars relative to the Customs and Manners of the Inhabitants.

BOOK II.

CHAP. I.

The Passage from Oteroah to New Zealand; Incidents which happened on going a-shore there, and while the Ship lay in Powerty Bay. 281

CHAP. II.

A Description of Poverty Bay, and the Face of the adjacent Country.

The Range from thence to Cape Turnagain, and back to Tolaga; with some Account of the People and the Country, and several Incidents that happened on that Part of the Coast.

296

CHAP. III.

The Range from Tolaga to Mercury Bay, with an Account of many Incidents that happened both on board and ashore: A Description of several Views exhibited by the Country, and of the Heppahs, or fortified Villages of the Inhabitants.

CHAP. IV.

The Range from Mercury Bay to the Bay of Islands: An Expedition up the River Thames: Some Account of the Indians who inhabit

its

6

its Banks, and the fine Timber that grows there: Several Interviews with the Natives on different Parts of the Coast, and a Skirmish with them upon an Island.

CHAP. V.

Range from the Bay of Islands round North Cape to Queen Charlotte's Sound; and a Description of that Part of the Coast. 371

CHAP. VI.

Transactions in Queen Charlotte's Sound: Passage through the Streight which divides the two Islands, and back to Cape Turnagain: Horrid Custom of the Inhabitants: Remarkable Melody of Birds: A Visit to a Heppah, and many other Particulars. 385



AN

A C C O U N T

OF A

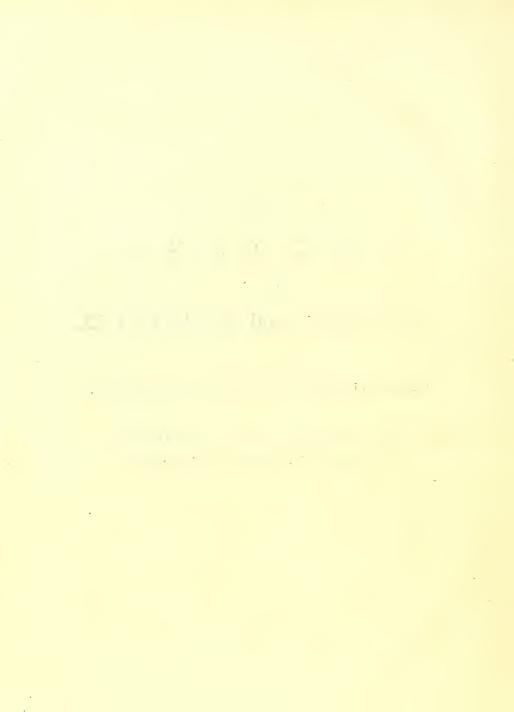
VOYAGE round the WORLD,

IN THE YEARS

MDCCLXVIII, MDCCLXIX, MDCCLXXI, and MDCCLXXI.

By LIEUTENANT JAMES COOK,

Commander of his Majesty's Bark the ENDEAVOUR.



INTRODUCTION.

Have in the General Introduction to this work mentioned the reasons why the Narratives of the several Voyages are written in the person of the Commanders, upon what ground liberty has been taken to introduce such sentiments as the events suggested to me, and what the materials were from which my work has been drawn up. It has also been said, that with respect to the Voyage of the Endeavour, I had still farther assistance, and of this I am now to give an account.

On board this veffel embarked Joseph Banks Esquire, a Gentleman possessed of considerable landed property in Lincolnshire. He received the education of a scholar rather to qualify him for the enjoyments than the labours of life; yet an ardent desire to know more of Nature than could be learnt from books, determined him, at a very early age, to forego what are generally thought to be the principal advantages of a liberal fortune, and to apply his revenue not in procuring the pleasures of leifure and ease, but in the pursuit of his favourite study, through a series of fatigue and danger, which, in such circumstances, have very seldom been voluntarily incurred,

a 2 except

except to gratify the reftless and insatiable desires of avarice or ambition.

Upon his leaving the university of Oxford, in the year 1763, he croffed the Atlantic, and visited the coasts of Newfoundland and Labradore. The danger, difficulty, and inconvenience that attend long voyages are very different in idea and experience; Mr. Banks however returned, undiscouraged, from his first expedition; and when hefound that the Endeavour was equipping for a voyage to the South Seas, in order to observe the Transit of Venus, and afterwards attempt farther discoveries, he determined to embark in the expedition, that he might enrich his native country with a tribute of knowlege from those which have been hitherto unknown, and not without hope of leaving among the rude and uncultivated nations that he might discover, something that would render life of more; value, and enrich them perhaps in a certain degree with the knowlege, or at least with the productions, of Europe.

As he was determined to spare no expence in the execution of his plan, he engaged Dr. Solander to accompany him in the voyage. This Gentleman, by birth a Swede, was educated under the celebrated Linnæus, from whom he brought letters of recommendation into England, and his merit, being soon known, he obtained an appointment in the British Musæum, a public institution which was then just established; such a companion Mr. Banks considered as an acquisition of no small importance, and to his great satisfaction the event abundantly proved that

he was not mistaken. He also took with him two draftsmen, one to delineate views and figures, the other to paint such subjects of natural history as might offer; together with a secretary and sour servants, two of whom were negroes.

Mr. Banks kept an accurate and circumflantial journal of the voyage, and, foon after I had received that of Captain Cook from the Admiralty, was fo obliging as to put it into my hands, with permiffion to take out of it whatever I thought would improve or embellish the narrative. This was an offer of which I gladly and thankfully accepted: I knew the advantage would be great, for few philosophers have furnished materials for accounts of voyages undertaken to discover new countries. The adventurers in such expeditions have generally looked only upon the great outline of Nature, without attending to the variety of shades within, which give life and beauty to the piece.

The papers of Captain Cook contained a very particular account of all the nautical incidents of the voyage, and a very minute description of the figure and extent of the countries he had visited, with the bearings of the headlands and bays that diversify the coasts, the situation of the harbours in which shipping may obtain refreshments, with the depth of water wherever there were soundings; the latitudes, longitudes, variation of the needle, and such other particulars as lay in his department; and abundantly sliewed him to be an excellent officer, and skilful navi-

gator. But in the papers which were communicated to me by Mr. Banks, I found a great variety of incidents which had not come under the notice of Captain Cook, with descriptions of countries and people, their productions, manners, customs, religion, policy, and language, much more full and particular than were expected from a Gentleman whose station and office naturally turned his principal attention to other objects; for these particulars, therefore, besides many practical observations, the Public is indebted to Mr. Banks. To Mr. Banks also the Public is indebted for the defigns of the engravings which illusflrate and adorn the account of this voyage, all of them, except the maps, charts, and views of the coasts as they appear at sea, being copied from his valuable drawings, and some of them from such as were made for the use of the artists at his expence.

As the materials furnished by Mr. Banks were so interesting and copious, there arose an objection against writing an account of this voyage in the person of the Commander, which could have no place with respect to the others; the descriptions and observations of Mr. Banks would be absorbed without any distinction, in a general narrative given under another name: but this objection he generously over-ruled, and it therefore became necessary to give some account of the obligations which he has laid upon the Public and myself in this place. It is indeed fortunate for mankind, when wealth and science, and a strong

flrong inclination to exert the powers of both for purposes of public benefit, unite in the same person; and I cannot but congratulate my country upon the prospect of further pleasure and advantage from the same Gentleman, to whom we are indebted for so considerable a part of this narrative.

ERRATA,

VOL. II.

- P. 13. l. 8. from the bottom, for Charearias, read Carcharias.
- P. 18. parag. 2. l. 3, 4. for Trio, read Frio.
 P. 29. l. 6. from the bottom, for within, read without.
- P. 124. l. 7. from the bottom, for him, read Mr. Banks.
- P. 125. l. 1. for brought them, read brought fix of them.
- P. 256. l. 13. for has, read had.
 - 1. 14. for have, read had.
 - 1. 15. for remain, read remained; and for will, read would.

VOL. III.

- P. 429. l. 3. from the bottom, for is, read are.
- P. 457. 1. 16. for whole, read hole.
- P. 501. l. 3. from the bottom, for were, read had; and dele that each had.
- P. 510. l. 19. for consierable, read considerable.
 P. 626. l. 10. from the bottom, for tracis, read tracks.
- P. 753. 1. 8. from the bottom, for grove, read groove.
- P. 762. 1. 9. for or deposited, read or materials that are deposited.

ACCOUNT

OF A

VOYAGE round the WORLD.

BOOK I.

CHAP. I.

The Passage from Plymouth to Madeira, with some account of that Island.

AVING received my commission, which was dated the 25th of May 1768, I went on board on the 27th, hoisted the pennant, and took charge of the ship, which then lay in the bason in Deptsord Yard. She was fitted for fea with all expedition; and stores and provisions being taken on board, failed down the river on the 30th of Sat. July 30. July, and on the 13th of August anchored in Plymouth Sat. Aug. 13, Sound.

1768.

While we lay here waiting for a wind, the articles of war and the act of parliament were read to the ship's company, who were paid two months wages in advance, and told that they were to expect no additional pay for the performance of the voyage.

On Friday the 26th of August, the wind becoming fair, Friday 26, we got under fail, and put to fea. On the 31st, we faw Wednes 31st feveral of the birds which the failors call Mother Carey's

Vol. II.

B

Chickens,

September. Thursday 1. Chickens, and which they suppose to be the forerunners of a storm; and on the next day we had a very hard gale, which brought us under our courses, washed over-board a small boat belonging to the Boatswain, and drowned three or four dozen of our poultry, which we regretted still more.

Friday 2.

Monday 5.

On Friday the 2d of September we faw land, between Cape Finister and Cape Ortegal, on the coast of Gallicia, in Spain; and on the 5th, by an observation of the sun and moon, we found the latitude of Cape Finister to be 42° 53′ North, and its longitude 8° 46′West, our first meridian being always supposed to pass through Greenwich; variation of the needle 21° 4′ West.

During this courfe, Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander had an opportunity of observing many marine animals, of which no naturalist has hitherto taken notice; particularly, a new species of the Onifcus, which was found adhering to the Medufa Pelagica; and an animal of an angular figure, about three inches long and one thick, with a hollow paffing quite through it, and a brown fpot on one end, which they conjectured might be its stomach; four of these adhered together by their fides when they were taken, so that at first they were thought to be one animal, but upon being put into a glass of water they foon separated, and swam about very brifkly. These animals are of a new genus, to which Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander gave the name of Dagyla, from the likeness of one species of them to a gem: several specimens of them were taken adhering together fometimes to the length of a yard or more, and shining in the water with very beautiful colours. Another animal of a new genus they also discovered, which shone in the water with colours ftill more beautiful and vivid, and which indeed exceeded in variety and brightness any thing that we had ever feen: the colouring and fplendour of these animals were equal to those

3

of an Opal, and from their resemblance to that gem, the genus was called Carcinium Opalinum. One of them lived feveral hours in a glass of falt water, swimming about with great agility, and at every motion displaying a change of colours almost infinitely various. We caught also among the rigging of the ship, when we were at the distance of about ten leagues from Cape Finister, several birds which have not been described by Linnæus; they were supposed to have come from Spain, and our gentlemen called the species Motacilla velificans, as they faid none but failors would venture themfelves on board a ship that was going round the world: one of them was fo exhausted that it died in Mr. Banks's hand, almost as foon as it was brought to him.

It was thought extraordinary that no naturalist had hitherto taken notice of the Dagysa, as the sea abounds with them not twenty leagues from the coast of Spain; but, unfortunately for the cause of science, there are but very few of those who traverse the sea, that are either disposed or qualified to remark the curiofities of which Nature has made it the repofitory.

On the 12th we discovered the islands of Porto Santo and Monday 121 Madeira, and on the next day anchored in Funchiale road, and moored with the stream-anchor: but, in the night, the bend of the hawfer of the stream-anchor slipped, owing to the negligence of the person who had been employed to make it fast. In the morning the anchor was heaved up into the boat, and carried out to the fouthward; but in heaving it again, Mr. Weir, the mafter's mate, was carried overboard by the buoy-rope, and went to the bottom with the anchor: the people in the ship faw the accident, and got the anchor up with all possible expedition; it was however too late, the body came up intangled in the buoy-rope, but it was dead.

1768. September. When the island of Madeira is first approached from the sea, it has a very beautiful appearance; the sides of the hills being intirely covered with vines almost as high as the eye can distinguish, and the vines are green when every kind of herbage, except where they shade the ground, and here and there by the sides of a rill, is intirely burnt up, which was the case at this time.

Tuefday 13.

On the 13th, about eleven o'clock in the forenoon, a boat, which our failors call the product boat, came on board from the officers of health, without whose permission no person is fuffered to land from on board a ship. As soon as this permission was obtained, we went on shore at Funchiale, the capital of the island, and proceeded directly to the house of Mr. Cheap, who is the English conful there, and one of the most considerable merchants of the place. This gentleman received us, with the kindness of a brother, and the liberality of a prince; he infifted upon our taking possession of his house, in which he furnished us with every possible accommodation during our flay upon the ifland: he procured leave for Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander to fearch the island for fuch natural curiofities as they fhould think worth their notice; employed perfons to take fifh and gather shells, which time would not have permitted them to collect for themselves; and he provided horses and guides to take them to any part of the country which they should chuse to visit. With all these advantages, however, their excursions were feldom pushed farther than three miles from the town, as they were only five days on shore; one of which they spent at home, in receiving the honour of a visit from the governor. The feafon was the worst in the year for their purpose, as it was neither that of plants nor infects; a few of the plants, however, were procured in flower, by the kind attention of Dr.

Heberden.

5

Heberden, the chief physician of the island, and brother to Dr. Heberden of London, who also gave them such specimens as he had in his possession, and a copy of his Botanical Observations; containing, among other things, a particular description of the trees of the island. Mr. Banks enquired after the wood which has been imported into England for cabinet work, and is here called Madeira mahogany: he learnt that no wood was exported from the island under that name, but he found a tree called by the natives Vigniatico, the Laurus indicus of Linnæus, the wood of which cannot eafily be diftinguished from mahogany. Dr. Heberden has a book-case in which the vigniatico and mahogany are mixed, and they are no otherwife to be known from each other than by the colour, which, upon a nice examination, appears to be fomewhat less brown in the vigniatico than the mahogany; it is therefore in the highest degree probable, that the wood known in England by the name of Madeira mahogany, is the vigniatico.

There is great reason to suppose that this whole island was, at some remote period, thrown up by the explosion of subterraneous fire, as every stone, whether whole or in fragments, that we saw upon it appeared to have been burnt, and even the sand itself to be nothing more than ashes: we did not, indeed, see much of the country, but the people informed us that what we did see was a very exact specimen of the rest.

The only article of trade in this island is wine, and the manner in which it is made is so simple, that it might have been used by Noah, who is said to have planted the first vineyard after the flood: the grapes are put into a square wooden vessel, the dimensions of which are proportioned to the size of the vineyard to which it belongs; the servants

1768. September. then, having taken off their stockings and jackets, get into it, and with their feet and elbows, press out as much of the juice as they can: the stalks are afterwards collected, and being tied together with a rope, are put under a square piece of wood, which is preffed down upon them by a lever with a stone tied to the end of it. The inhabitants have made fo little improvement in knowlege or art, that they have but very lately brought all the fruit of a vineyard to be of one fort, by engrafting their vines: there feems to be in mind as there is in matter, a kind of vis inertia, which refifts the first impulse to change. He who proposes to affist the artificer or the husbandman by a new application of the principles of philosophy, or the powers of mechanism, will find, that his having hitherto done without them, will be a ftronger motive for continuing to do without them still, than any advantage, however manifest and considerable, for adopting the improvement. Wherever there is ignorance there is prejudice; and the common people of all nations are, with respect to improvements, like the parish poor of England with respect to a maintenance, for whom the law must not only make a provision, but compel them to accept it, or elfe they will be still found begging in the streets. It was therefore with great difficulty that the people of Madeira were perfuaded to engraft their vines, and fome of them ftill obstinately refuse to adopt the practice, though a whole vintage is very often spoiled by the number of bad grapes which are mixed in the vat, and which they will not throw out, because they increase the quantity of the wine: an inflance of the force of habit, which is the more extraordinary, as they have adopted the practice of engrafting with respect to their chesnut-trees, an object of much less importance, which, however, are thus brought to bear fooner than they would otherwife have done.

7

We faw no wheel-carriages of any fort in the place, which perhaps is not more owing to the want of ingenuity to invent them, than to the want of industry to mend the roads, which, at prefent, it is impossible that any wheel-carriage should pass: the inhabitants have horses and mules indeed, excellently adapted to fuch ways; but their wine is, notwithflanding, brought to town from the vineyards where it is made, in vessels of goat-skins, which are carried by men upon their heads. The only imitation of a carriage among these people is a board, made somewhat hollow in the middle, to one end of which a pole is tied, by a strap of whitleather: this wretched fledge approaches about as near to an English cart, as an Indian canoe to a ship's long-boat; and even this would probably never have been thought of, if the English had not introduced wine vessels which are too big to be carried by hand, and which, therefore, are dragged about the town upon these machines.

One reason, perhaps, why art and industry have done so little for Madeira is, Nature's having done fo much. The foil is very rich, and there is fuch a difference of climate between the plains and the hills, that there is fcarcely a fingle object of luxury that grows either in Europe or the-Indies, that might not be produced here. When we went to visit Dr. Heberden, who lives upon a considerable ascent. about two miles from town, we left the thermometer at 74, and when we arrived at his house, we found it at 66. The hills produce, almost spontaneously, walnuts, chesnuts, and apples in great abundance; and in the town there are many plants which are the natives both of the East and West Indies, particularly the banana, the guava, the pine-apple or anana, and the mango, which flourish almost without culture. The corn of this country is of a most excellent quality, large grained and very fine, and the island would produce

1768. September. it in great plenty; yet most of what is consumed by the inhabitants is imported. The mutton, pork, and beef are also very good; the beef in particular, which we took on board here, was universally allowed to be fearcely inferior to our own; the lean part was very like it, both in colour and grain, though the beasts are much smaller, but the fat is as white as the fat of mutton.

The town of Funchiale derives its name from Funcho, the Portuguese name for fennel, which grows in great plenty upon the neighbouring rocks, and, by the observation of Dr. Heberden, lies in the latitude of 32° 33′ 33″ N. and longitude 16° 49' W. It is fituated in the bottom of a bay, and though larger than the extent of the island feems to deferve, is very ill built; the houses of the principal inhabitants are large, those of the common people are small, the streets are narrow, and worse paved than any I ever faw. The churches are loaded with ornaments, among which are many pictures, and images of favourite faints, but the pictures are in general wretchedly painted, and the faints are dreffed in laced clothes. Some of the convents are in a better tafte, especially that of the Franciscans, which is plain, simple, and neat in the highest degree. The infirmary in particular drew our attention as a model which might be adopted in other countries with great advantage. It confilts of a long room, on one fide of which are the windows, and an altar for the convenience of administering the facrament to the fick: the other fide is divided into wards, each of which is just big enough to contain a bed, and neatly lined with gally-tiles; behind these wards, and parallel to the room in which they fland, there runs a long gallery, with which each ward communicates by a door, fo that the fick may be feparately fupplied with whatever they want without difturbing their neighbours. In this convent there is also a fingular

September.

fingular curiofity of another kind; a finall chapel, the whole lining of which, both fides and ceiling, is composed of human sculls and thigh bones; the thigh bones are laid across each other, and a scull is placed in each of the four angles. Among the sculls one is very remarkable; the upper and the lower jaw, on one side, perfectly and firmly cohere; how the offisication which unites them was formed, it is not perhaps very easy to conceive, but it is certain that the patient must have lived some time without opening his mouth: what nourishment he received was conveyed through a hole which we discovered to have been made on the other side, by forcing out some of the teeth, in doing which the jaw also seems to have been injured.

We visited the good Fathers of this convent on a Thursday evening, just before supper-time, and they received us with great politeness; "We will not ask you, faid they, to sup "with us, because we are not prepared, but if you will come to-morrow, though it is a fast with us, we will have a turkey roasted for you." This invitation, which shewed a liberality of sentiment not to have been expected in a convent of Portuguese Friars at this place, gratisted us much, though it was not in our power to accept it.

We visited also a convent of nuns, dedicated to Santa Clara, and the Ladies did us the honour to express a particular pleasure in seeing us there: they had heard that there were great philosophers among us, and not at all knowing what were the objects of philosophical knowlege, they asked us several questions that were absurd and extravagant in the highest degree; one was, when it would thunder; and another, whether a spring of fresh water was to be found any where within the walls of their convent, of which it seems they were in great want. It will naturally be supposed that our answers to such questions were neither satisfactory to

1768. September. the Ladies, nor, in their estimation, honourable to us; yet their disappointment did not in the least lessen their civility, and they talked, without ceasing, during the whole of our visit, which lasted about half an hour.

The hills of this country are very high; the higheft, Pico Ruivo, rifes 5,068 feet, near an English mile, perpendicularly from its base, which is much higher than any land that has been measured in Great Britain. The sides of these hills are covered with vines to a certain height, above which there are woods of chesnut and pine of immense extent, and above them forests of wild timber of various kinds not known in Europe; particularly two, called by the Portuguese Mirmulano and Paobranco, the leaves of both which, particularly the Paobranco, are so beautiful, that these trees would be a great ornament to the gardens of Europe.

The number of inhabitants in this island is supposed to be about 80,000, and the custom-house duties produce a revenue to the king of Portugal of 20,000 pounds a-year, clear of all expences, which might easily be doubled by the product of the island, exclusive of the vines, if advantage was taken of the excellence of the climate, and the amazing fertility of the soil; but this object is utterly neglected by the Portuguese. In the trade of the inhabitants of Madeira with Lisbon the balance is against them, so that all the Portuguese money naturally going thither, the currency of the island is Spanish; there are indeed a few Portuguese pieces of copper, but they are so scarce that we did not see one of them: the Spanish coin is of three denominations; Pistereens, worth about a shilling; Bitts, worth about six pence; and Half-bitts, three pence.

The tides at this place flow at the full and change of the moon, north and fouth; the fpring tides rife feven feet perpendicular,

ROUND THE WORLD.

pendicular, and the neap tides four. By Dr. Heberden's obfervation, the variation of the compass here is now 15° 30′ West, and decreasing; but I have some doubt whether he is not mistaken with respect to its decrease: we found that the North point of the dipping needle belonging to the Royal Society dipped 77° 18″.

1768. September.

The refreshments to be had here, are water, wine, fruit of feveral forts, onions in plenty, and some sweetmeats; fresh meat and poultry are not to be had without leave from the governor, and the payment of a very high price.

We took in 270 lb. of fresh beef, and a live bullock, charged at 613 lb. 3,032 gallons of water, and ten tuns of wine; and in the night, between Sunday the 18th and Mon-Sunday 18. day the 19th of September, we set fail in prosecution of Monday 19. our voyage.

When Funchiale bore North, 13 East, at the distance of 76 miles, the variation appeared by several azimuths to be 16° 30′ West.

CHAP. II.

The Passage from Madeira to Rio de Janeiro, with some account of the Country, and the Incidents that bappened there.

N the 21st of September we saw the islands called the Salvages, to the north of the Canaries; when the prin-Wednes, 21. cipal of these bore S. 1/2 W. at the distance of about 5 leagues we found the variation of the compass by an azimuth to be 17° 50'. I make these islands to lie in latitude 30° 11' North, and distant 58 leagues from Funchiale in Madeira, in the direction of S. 16 E.

Friday 23.

On Friday the 23d we faw the Peak of Teneriffe bearing W. by S. S. and found the variation of the compass to be from 17° 22' to 16° 30'. The height of this mountain, from which I took a new departure, has been determined by Dr. Heberden, who has been upon it, to be 15,396 feet, which is but 148 yards less than three miles, reckoning the mile at 1760 yards. Its appearance at funfet was very striking; when the fun was below the horizon, and the rest of the island appeared of a deep black, the mountain still reslected his rays, and glowed with a warmth of colour which no painting can express. There is no eruption of visible fire from it, but a heat iffues from the chinks near the top, too flrong to be borne by the hand when it is held near them. We had received from Dr. Heberden, among other favours, fome falt which he collected on the top of the mountain, where it is found in large quantities, and which he supposes to be the true natrum or nitrum of the ancients: he gave us

also some native sulphur exceedingly pure, which he had likewise found upon the surface in great plenty.

1768. September.

On the next day, Saturday the 24th, we came into the Saturday 24. north-east trade wind, and on Friday the 30th saw Bona Vista, Friday 30. one of the Cape de Verd Islands; we ranged the east fide of it, at the distance of three or four miles from the shore, till we were obliged to haul off to avoid a ledge of rocks which ftretch out S. W. by W. from the body, or S. E. point of the island, to the extent of a league and an half. Bona Vista by our observation lies in latitude 16 N. and longitude 21° 51' Weft.

On the first of October, in latitude 14° 6' N. and longitude 22° 10' W. we found the variation by a very good azimuth to be 10°37' W. and the next morning it appeared to be 10°. Sunday 24 This day we found the ship five miles a-head of the log, and the next day feven. On the third, hoisted out the boat to Monday 36 discover whether there was a current, and found one to the eastward, at the rate of three quarters of a mile an hour.

During our course from Tenerisse to Bona Vista we saw great numbers of flying fish, which from the cabbin windows appear beautiful beyond imagination, their fides having the colour and brightness of burnished silver; when they are feen from the deck they do not appear to fo much advantage, because their backs are of a dark colour. We also took a Shark, which proved to be the Squalus Charearias of Linnæus.

Having loft the trade wind on the third, in latitude 12° 14' and longitude 22° 10, the wind became fomewhat variable, and we had light airs and calms by turns.

On the feventh, Mr. Banks went out in the boat and took Friday 7. what the feamen call a Portuguese man of war; it is the Holothuria Physalis of Linnæus, and a species of the Mollusca.

1768. October. It confifted of a small bladder about seven inches long, very much resembling the air-bladder of sishes, from the bottom of which descended a number of strings, of a bright blue and red, some of them three or sour feet in length, which upon being touched sting like a nettle, but with much more force. On the top of the bladder is a membrane which is used as a fail, and turned so as to receive the wind which way soever it blows: this membrane is marked in sine pink coloured veins, and the animal is in every respect an object exquisitely curious and beautiful.

We also took several of the shell-fishes, or testaceous animals, which are always found floating upon the water, particularly the Helix Janthina and Violacea; they are about the fize of a snail, and are supported upon the surface of the water by a small cluster of bubbles, which are filled with air and confift of a tenaceous flimy fubflance that will not eafily part with its contents; the animal is oviparous, and these bubbles ferve also as a nidus for its eggs. It is probable that it never goes down to the bottom, nor willingly approaches any shore; for the shell is exceedingly brittle, and that of few fresh water snails is so thin: every shell contains about a tea-spoonful of liquor, which it easily discharges upon being touched, and which is of the most beautiful red purple that can be conceived. It dies linen cloth, and it may perhaps be worth enquiry, as the shell is certainly found in the Mediterranean, whether it be not the Purpura of the ancients.

Saturday 8.

On the 8th, in latitude 8° 25' North, longitude 22° 4' West, we found a current setting to the southward, which the next day in latitude 7° 58' longitude 22° 13' shifted to the N.N.W. ²/₄ W. at the rate of one mile and a furlong an hour. The variation here, by the mean of several azimuths, appeared to be 8° 39' West.

On

On the tenth, Mr. Banks fhot the black-toed gull, not yet described according to Linnaus's system; he gave it the name of Larus crepidatus: it is remarkable that the dung of this bird is of a lively red, fomewhat like that of the liquor procured from the shells, only not so full; its principal food therefore is probably the Helix just mentioned. A current to the N.W. prevailed more or lefs till Monday the 24th, Monday 24. when we were in latitude 1° 7' N. and longitude 28° 50'.

1768. October. Monday 10.

On the 25th, we croffed the line with the usual ceremonies Tuesday 25. in longitude 29° 30', when, by the refult of feveral very good

On the 28th, at noon, being in the latitude of Ferdinand Friday 28. Noronba, and, by the mean of feveral observations by Mr. Green and myfelf, in longitude 32° 5′ 16" W. which is to the westward of it by some charts, and to the eastward by others. we expected to fee the island, or some of the shoals that are laid down in the charts between it and the main, but we faw neither one nor the other.

azimuths, the variation was 2° 24'.

In the evening of the 29th, we observed that luminous Saturday 200 appearance of the fea which has been fo often mentioned by navigators, and of which fuch various causes have been affigned; fome supposing it to be occasioned by fish, which agitated the water by darting at their prey, some by the putrefaction of fish and other marine animals, some by electricity, and others referring it into a great variety of different causes. It appeared to emit flashes of light exactly refembling those of lightning, only not so considerable, but they were fo frequent that fometimes eight or ten were visible almost at the same moment. We were of opinion that they proceeded from fome luminous animal, and upon throwing out the casting net our opinion was confirmed: it brought up a species of the Medusa, which when it came on

board

1768. October. board had the appearance of metal violently heated, and emitted a white light: with these animals were taken some very small crabs, of three different species, each of which gave as much light as a glow-worm, though the creature was not so large by nine tenths: upon examination of these animals Mr. Banks had the satisfaction to find that they were all entirely new.

November. Wednef. 2. On Wednesday the 2d of November, about noon, being in the latitude of 10° 38′ S. and longitude 32° 13′ 43″ W. we passed the line in which the needle at this time would have pointed due north and south, without any variation: for in the morning, having decreased gradually in its deviation for some days, it was no more than 18′ W. and in the afternoon it was 34′ East.

Sunday 6.

On the 6th, being in latitude 19° 3' South, longitude 35° 50' West, the colour of the water was observed to change, upon which we sounded, and sound ground at the depth of 32 fathoms; the lead was cast three times within about sour hours, without a foot difference in the depth or quality of the bottom, which was coral rock, fine sand, and shells; we therefore supposed that we had passed over the tail of the great shoal which is laid down in all our charts by the name of Abrothos, on which Lord Anson struck soundings in his passage outwards: at four the next morning we had no ground with 100 fathom.

Monday 7.

As feveral articles of our flock and provisions now began to fall fhort, I determined to put into Rio de Janeiro, rather than at any port in Brazil or Falkland's Islands, knowing that it could better fupply us with what we wanted, and making no doubt but that we should be well received.

Tuefday 8.

On the 8th, at day-break, we faw the coast of Brazil, and about ten o'clock we brought to, and spoke with a fishing-

boat ;

boat; the people on board told us that the land which we faw, lay to the fouthward of Santlo Espirito, but belonged to the captainship of that place.

1768. November.

Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went on board this veffel. in which they found eleven men, nine of whom were Blacks; they all fished with lines, and their fresh cargo, the chief part of which Mr. Banks bought, confifted of dolphins, large pelagic fcombers of two kinds, fea bream, and fome of the fish which in the West Indies are called Welshmen. Mr. Banks had taken Spanish silver with him, which he imagined to be the currency of the continent, but to his great furprize the people asked him for English shillings; he gave them two which he happened to have about him, and it was not without some dispute that they took the rest of the money in piftereens. Their business seemed to be to catch large fish at a good distance from the shore, which they falted in bulk, in a place made for that purpose in the middle of their boat: of this merchandize they had about two quintals on board, which they offered for about 16 shillings, and would probably have fold for half the money. The fresh fish, which was bought for about nineteen shillings and fix pence, ferved the whole ship's company; the falt was not wanted.

The fea provision of these fishermen consisted of nothing more than a cask of water, and a bag of Cassada flour, which they called *Farinha de Pao*, or wooden flour, which indeed is a name which very well fuits its taste and appearance. Their water cask was large, as wide as their boat, and exactly sitted a place that was made for it in the ballast; it was impossible therefore to draw out any of its contents by a tap, the sides being, from the bottom to the top, wholly inaccessible; neither could any be taken out by dipping a Vol. II.

1768. November. veffel in at the head, for an opening fufficiently wide for that purpose would have endangered the loss of great part of it by the rolling of the veffel: their expedient to get at their water, so fituated, was curious; when one of them wanted to drink, he applied to his neighbour, who accompanied him to the water cask with a hollow cane about three feet long, which was open at both ends; this he thrust into the cask through a small hole in the top, and then, stopping the upper end with the palm of his hand, drew it out; the pressure of the air against the other end keeping in the water which it contained; to this end the person who wanted to drink applied his mouth, and the affistant then taking his hand from the other, and admitting the air above, the canes immediately parted with its contents, which the drinker drew off till he was satisfied.

Saturday 12.

We flood off and on along the shore till the 12th, and fucceffively faw a remarkable hill near Santo Espirito, then-Cape St. Thomas, and then an island just without Cape Trio, which in fome maps is called the island of Trio, and which being high, with a hollow in the middle, has the appearance of two islands when feen at a distance. On this day we flood along the shore for Rio de Janeiro, and at nine the next morning made fail for the harbour. I then fent Mr. Hicks, my first Lieutenant, before us in the pinnace, up to the city, to acquaint the Governor, that we put in there to procure water and refreshments; and to defire the assistance of a pilot to bring us into proper anchoring ground. continued to fland up the river, trufting to Mr. Bellisle's draught, published in the Petit Atlas maritime, Vol. II. Nº 54, which we found very good, till five o'clock in the evening, expecting the return of my Lieutenant; and just as I wasabout to anchor, above the island of Cobras, which lies be-

Sanday 13.

fore the city, the pinnace came back without him, having on board a Portuguese officer, but no pilot. The people in the boat told me, that my Lieutenant was detained by the Viceroy till I should go on shore. We came immediately to an anchor; and, almost at the same time, a ten oared boat, full of foldiers, came up and kept rowing round the ship, without exchanging a word: in lefs than a quarter of an hour, another boat came on board with feveral of the Viceroy's officers, who asked, Whence we came; what was our cargo; the number of men and guns on board; the object of our voyage, and feveral other questions, which we directly and truly answered: they then told me, as a kind of apology for detaining my Lieutenant, and putting an officer on board my pinnace, that it was the invariable custom of the place, to detain the first officer who came on shore from any ship on her arrival, till a boat from the Viceroy had visited her, and to suffer no boat to go either from or to a fhip, while fhe lay there, without having a foldier on board. They faid that I might go on shore when I pleased; but wished that every other person might remain on board till the paper which they should draw up had been delivered to the Viceroy, promifing that, immediately upon their return, the Lieutenant should be fent on board.

This promife was performed; and, on the next morning, Monday 140 the 14th, I went on shore, and obtained leave of the Viceroy to purchase provisions and refreshments for the ship, provided I would employ one of their own people as a factor, but not otherwise. I made some objections to this, but he infifted upon it as the custom of the place. I objected also against the putting a soldier into the boat every time she went between the ship and the shore; but he told me, that this was done by the express orders of his court, with which he could in no case dispense. I then requested, that the Gentlemen

1768. November. whom I had on board might refide on fhore during our flay, and that Mr. Banks might go up the country to gather plants; but this he absolutely refused. I judged from his extremeeaution, and the feverity of these restrictions, that he sufpected we were come to trade; I therefore took fome pains to convince him of the contrary. I told him, that we were bound to the fouthward, by the order of his Britannic Majefty, to observe a transit of the planet Venus over the Sun, an astronomical phænomenon of great importance to navigation. Of the transit of Venus, however, he could form noother conception, than that it was the paffing of the North Star through the South Pole; for these are the very words of his interpreter, who was a Swede, and spoke English very well. I did not think it necessary to ask permission for the Gentlemen to come on shore during the day, or that, when I was on shore myself, I might be at liberty, taking for granted that nothing was intended to the contrary; but inthis I was unfortunately mistaken. As soon as I took leaveof his Excellency, I found an officer who had orders to attend me wherever I went: of this I defired an explanation, and was told that it was meant as a compliment; I earneftly defired to be excused from accepting such an honour, but the good Viceroy would by no means fuffer it to be dispensed with.

With this officer, therefore, I returned on board, about twelve o'clock, where I was impatiently expected by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, who made no doubt but that a fair account of us having been given by the officers who had been on board the evening before, in their paper called a *Practica*, and every feruple of the Viceroy removed in my conference with his Excellency, they should immediately be at liberty to go on shore, and dispose of themselves as they pleased. Their disappointment at receiving my report may

November.

eafily be conceived; and it was still increased by an account, that it had been resolved, not only to prevent their residing on fhore, and going up the country, but even their leaving the fhip; orders having been given, that no person except the Captain, and fuch common failors as were required to be upon duty, should be permitted to land; and that there was probably a particular view to the paffengers in this prohibition, as they were reported to be Gentlemen fent abroad to make observations and discoveries, and were uncommonly qualified for that purpose. In the evening, however, Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander dreffed themfelves, and attempted to go on shore, in order to make a visit to the Viceroy; but they were stopped by the guard-boat which had come off with our pinnace, and which kept hovering round the shipall the while she lay here, for that purpose; the officer on board faying, that he had particular orders, which he could not disobey, to suffer no passenger, nor any officer, except the Captain, to pass the boat. After much exposulation to no purpose, they were obliged, with whatever reluctance and mortification, to return on board. I then went on shore myfelf, but found the Viceroy inflexible; he had one anfwer ready for every thing I could fay, That the restrictions under which he had laid us, were in obedience to the King of Portugal's commands, and therefore indispensible.

In this fituation I determined, rather than be made a prifoner in my own boat, to go on fhore no more; for the officer who, under pretence of a compliment, attended me when I was ashore, infifted also upon going with me to and from the ship: but still imagining, that the scrupulous vigilance of the Viceroy must proceed from some mistaken notion about us, which might more easily be removed by writing than in conversation, I drew up a memorial, and Mr. Banks drew up another, which we fent on shore. These memorials

1768. November.

Sunday 20.

were both answered, but by no means to our satisfaction; we therefore replied: in confequence of which, feveral other papers were interchanged between us and the Viceroy, but flill without effect. However, as I thought fome degree of force, on the part of the Viceroy, to enforce these restrictions, necessary to justify my acquiescence in them to the admiralty; I gave orders to my Lieutenant, Mr. Hicks, when I fent him with our last reply on Sunday the 20th, in the evening, not to fuffer a guard to be put into his boat. When the officer on board the guard-boat found that Mr. Hicks was determined to obey my orders, he did not proceed to force, but attended him to the landing-place, and reported the matter to the Viceroy. Upon this his Excellency refused to receive the memorial, and ordered Mr. Hicks to return to the ship; when he came back to the boat, he found that a guard had been put on board in his absence, but he absolutely refused to return till the soldier was removed: the officer then proceeded to enforce the Viceroy's orders; he feized all the boat's crew, and fent them under an armed force to prison, putting Mr. Hicks at the same time into one of their own boats, and fending him under a guard back to the fhip. As foon as he had reported thefe particulars, I wrote again to the Viceroy, demanding my boat and crew, and in my letter inclosed the memorial which he had refused to receive from Mr. Hicks: these papers I fent by a petty officer, that I might wave the dispute about a guard, against which I had never objected except when there was a commissioned officer on board the boat. The petty officer was permitted to go on shore with his guard, and, having delivered his letter, was told that an answer would be fent the next day.

About eight o'clock this evening it began to blow very hard in fudden gufts from the South, and our long-boat coming

1768. November.

coming on board just at this time with four pipes of rum, the rope which was thrown to her from the ship, and which was taken hold of by the people on board, unfortunately broke, and the boat, which had come to the ship before the wind, went adrift to windward of her, with a fmall skiff of Mr. Banks's that was fastened to her stern. This was a great misfortune, as the pinnace being detained on shore, we had no boat on board but a four oar'd yawl: the vawl. however, was immediately manned and fent to her affiftance; but, notwithstanding the utmost effort of the people in both boats, they were very foon out of fight: far indeed we could not fee at that time in the evening, but the distance was enough to convince us that they were not under command, which gave us great uneafiness, as we knew they must drive directly upon a reef of rocks which ran out just to leeward of where we lay: after waiting some hours in the utmost anxiety, we gave them over for lost, but about three o'clock the next morning had the fatisfaction to fee all the Monday 214 people come on board in the yawl. From them we learnt, that the long-boat having filled with water, they had brought her to a grappling and left her; and that, having fallen in with the reef of rocks in their return to the ship, they had been obliged to cut Mr. Banks's little boat adrift. As the lofs of our long-boat, which we had now too much reason to apprehend, would have been an unspeakable disadvantage to us, confidering the nature of our expedition, I fent another letter to the Viceroy, as foon as I thought he could be feen, acquainting him with our misfortune, and requesting the affiftance of a boat from the shore for the recovery of our own; I also renewed my demand that the pinnace and her crew should be no longer detained: after some delay, his Excellency thought fit to comply both with my request and demand; and the fame day we happily recovered both the

November. Wednes. 23.

long-boat and skiff, with the rum, but every thing else that was on board was loft. On the 23d, the Viceroy, in his anfwer to my remonstrance against feizing my men and detaining the boat, acknowledged that I had been treated with fome incivility, but faid that the refistance of my officers, to what he had declared to be the King's orders, made it abfolutely necessary; he also expressed some doubts whether the Endeavour, confidering her ftructure and other circumflances, was in the fervice of his Majesty, though I had before shewed him my commission: to this I answered in writing, That, to remove all fcruples, I was ready to produce my commission again. His Excellency's scruples however still remained, and in his reply to my letter he not only expressed them in still plainer terms, but accused my people of smuggling. This charge, I am confident, was without the leaft foundation in truth. Mr. Banks's fervants had indeed found means to go on shore on the 22d at day-break, and stay till it was dark in the evening, but they brought on board only plants and infects, having been fent for no other purpofe. And I had the greatest reason to believe that not a single article was fmuggled by any of our people who were admitted on fhore, though many artful means were used to tempt them even by the very officers that were under his Excellency's roof, which made the charge still more injurious and provoking. I have indeed fome reason to suspect that one poor fellow bought a fingle bottle of rum with some of the clothes upon his back; and in my answer I requested of his Excellency, that, if fuch an attempt at illicit trade fhould be repeated, he would without fcruple order the offender to be taken into cuftody. And thus ended our altercation, both by conference and writing, with the Viceroy of Rio de Janeiro.

A friar in the town having requested the assistance of our furgeon, Dr. Solander easily got admittance in that character on the 25th, and received many marks of civility Friday 25. from the people. On the 26th, before day-break, Mr. Saturday 26. Banks also found means to elude the vigilance of the people in the guard-boat, and got on shore; he did not however go into the town, for the principal objects of his curiofity were to be found in the fields: to him also the people behaved with great civility, many of them invited him to their houses, and he bought a porker and some other things of them for the ship's company; the porker, which was by no means lean, cost him eleven shillings, and he paid something less than two for a Muscovy duck.

On the 27th, when the boats returned from watering, the Sunday 27. people told us there was a report in town, that fearch was making after some persons who had been on shore from the ship without the Viceroy's permission; these persons we conjectured to be Dr. Solander and Mr. Banks, and therefore they determined to go on shore no more.

On the 1st of December, having got our water and other December, necessaries on board, I fent to the Viceroy for a pilot to carry Thursday i. us to fea, who came off to us; but the wind preventing us from getting out, we took on board a plentiful fupply of fresh beef, yams and greens for the ship's company. On the 2d, a Spanish packet arrived, with letters from Friday 2. Buenos Ayres for Spain, commanded by Don Antonio de Monte Negro y Velasco, who with great politeness offered to take our letters to Europe: I accepted the favour, and gave him a packet for the Secretary of the Admiralty, containing copies of all the papers that had paffed between me and the Viceroy; leaving also duplicates with the Viceroy, to be by him forwarded to Lifbon.

December.
Monday 5.

On Monday the 5th, it being a dead calm, we weighted anchor and towed down the bay; but, to our great aftonishment, when we got abreast of Santa Cruz, the principal fortification, two shot were fired at us. We immediately cast anchor, and sent to the fort to enquire the reason of what had happened: our people brought us word, That the Commandant had received no order from the Viceroy to let us pass; and that, without such an order, no vessel was ever suffered to go below the fort. It was now, therefore, become necessary that we should send to the Viceroy, to enquire why the necessary order had not been given, as he had notice of our departure, and had thought sit to write me a polite letter, wishing me a good voyage. Our messenger soon returned with an account, that the order had been written some days, but by an unaccountable negligence not sent.

Wednef. 7.

We did not get under fail till the 7th; and, when we had passed the fort, the pilot desired to be discharged. As soon as he was dismissed, we were left by our guard-boat, which had hovered about us from the first hour of our being in this place to the last: and Mr. Banks, having been prevented from going ashore at Rio de Janeiro, availed himself of her departure to examine the neighbouring islands, where, particularly on one in the mouth of the harbour called Raza, he gathered many species of plants, and caught a variety of insects.

It is remarkable, that, during the last three or four days of our staying in this harbour, the air was loaded with butter-flies: they were chiefly of one fort, but in such numbers that thousands were in view in every direction, and the greatest part of them above our mast-head.

We lay here from the 14th of November to the 7th of December, fomething more than three weeks, during which time

1768.

time Mr. Monkhouse, our Surgeon, was on shore every day to buy our provisions; Dr. Solander was on shore once; I was several times on shore myself, and Mr. Banks also found means to get into the country, notwithstanding the watch that was set over us. I shall, therefore, with the intelligence obtained from these Gentlemen, and my own observations, give some account of the town, and the country adjacent.

Rio de Janeiro, or the river of Januarius, was probably fo called from its having been discovered on the feast-day of that faint; and the town, which is the capital of the Portuguese dominions in America, derives its name from the river, which indeed is rather an arm of the fea, for it did not appear to receive any confiderable fiream of fresh water: it stands on a plain, close to the shore, on the west side of the bay, at the foot of feveral high mountains which rife behind it. It is neither ill designed nor ill built; the houses, in general, are of stone, and two stories high; every house having, after the manner of the Portuguese, a little balcony before its windows, and a lattice of wood before the balcony. I computed its circuit to be about three miles; for it appears to be equal in fize to the largest country towns in England. Bristol and Liverpool not excepted; the streets are straight, and of a convenient breadth, interfecting each other at right angles; the greater part, however, lie in a line with the citadel, called St. Sebastian, which stands on the top of a hill that commands the town.

It is supplied with water from the neighbouring hills, by an aqueduct, which is raised upon two stories of arches, and is said in some places to be at a great height from the ground, from which the water is conveyed by pipes into a sountain in the great square that exactly fronts the Viceroy's palace. At this sountain great numbers of people are

continually waiting for their turn to draw water; and the foldiers, who are posted at the Governor's door, find it very difficult to maintain any regularity among them. The water at this fountain however is so bad, that we, who had been two months at sea, confined to that in our casks, which was almost always foul, could not drink it with pleasure. Water of a better quality is laid into some other part of the town, but I could not learn by what means.

The churches are very fine, and there is more religious parade in this place than in any of the Popish countries in Europe: there is a procession of some parish every day, with various insignia, all splendid and costly in the highest degree: they beg money, and say prayers in great form, at the corner of every street.

While we lay here, one of the churches was rebuilding; and to defray the expence, the parish to which it belonged had leave to beg in procession through the whole city once a week, by which very considerable sums were collected. At this ceremony, which was performed by night, all the boys of a certain age were obliged to affist, the sons of Gentlemen not being excused. Each of these boys was dressed in a black cassock, with a short red cloak, hanging about as low as the waist, and carried in his hand a pole about six or seven feet long, at the end of which was tied a lantern: the number of lanterns was generally above two hundred, and the light they gave was so great, that the people who saw it from the cabbin windows thought the town had been on fire.

The inhabitants, however, may pay their devotions at the fhrine of any faint in the calendar, without waiting till there is a proceffion; for before almost every house there is a little cupboard, furnished with a glass window, in which one of these tutelary powers is waiting to be gracious; and to pre-

vent his being out of mind, by being out of fight, a lamp is kept conflantly burning before the window of his tabernacle in the night. The people indeed are by no means remifs in their devotions, for before these faints they pray and fing hymns with such vehemence, that in the night they were very distinctly heard on board the ship, though she lay at the distance of at least half a mile from the town.

The government here, as to its form, is mixed; it is not-withstanding very despotic in fact. It consists of the Viceroy, the Governor of the town, and a council, the number of which I could not learn: without the consent of this council, in which the Viceroy has a cassing vote, no judicial act should be performed; yet both the Viceroy and Governor frequently commit persons to prison at their own pleasure, and sometimes send them to Lisbon, without acquainting their friends or family with what is laid to their charge, or where they may be found.

To restrain the people from travelling into the country, and getting into any district where gold or diamonds may be found, of both which there is much more than the government can otherwise secure, certain bounds are prescribed them, at the discretion of the Viceroy, sometimes at a few, and sometimes at many miles distance from the city. On the verge of these limits a guard constantly patroles, and whoever is found beyond it, is immediately seized and thrown into prison: and if a man is, upon any pretence, taken up by the guard within the limits, he will be sent to prison, tho' it should appear that he did not know their extent.

The inhabitants, which are very numerous, confit of Portuguese, Negroes, and Indians, the original natives of the country. The township of Rio, which, as I was told, is but a small part of the Capitanea, or province, is said to contain

37,000 White persons, and 629,000 Blacks, many of whom are free; making together 666,000, in the proportion of feventeen to one. The Indians, who are employed to do the King's work in this neighbourhood, can fcarcely be confidered as inhabitants; their residence is at a distance, from whence they come by turns to their task, which they are obliged to perform for a fmall pay. The guard-boat was constantly rowed by these people, who are of a light copper colour, and have long black hair.

The military establishment here consists of twelve regiments of regular troops, fix of which are Portuguese and fix Creoles; and twelve other regiments of provincial militia. To the regulars the inhabitants behave with the utmost humility and fubmission; and I was told, that if any of them should neglect to take off his hat upon meeting an officer, he would immediately be knocked down. These haughty feverities render the people extremely civil to any stranger who has the appearance of a Gentleman. But the fubordination of the officers themselves to the Viceroy is enforced with circumstances equally mortifying, for they are obliged to attend in his hall three times every day to ask his commands: the answer constantly is, "There is nothing new." I have been told, that this fervile attendance is exacted to prevent their going into the country; and if fo, it effectually answers the purpose.

It is, I believe, univerfally allowed, that the women, both of the Spanish and Portuguese settlements in South America, make less difficulty of granting personal favours, than those of any other civilized country in the world. Of the Ladies of this town fome have formed fo unfavourable an opinion as to declare, that they did not believe there was a modest one among them. This centure is certainly too ge-

neral;

neral; but what Dr. Solander faw of them when he was on shore, gave him no very exalted idea of their chassity: he told me, that as soon as it was dark, one or more of them appeared in every window, and distinguished those whom they liked, among the Gentlemen that walked past them, by giving them nosegays; that he, and two Gentlemen who were with him, received so many of these favours, that, at the end of their walk, which was not a long one, they threw whole hatfuls of them away. Great allowance must certainly be made for local customs; that which in one country would be an indecent familiarity, is a mere act of general courtesy in another; of the fact, therefore, which I have related, I shall say nothing, but that I am consident it is true.

Neither will I take upon me to affirm, that murders are frequently committed here; but the churches afford an afylum to the criminal: and as our cockfwain was one day looking at two men, who appeared to be talking together in a friendly manner, one of them fuddenly drew a knife and flabbed the other; who not inflantly falling, the murderer withdrew the weapon, and flabbed him a fecond time. He then ran away, and was purfued by fome Negroes who were also witnesses of the fact; but whether he escaped or was taken I never heard.

The country, at a fmall distance round the town, which is all that any of us faw, is beautiful in the highest degree; the wildest spots being varied with a greater luxuriance of flowers, both as to number and beauty, than the best gardens in England.

Upon the trees and bushes fat an almost endless variety of birds, especially small ones, many of them covered with the most elegant plumage; among which were the humming-bird.

bird. Of infects too there was a great variety, and some of them very beautiful; but they were much more nimble than those of Europe, especially the butterslies, most of which slew near the tops of the trees, and were therefore very difficult to be caught, except when the sea breeze blew fresh, which kept them nearer to the ground.

The banks of the fea, and of the small brooks which water this part of the country, are almost covered with the small crabs called *Cancer vocans*; some of these had one of the claws, called by naturalists the hand, very large; others had them both remarkably small, and of equal size, a difference which is said to distinguish the sexes, that with the large claw being the male.

There is the appearance of but little cultivation; the greater part of the land is wholly uncultivated, and very little care and labour feem to have been bestowed upon the rest; there are indeed little patches or gardens, in which many kinds of European garden stuff are produced, particularly cabbages, peas, beans, kidney-beans, turnips, and white radishes, but all much inferior to our own: water melons and pine apples are also produced in these spots, and they are the only fruits that we faw cultivated, though the country produces musk melons, oranges, limes, lemons, fwect lemons, citrons, plantains, bananas, mangos, mamane apples, acajou or cashou apples and nuts; jamboira of two kinds, one of which bears a fmall black fruit; cocoa nuts, mangos, palm nuts of two kinds, one long, the other round; and palm berries, all which were in feafon while we were there.

Of these fruits the water melons and oranges are the best in their kind; the pine apples are much inferior to those that I have eaten in England; they are indeed more juicy

and fweet, but have no flavour; I believe them to be natives of this country, though we heard of none that at this time grow wild; they have, however, very little care bestowed upon them, the plants being fet between beds of any kind of garden-stuff, and suffered to take the chance of the season. The melons are still worse, at least those that we tasted, which were mealy and infipid; but the water melons are excellent; they have a flavour, at least a degree of acidity, which ours have not. We faw also several species of the prickle pear, and fome European fruits, particularly the apple and peach, both which were very mealy and infipid. In these gardens also grow yams, and mandihoca, which in the West Indies is called Cassada or Cassava, and to the flour of which the people here, as I have before observed, give the name of Farinha de Pao, which may not improperly be translated, Powder of post. The foil, though it produces tobacco and fugar, will not produce bread-corn; fo that the people here have no wheat-flour, but what is brought from Portugal, and fold at the rate of a shilling a pound, though it is generally fpoiled by being heated in its paffage. Banks is of opinion, that all the products of our West Indian iflands would grow here; notwithstanding which, the inhabitants import their coffee and chocolate from Lisbon.

Most of the land, as far as we saw of the country, is laid down in grafs, upon which cattle are pastured in great plenty; but they are so lean, that an Englishman will scarcely eat of their sless, and consequently is so short, that though it may afford a bite for horses and sheep, it can scarcely be grazed by horned cattle in a sufficient quantity to keep them alive.

This country may possibly produce many valuable drugs; but we could not find any in the apothecaries shops, except Vol. II.

pareira brava, and balfam capivi; both of which were excellent in their kind, and fold at a very low price. The drug trade is probably carried on to the northward, as well as that of the dying woods, for we could get no intelligence of either of them here.

As to manufactures, we neither faw nor heard of any, except that of cotton hammocks, in which people are carried about here, as they are with us in fedan chairs; and these are principally, if not wholly, fabricated by the Indians.

The riches of the place confifts chiefly in the mines, which we fupposed to lie far up the country, though we could never learn where, or at what distance; for the situation is concealed as much as possible, and troops are continually employed in guarding the roads that lead to them: it is almost impossible for any man to get a sight of them, except those who are employed there; and indeed the strongest curiosity would scarcely induce any man to attempt it, for whoever is found upon the road to them, if he cannot give undeniable evidence of his having business there, is immediately hanged up upon the next tree.

Much gold is certainly brought from these mines, but at an expence of life, that must strike every man, to whom customs has not made it familiar, with horror. No less than forty thousand negroes are annually imported, on the king's account, to dig the mines; and we were credibly informed, that, the last year but one before we arrived here, this number fell so short, probably from some epidemic disease, that twenty thousand more were draughted from the town of Rio.

Precious stones are also found here in such plenty, that a certain quantity only is allowed to be collected in a year; to collect this quantity, a number of people are sent into the country

1768.

country where they are found, and when it is got together, which fometimes happens in a month, fometimes in lefs and fometimes in more, they return; and after that, whoever is found in these precious districts, on any pretence, before the next year, is immediately put to death.

The jewels found here, are diamonds, topazes of feveral kinds, and amethysts. We did not see any of the diamonds, but were informed that the Viceroy had a large quantity by him, which he would fell on the King of Portugal's account. but not at a less price than they are fold for in Europe. Mr. Banks bought a few topazes and amethyfts as specimens: of the topazes there are three forts, of very different value, which are diffinguished here by the names of Pinga d'agua qualidade primeiro, Pinga d'agua qualidade fecundo, and Chrystallos armerillos: they are fold, large and small, good and bad together, by octavos, or the eighth part of an ounce; the best at 4s. 9d. All dealing, however, in these stones is prohibited to the fubject, under the feverest penalties: there were jewellers here formerly, who purchased and worked them on their own account; but about fourteen months before our arrival, orders came from the court of Portugal, that no more stones should be wrought here, except on the King's account: the jewellers were ordered to bring all their tools to the Viceroy, and left without any means of fubfiftence. The persons employed here to work stones for the King are flaves.

The coin that is current here, is either that of Portugal, confifting chiefly of thirty-fix shillings pieces; or pieces, both of gold and silver, which are struck at this place: the pieces of silver, which are very much debased, are called Petacks, and are of different value, and easily distinguished by the number of rees that is marked on the outside. Here is also



a copper coin, like that in Portugal, of five and ten ree pieces. A ree is a nominal coin of Portugal, ten of which are equal in value to about three farthings flerling.

The harbour of Rio de Janeiro is fituated W. by N. 18 leagues from Cape Trio, and may be known by a remarkable hill, in the form of a fugar-loaf, at the west point of the bay; but as all the coast is very high, and rifes in many peaks, the entrance of this harbour may be more certainly diffinguished by the islands that lie before it; one of which, called Rodonda, is high and round like a hay-flack, and lies at the distance of two leagues and an half from the entrance of the bay, in the direction of S. by W.; but the first islands which are met with, coming from the east, or Cape Trio, are two that have a rocky appearance, lying near to each other, and at the distance of about four miles from the shore: there are also at the distance of three leagues to the westward of these, two other islands which lie near to each other, a little without the bay on the east fide, and very near the shore. This harbour is certainly a good one; the entrance indeed is not wide, but the fea breeze, which blows every day from ten or twelve o'clock till funfet, makes it eafy for any ship to go in before the wind; and it grows wider as the town is approached, fo that abreaft of it there is roomfor the largest fleet, in five or fix fathom water, with an oozy bottom. At the narrow part, the entrance is defended by two forts. The principal is Santa Cruz, which stands on the east point of the bay, and has been mentioned before; that on the west side is called fort Lozia, and is built upon a rock that lies close to the main; the distance between them is about $\frac{3}{4}$ of a mile, but the channel is not quite fo broad, because there are funken rocks which lie off each fort, and in this part alone there is danger: the narrowness of the channel causes the tides, both flood and ebb, to run with considerable

37

derable strength, so that they cannot be stemmed without a fresh breeze. The rockyness of the bottom makes it also unsafe to anchor here; but all danger may be avoided by keeping in the middle of the channel. Within the entrance, the course up the bay is first N. by W. ½ W. and N.N.W. something more than a league; this will bring the vessel the length of the great road; and N.W. and W.N.W. one league more will carry her to the Isle dos Cobras, which lies before the city: she should then keep the north side of this island close on board, and anchor above it, before a monastery of Benedictines which stands upon a hill at the N.W. end of the city.

The river, and indeed the whole coast, abounds with a greater variety of fish than we had ever seen; a day seldom passed in which one or more of a new species were not brought to Mr. Banks: the bay also is as well adapted for catching these fish as can be conceived; for it is full of small islands, between which there is shallow water, and proper beaches for drawing the seine. The sea, without the bay, abounds with dolphins, and large mackrel of different kinds, which readily bite at a hook, and the inhabitants always tow one after their boats for that purpose.

Though the climate is hot, the fituation of this place is certainly wholesome; while we stayed here the thermometer never rose higher than 83, though we had frequent rains, and once a very hard gale of wind.

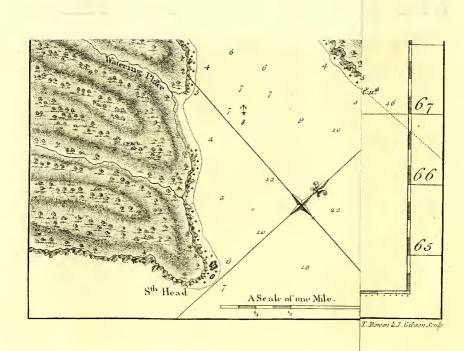
Ships water here at the fountain in the great square, though, as I have observed, the water is not good; they land their casks upon a smooth sandy beach, which is not more than a hundred yards distant from the fountain, and upon application to the Viceroy, a centinel will be appointed to look after

them, and clear the way to the fountain where they are to be filled.

Upon the whole, Rio de Janeiro is a very good place for ships to put in at that want refreshment: the harbour is safe and commodious; and provisions, except wheaten bread and flour, may be eafily procured: as a fuccedaneum for bread, there are yams and caffada in plenty; beef, both fresh and jerked, may be bought at about two pence farthing a pound; though, as I have before remarked, it is very lean. people here jerk their beef by taking out the bones, cutting it into large but thin flices; then curing it with falt, and drying it in the shade: it eats very well, and, if kept dry, will remain good a long time at fea. Mutton is fcarcely to be procured, and hogs and poultry are dear; of garden-stuff and fruit there is abundance, of which, however, none can be preferved at fea but the pumpkin; rum, fugar, and molasses, all excellent in their kind, may be had at a reasonable price; tobacco also is cheap, but it is not good. Here is a vard for building shipping, and a small hulk to heave down by; for, as the tide never rifes above fix or feven foot, there is no other way of coming at a ship's bottom.

When the boat which had been fent on shore returned, we hoisted her on board, and slood out to sea.





CHAP. III.

The Passage from Rio de Janeiro to the Entrance of the Streight of Le Maire, with a Description of some of the Inhabitants of Terra del Fuego.

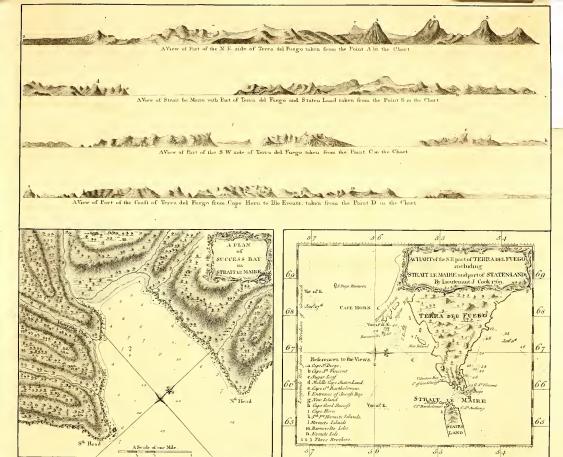
N the 9th of December, we observed the sea to be covered with broad streaks of a yellowish colour, several of them a mile long, and three or four hundred yards wide: some of the water thus coloured was taken up, and found to be full of innumerable atoms pointed at the end, of a yellowish colour, and none more than a quarter of a line, or the fortieth part of an inch long: in the microscope they appeared to be Fasciculi of small sibres interwoven with each other, not unlike the nidus of some of the Phyganeas, called Caddices; but whether they were animal or vegetable substances, whence they came, or for what they were designed, neither Mr. Banks nor Dr. Solander could guess. The same appearance had been observed before, when we first discovered the continent of South America.

December.
Friday o.

On the 11th we hooked a fhark, and while we were playing it under the cabbin window, it threw out, and drew in
again feveral times what appeared to be its flomach: it
proved to be a female, and upon being opened fix young
ones were taken out of it; five of them were alive and fwam
brifkly in a tub of water, but the fixth appeared to have been
dead fome time.

Nothing remarkable happened till the 30th, except that Friday 300 we prepared for the bad weather, which we were shortly to expect, by bending a new suit of fails; but on this day we

ran



I Boson LJ Cibronous

CHAP. III.

The Passage from Rio de Janeiro to the Entrance of the Streight of Le Maire, with a Description of some of the Inhabitants of Terra del Fuego.

N the 9th of December, we observed the sea to be covered with broad streaks of a yellowish colour, several of them a mile long, and three or four hundred yards wide: fome of the water thus coloured was taken up, and found to be full of innumerable atoms pointed at the end, of a yellowish colour, and none more than a quarter of a line, or the fortieth part of an inch long: in the microscope they appeared to be Fasciculi of small fibres interwoven with each other, not unlike the nidus of some of the Phyganeas, called Caddices; but whether they were animal or vegetable fubflances, whence they came, or for what they were defigned, neither Mr. Banks nor Dr. Solander could guess. The same appearance had been observed before, when we first discovered the continent of South America:

1768.

On the 11th we hooked a fhark, and while we were play- sunday 13. ing it under the cabbin window, it threw out, and drew in again feveral times what appeared to be its stomach: it proved to be a female, and upon being opened fix young ones were taken out of it; five of them were alive and fwam brifkly in a tub of water, but the fixth appeared to have been dead fome time.

Nothing remarkable happened till the 30th, except that Friday 30. we prepared for the bad weather, which we were shortly to expect, by bending a new fuit of fails; but on this day we

ran a course of one hundred and fixty miles by the log, through innumerable land infects of various kinds, some upon the wing, and more upon the water, many of which were alive; they appeared to be exactly the fame with the Carabi, the Grylli, the Phalana, Aranea, and other flies that are feen in England, though at this time we could not be less than thirty leagues from land; and some of these infects, particularly the Grylli and Aranea, never voluntarily leave it at a greater distance than twenty yards. We judged ourfelves to be now nearly opposite to Baye fans fond, where Mr. Dalrymple fuppofes there is a paffage quite through the continent of America; and we thought from the infects that there might be at least a very large river, and that it had overflowed its banks.

1769. January. Tuesday 3.

On the 3d of January, 1769, being in latitude 47° 17'S. and longitude 61° 29' 45" W. we were all looking out for Pepys' island, and for some time an appearance was seen in the east which fo much resembled land, that we bore away for it; and it was more than two hours and an half before we were convinced that it was nothing but what failors call a Fogbank.

The people now beginning to complain of cold, each of them received what is called a Magellanic jacket, and a pair of trowfers. The jacket is made of a thick woollen-stuff, called Fearnought, which is provided by the government. We faw, from time to time, a great number of penguins, albatroffes, and fheer waters, feals, whales, and porpoifes: and Wednef, 11. on the 11th, having passed Falkland's islands, we discovered the coast of Terra del Fuego, at the distance of about four leagues, extending from the W. to S. E. by S. We had here five and thirty fathom, the ground foft, fmall flate stones. As we ranged along the shore to the S. E. at the distance of

two or three leagues, we perceived fmoke in feveral places, which was made by the natives, probably as a fignal, for they did not continue it after we had passed by. This day we discovered that the ship had got near a degree of longitude to the westward of the log, which, in this latitude, is 35 minutes of a degree on the equator: probably there is a fmall current fetting to the westward, which may be caused by the westerly current coming round Cape Horn, and through the Streight of Le Maire, and the indraught of the Streight of Magellan *.

1769. January.

Having continued to range the coaft, on the 14th we en- Saturday 14. tered the Streight of Le Maire; but the tide turning against Enter the Streight of us, drove us out with great violence, and raifed fuch a fea Le Maire. off Cape St. Diego, that the waves had exactly the fame appearance as they would have had if they had broke over a ledge of rocks; and when the ship was in this torrent, she frequently pitched, fo that the bowsprit was under water. About noon, we got under the land between Cape St. Diego and Cape St. Vincent, where I intended to have anchored; but finding the ground every where hard and rocky, and fhallowing from thirty to twelve fathoms, I fent the Mafter to examine a little cove which lay at a finall distance to the eastward of Cape St. Vincent. When he returned, he reported, that there was anchorage in four fathom, and a good bottorn, close to the castward of the first bluff point, on the east of Cape St. Vincent, at the very entrance of the cove, to which I gave the name of VINCENT's Bay: before this an-

^{*} The celebrated navigator who discovered this Streight was a native of Portugal, and his name, in the language of his country, was Fernando de Magalhaens; the Spaniards call him Hernando Magalhanes, and the French Magellan, which is the orthography that has been generally adopted: a Gentleman, the fifth in descent from this great adventurer, is now living in or near London, and communicated the true name of his ancestor to Mr. Banks, with a request that it might be inserted in this work.

January.
Saturday 14.

choring ground, however, lay feveral rocky ledges, that were covered with fea-weed; but I was told that there was not less than eight and nine fathom over all of them. It will probably be thought firange, that where weeds, which grow at the bottom, appear above the furface, there should be this depth of water; but the weeds which grow upon rocky ground in these countries, and which always distinguish it from fand and ooze, are of an enormous fize. The leaves are four foot long, and fome of the stalks, though not thicker than a man's thumb, above one hundred and twenty: Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander examined fome of them, over which we founded and had fourteen fathom, which is eightyfour feet; and, as they made a very acute angle with the bottom, they were thought to be at least one half longer: the foot stalks were fwelled into an air vessel, and Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander called this plant Fucus giganteus. Upon the report of the Master, I stood in with the ship; but not trusting implicitly to his intelligence, I continued to found, and found but four fathom upon the first ledge that I went over; concluding, therefore, that I could not anchor here without rifk, I determined to feek fome port in the Streight, where I might get on board fuch wood and water as we wanted.

Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, however, being very defirous to go on fhore, I fent a boat with them and their people, while I kept plying as near as possible with the ship.

Having been on shore four hours, they returned about nine in the evening, with above an hundred different plants and flowers, all of them wholly unknown to the botanists of Europe. They found the country about the bay to be in general flat, the bottom of it in particular was a plain, covered with grass, which might easily have been made into a large quantity of hay; they found also abundance of good

wood and water, and fowl in great plenty. Among other things, of which Nature has been liberal in this place, is Winter's bark, Winteranea aromatica; which may eafily be known by its broad leaf, shaped like the laurel, of a light green colour without, and inclining to blue within: the bark is easily stripped with a bone or a stick, and its virtues are well known: it may be used for culinary purposes as a spice, and is not less pleasant than wholesome: here is also plenty of wild celery and fcurvy grafs. The trees are chiefly of one kind, a species of the birch, called Betula antarctica; the flem is from thirty to forty feet long, and from two to three feet in diameter, so that in a case of necessity they might possibly supply a ship with top-masts: they are a light white wood, bear a fmall leaf, and cleave very ftraight. Cranberries were also found here in great plenty, both white and red.

Saturday 14.

The persons who landed saw none of the inhabitants, but fell in with two of their deferted huts, one in a thick wood, and the other close by the beach.

Having taken the boat on board, I made fail into the Streight, and at three in the morning of the 15th, I anchored Sunday 15. in twelve fathom and an half, upon coral rocks, before a fmall cove, which we took for Port Maurice, at the distance of about half a mile from the shore. Two of the natives came down to the beach, expecting us to land; but this fpot afforded fo little shelter, that I at length determined not to examine it: I therefore got under fail again about ten o'clock, and the favages retired into the woods.

At two o'clock, we anchored in the bay of Good Success; and after dinner I went on shore, accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, to look for a watering-place, and speak to the Indians, feveral of whom had come in fight. We landed on the starboard side of the bay near some rocks, which

1769. January. made fmooth water and good landing; thirty or forty of the Indians foon made their appearance at the end of a fandy beach on the other fide of the bay, but feeing our number, which was ten or twelve, they retreated. Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander then advanced about one hundred yards before us, upon which two of the Indians returned, and, having advanced fome paces towards them, fat down; as foon as they came up, the Indians rose, and each of them having a fmall flick in his hand threw it away, in a direction both from themselves and the strangers, which was considered as the renunciation of weapons in token of peace: they then walked brifkly towards their companions, who had halted at about fifty yards behind them, and beckoned the Gentlemen to follow, which they did. They were received with many uncouth figns of friendship; and, in return, they diftributed among them fome beads and ribbons, which had been brought on shore for that purpose, and with which they were greatly delighted. A mutual confidence and good-will being thus produced, our parties joined; the conversation, fuch as it was, became general; and three of them accompanied us back to the ship. When they came on board, one of them, whom we took to be a prieft, performed much the fame ceremonies which M. Bougainville describes, and supposes to be an exorcism. When he was introduced into a new part of the ship, or when any thing that he had not feen before caught his attention, he shouted with all his force for fome minutes, without directing his voice either to us or his companions.

They eat fome bread and fome beef, but not apparently with much pleafure, though fuch part of what was given them as they did not eat they took away with them; but they would not fwallow a drop either of wine or fpirits: they put the glafs to their lips, but, having tafted the liquor,

they

1769.

they returned it, with strong expressions of disgust. Curiosity feems to be one of the few passions which distinguish men from brutes; and of this our guests appeared to have very little. They went from one part of the ship to another, and looked at the vast variety of new objects that every moment prefented themselves, without any expression either of wonder or pleasure, for the vociferation of our exorcist seemed to be neither.

After having been on board about two hours, they expressed a desire to go ashore. A boat was immediately ordered, and Mr. Banks thought fit to accompany them: he landed them in safety, and conducted them to their companions, among whom he remarked the same vacant indisserence, as in those who had been on board; for as on one side there appeared no eagerness to relate, so on the other there seemed to be no curiosity to hear, how they had been received, or what they had seen. In about half an hour, Mr. Banks returned to the ship, and the Indians retired from the shore.

CHAP. IV.

An Account of what happened in ascending a Mountain to search for Plants.

1769. January. Monday 16.

N the 16th, early in the morning, Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, with their attendants and fervants, and two feamen to affift in carrying the baggage, accompanied by Mr. Monkhouse the Surgeon, and Mr. Green the Astronomer, fet out from the ship, with a view to penetrate as far as they could into the country, and return at night. The hills, when viewed at a diffance, feemed to be partly a wood, partly a plain, and above them a bare rock. Mr. Banks hoped to get through the wood, and made no doubt, but that, beyond it, he should, in a country which no botanist had ever yet vifited, find alpine plants which would abundantly compenfate his labour. They entered the wood at a fmall fandy beach, a little to the westward of the watering-place, and continued to afcend the hill, through the pathlefs wildernefs, till three o'clock, before they got a near view of the places which they intended to vifit. Soon after they reached what they had taken for a plain; but, to their great difappointment, found it a fwamp, covered with low bushes of birch, about three feet high, interwoven with each other, and fo stubborn that they could not be bent out of the way; it was therefore necessary to lift the leg over them, which at every step was buried, ancle deep, in the foil. To aggravate the pain and difficulty of fuch travelling, the weather, which hitherto had been very fine, much like one of our bright days in May, became gloomy and cold; with fudden blafts

47

Monday 16.

blasts of a most piercing wind, accompanied with snow. They pushed forward, however, in good spirits, notwithstanding their fatigue, hoping the worst of the way was past, and that the bare rock which they had seen from the tops of the lower hills was not more than a mile before them; but when they had got about two thirds over this woody fwamp, Mr. Buchan, one of Mr. Banks's draughtmen, was unhappily feized with a fit. This made it necessary for the whole company to halt, and as it was impossible that he should go any farther, a fire was kindled, and those who were most fatigued were left behind to take care of him. Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, Mr. Green, and Mr. Monkhouse went on. and in a fhort time reached the fummit. As botanifts, their expectations were here abundantly gratified; for they found a great variety of plants, which, with respect to the alpine plants in Europe, are exactly what those plants are with refpect to fuch as grow in the plain.

The cold was now become more fevere, and the fnow-blafts more frequent; the day also was so far spent, that it was found impossible to get back to the ship before the next morning: to pass the night upon such a mountain, in such a climate, was not only comfortless, but dreadful; it was impossible however to be avoided, and they were to provide for it as well as they could.

Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, while they were improving an opportunity which they had, with fo much danger and difficulty, procured, by gathering the plants which they found upon the mountain, fent Mr. Green and Mr. Monkhouse back to Mr. Buchan and the people that were with him, with directions to bring them to a hill, which they thought lay in a better rout for returning to the wood, and which was therefore appointed as a general rendezvous. It

January.

Monday 16.

was proposed, that from this hill they should push through the fwamp, which feemed by the new rout not to be more than half a mile over, into the shelter of the wood, and there build their wigwam, and make a fire: this, as their way was all down hill, it feemed eafy to accomplish. whole company affembled at the rendezvous, and, though pinched with the cold, were in health and fpirits, Mr. Buchan himself having recovered his strength in a much greater degree than could have been expected. It was now near eight o'clock in the evening, but ftill good day-light, and they fet forward for the nearest valley, Mr. Banks himfelf undertaking to bring up the rear, and fee that no flraggler was left behind: this may perhaps be thought a fuperfluous caution, but it will foon appear to be otherwife. Solander, who had more than once croffed the mountains which divide Sweden from Norway, well knew that extreme cold, especially when joined with fatigue, produces a torpor and fleepiness that are almost irresistible: he therefore conjured the company to keep moving, whatever pain it might cost them, and whatever relief they might be promised by an inclination to rest: Whoever sits down, fays he, will sleep; and whoever fleeps, will wake no more. Thus, at once admonifhed and alarmed, they fet forward; but while they were still upon the naked rock, and before they had got among the bushes, the cold became suddenly so intense, as to produce the effects that had been most dreaded. Dr. Solander himself was the first who found the inclination, against which he had warned others, irrefiftible; and infifted upon being fuffered to lie down. Mr. Banks intreated and remonstrated in vain, down he lay upon the ground, though it was covered with fnow; and it was with great difficulty that his friend kept him from fleeping. Richmond alfo, one of the black fervants.

49

January.
Monday 16.

fervants, began to linger, having fuffered from the cold in the fame manner as the Doctor. Mr. Banks, therefore, fent five of the company, among whom was Mr. Buchan, forward to get a fire ready at the first convenient place they could find; and himself, with four others, remained with the Doctor and Richmond, whom partly by perfuation and entreaty, and partly by force, they brought on; but when they had got through the greatest part of the birch and fwamp, they both declared they could go no farther. Mr. Banks had recourse again to entreaty and exposulation, but they produced no effect: when Richmond was told, that if he did not go on he would in a fhort time be frozen to death; he answered. That he defired nothing but to lie down and die: the Doctor did not fo explicitly renounce his life; he faid he was willing to go on, but that he must first take some sleep, though he had before told the company that to fleep was to perish. Mr. Banks and the rest found it impossible to carry them, and there being no remedy they were both fuffered to fit down, being partly supported by the bushes, and in a few minutes they fell into a profound fleep: foon after, fome of the people who had been fent forward returned, with the welcome news that a fire was kindled about a quarter of a mile farther on the way. Mr. Banks then endeavoured to wake Dr. Solander and happily succeeded: but, though he had not flept five minutes, he had almost lost the use of his limbs, and the muscles were so shrunk that his shoes fell from his feet; he confented to go forward with fuch affiftance as could be given him, but no attempts to relieve poor Richmond were fuccessful. It being found impossible to make him stir, after fome time had been loft in the attempt, Mr. Banks left his other black fervant and a feaman, who feemed to have fuffered least by the cold, to look after him; promifing, that as foon as two others should be sufficiently warmed, they should

January. Monday 16.

be relieved. Mr. Banks, with much difficulty, at length got the Doctor to the fire; and foon after fent two of the people who had been refreshed, in hopes that, with the affistance of those who had been left behind, they would be able to bring Richmond, even though it should still be found impossible to wake him. In about half an hour, however, they had the mortification to fee thefe two men return alone; they faid, that they had been all round the place to which they had been directed, but could neither find Richmond nor those who had been left with him; and that though they had fhouted many times, no voice had replied. This was matter of equal furprife and concern, particularly to Mr. Banks, who, while he was wondering how it could happen, miffed a bottle of rum, the company's whole flock, which they now concluded to be in the knapfack of one of the absentees. It was conjectured, that with this Richmond had been rouzed by the two persons who had been left with him, and that, having perhaps drank too freely of it themselves, they had all rambled from the place where they had been left, in fearch of the fire, instead of waiting for those who should have been their affiftants and guides. Another fall of fnow now came on, and continued inceffantly for two hours, for that all hope of feeing them again, at least alive, were given up; but about twelve o'clock, to the great joy of those at the fire, a shouting was heard at some distance. Mr. Banks, with four more, immediately went out, and found the feaman with just strength enough left to stagger along, and call out for affiftance: Mr. Banks fent him immediately to the fire, and, by his direction, proceeded in fearch of the other two, whom he foon after found. Richmond was upon his legs, but not able to put one before the other; his companion was lying upon the ground, as infensible as a stone. All hands

51

January. Monday 16.

were now called from the fire, and an attempt was made to carry them to it; but this, notwithstanding the united efforts of the whole company, was found to be impossible. The night was extremely dark, the fnow was now very deep, and, under these additional disadvantages, they found it very difficult to make way through the bushes and the bog for themselves, all of them getting many falls in the attempt. The only alternative was to make a fire upon the fpot; but the fnow which had fallen, and was still falling, besides what was every moment shaken in slakes from the trees. rendered it equally impracticable, to kindle one there, and to bring any part of that which had been kindled in the wood thither: they were, therefore, reduced to the fad necessity of leaving the unhappy wretches to their fate; having first made them a bed of boughs from the trees, and fpread a covering of the fame kind over them to a confiderable height.

Having now been exposed to the cold and the snow near an hour and an half, some of the rest began to lose their sensibility; and one Briscoe, another of Mr. Banks's servants, was so ill, that it was thought he must die before he could be got to the sire.

At the fire, however, at length they arrived; and paffed the night in a fituation, which, however dreadful in itself, was rendered more afflicting by the remembrance of what was past, and the uncertainty of what was to come. Of twelve, the number that set out together in health and spirits, two were supposed to be already dead; a third was so ill, that it was very doubtful whether he would be able to go forward in the morning; and a fourth, Mr. Buchan, was in danger of a return of his fits, by fresh fatigue after so uncomfortable a night: they were distant from the ship a long day's

January.

Monday 16.

journey, through pathlefs woods, in which it was too probable they might be bewildered till they were overtaken by the next night; and, not having prepared for a journey of more than eight or ten hours, they were wholly defitute of provisions, except a vulture, which they happened to shoot while they were out, and which, if equally divided, would not afford each of them half a meal; and they knew not how much more they might suffer from the cold, as the snow still continued to fall. A dreadful testimony of the feverity of the climate, as it was now the midst of summer in this part of the world, the twenty-first of December being here the longest day; and every thing might justly be dreaded from a phænomenon which, in the corresponding season, is unknown even in Norway and Lapland.

Tuesday 17.

When the morning dawned, they faw nothing round them, as far as the eye could reach, but fnow, which feemed to lie as thick upon the trees as upon the ground; and the blafts returned fo frequently, and with fuch violence, that they found it impossible for them to fet out: how long this might last they knew not, and they had but too much reason to apprehend that it would confine them in that desolate forest till they perished with hunger and cold.

After having suffered the mifery and terror of this situation till six o'clock in the morning, they conceived some hope of deliverance by discovering the place of the sun through the clouds, which were become thinner, and began to break away. Their first care was to see whether the poor wretches whom they had been obliged to leave among the bushes were yet alive; three of the company were dispatched for that purpose, and very soon afterwards returned with the melancholy news, that they were dead.

53

January.

Notwithstanding the flattering appearance of the sky, the fnow still continued to fall so thick that they could not venture out upon their journey to the ship; but about 8 o'clock a fmall regular breeze fprung up, which, with the prevailing influence of the fun, at length cleared the air; and they foon after, with great joy, faw the fnow fall in large flakes from the trees, a certain fign of an approaching thaw: they now examined more critically the flate of their invalids; Briscoe was still very ill, but said, that he thought himselfable to walk; and Mr. Buchan was much better than either he or his friends had any reason to expect. They were now, however, pressed by the calls of hunger, to which, after long fasting, every consideration of future good or evil immediately gives way. Before they fet forward, therefore, it was unanimously agreed, that they should eat their vulture; the bird was accordingly skinned, and, it being thought best to divide it before it was fit to be caten, it was cut into ten portions, and every man cooked his own as he thought fit. After this repair, which furnished each of them with about three mouthfuls, they prepared to fet out; but it was ten o'clock before the fnow was fufficiently gone off to render a march practicable. After a walk of about three hours, they were very agreeably furprifed to find themselves upon the beach, and much nearer to the ship than they had any reafon to expect. Upon reviewing their track from the veffel, they perceived, that, instead of ascending the hill in a line, fo as to penetrate into the country, they had made almost a circle round it. When they came on board, they congratulated each other upon their fafety, with a joy that no man can feel who has not been exposed to equal danger; and as I had fuffered great anxiety at their not returning in the evening of the day on which they fet out, I was not wholly without my share ...

CHAP. V.

The Passage through the Streight of Le Maire, and a further Description of the Inhabitants of Terra del Fuego, and its Productions.

January.

Wednef. 18.
Thursday 19.
Friday 20.

N the 18th and 19th, we were delayed in getting on board our wood and water by a fwell: but on the 20th, the weather being more moderate, we again fent the boat on fhore, and Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went in it. They landed in the bottom of the bay, and while my people were employed in cutting brooms, they purfued their great object, the improvement of natural knowlege, with fuccefs, collecting many shells and plants which hitherto have been altogether unknown: they came on board to dinner, and afterwards went again on shore to visit an Indian town, which fome of the people had reported to lie about two miles up the country. They found the distance not more than by the account, and they approached it by what appeared to be the common road, yet they were above an hour in getting thither, for they were frequently up to their knees in mud; when they got within a fmall distance, two of the people came out to meet them, with fuch flate as they could assume; when they joined them, they began to hollow as they had done on board the ship, without addressing themselves either to the ftrangers or their companions; and having continued this flrange vociferation fome time, they conducted them to the town. It was fituated on a dry knoll, or fmall hill, covered with wood, none of which feemed to have been cleared away, and confifted of about twelve or fourteen hovels, of the most





Nº1.

1769. January.

rude and inartificial ftructure that can be imagined. They were nothing more than a few poles fet up so as to incline towards each other, and meet at the top, forming a kind of a cone, like fome of our bee-hives; on the weather fide they were covered with a few boughs, and a little grafs; and on the lee fide about one eighth of the circle was left open, both for a door and a fire place; and of this kind were the huts that had been feen in St. Vincent's bay, in one of which the embers of a fire were still remaining. Furniture they had none; a little grass, which lay round the inside of the hovel, ferved both for chairs and beds; and of all the utenfils which necessity and ingenuity have concurred to produce among other favage nations, they faw only a basket to carry in the hand, a fatchel to hang at the back, and the bladder of fomebeaft to hold water, which the natives drink through a hole that is made near the top for that purpose.

The inhabitants of this town were a fmall tribe, not more than fifty in number, of both fexes and of every age. Their colour refembles that of the rust of iron mixed with oil, and they have long black hair: the men are large, but clumfily built; their stature is from five feet eight to five feet ten; the women are much less, few of them being more than five feet high. Their whole apparel confifts of the skin of a guanicoe, or feal, which is thrown over their shoulders, exactly in the flate in which it came from the animal's back; a piece of the same skin, which is drawn over their feet, and gathered about the ancles like a purfe, and a finall flap, which is worn by the women as a fuccedaneum for a figleaf. The men wear their cloak open, the women tie it about their waist with a thong. But although they are content to be naked, they are very ambitious to be fine. Their faces were painted in various forms: the region of the eye-



1769.

rude and inartificial firucture that can be imagined. They were nothing more than a few poles fet up fo as to incline towards each other, and meet at the top, forming a kind of a cone, like fome of our bee-hives; on the weather fide they were covered with a few boughs, and a little grafs; and on the lee fide about one eighth of the circle was left open, both for a door and a fire place; and of this kind were the huts that had been feen in St. Vincent's bay, in one of which the embers of a fire were still remaining. Furniture they had none; a little grafs, which lay round the infide of the hovel, ferved both for chairs and beds; and of all the utenfils which necessity and ingenuity have concurred to produce among other favage nations, they faw only a basket to carry in the hand, a fatchel to hang at the back, and the bladder of fome beaft to hold water, which the natives drink through a hole that is made near the top for that purpofe.

The inhabitants of this town were a small tribe, not more than fifty in number, of both fexes and of every age. Their colour resembles that of the rust of iron mixed with oil, and they have long black hair: the men are large, but clumfily built; their stature is from five feet eight to five feet ten; the women are much less, few of them being more than five feet high. Their whole apparel confifts of the skin of a guanicoe, or feal, which is thrown over their shoulders, exactly in the state in which it came from the animal's back; a piece of the same skin, which is drawn over their feet, and gathered about the ancles like a purfe, and a finall flap, which is worn by the women as a fuccedaneum for a figleaf. The men wear their cloak open, the women tie it about their waist with a thong. But although they are content to be naked, they are very ambitious to be fine. Their faces were painted in various forms: the region of the eye

1769. January.

was in general white, and the rest of the face adorned with shorizontal streaks of red and black; yet scarcely any two were exactly alike. This decoration seems to be more profuse and elaborate upon particular occasions, for the two Gentlemen who introduced Mr. Banks and the Doctor into the town, were almost covered with streaks of black in all directions, so as to make a very striking appearance. Both men and women wore bracelets of such beads as they could make themselves of small shells or bones; the women both upon their wrists and ancles, the men upon their wrists only; but to compensate for the want of bracelets on their legs, they wore a kind of sillet of brown worsted round their heads. They seemed to set a particular value upon any thing that was red, and preferred beads even to a knife or a hatchet.

Their language in general is guttural, and they express some of their words by a sound exactly like that which we make to clear the throat when any thing happens to obstruct it; yet they have words which would be deemed soft in the better languages of Europe. Mr. Banks learnt what he supposes to be their name for beads and water. When they wanted beads, instead of ribbons or other trisles, they said ballĕeĕ; and when they were taken on shore from the ship, and by signs asked where water might be found, they made the sign of drinking, and pointing as well to the casks as the watering place, cried Oodâ.

We faw no appearance of their having any food but shell-fish; for though seals were frequently seen near the shore, they seemed to have no implements for taking them. The shell-fish is collected by the women, whose business it seems to be to attend at low water, with a basket in one hand, a stick, pointed and barbed, in the other, and a satchel at their backs: they loosen the limpets, and other fish that adhere to

the

the rocks, with the flick, and put them into the basket; which, when full, they empty into the satchel.

1769. January.

The only things that we found among them in which there was the least appearance of neatness or ingenuity, were their weapons, which confifted of a bow and arrows. The bow was not inelegantly made, and the arrows were the neatest that we had ever feen: they were of wood, polished to the highest degree; and the point, which was of glass or flint, and barbed, was formed and fitted with wonderful dexterity. We faw also some pieces of glass and slint among them unwrought, besides rings, buttons, cloth, and canvass, with other European commodities; they must therefore sometimes travel to the northward, for it is many years fince any fhip has been fo far fouth as this part of Terra del Fuego. We observed also, that they shewed no surprise at our firearms, with the use of which they appeared to be well acquainted; for they made figns to Mr. Banks to shoot a feal which followed the boat as they were going on shore from the ship.

M. de Bougainville, who, in January 1768, just one year before us, had been on shore upon this coast in latitude 53° 40′ 41″, had, among other things, given glass to the people whom he found here; for he says, that a boy about twelve years old took it into his head to eat some of it: by this unhappy accident he died in great misery; but the endeavours of the good father, the French Aumonier, were more successful than those of the Surgeon; for though the Surgeon could not save his life, the charitable Priest found means to steal a Christian baptism upon him so secretly, that none of his Pagan relations knew any thing of the matter. These people might probably have some of the very glass which Bougainville left behind him, either from other natives, or perhaps Vol. II.

1769. January. from himfelf; for they appeared rather to be a travelling hord, than to have any fixed habitation. Their houses are built to stand but for a short time; they have no utensil or furniture but the basket and satchel, which have been mentioned before, and which have handles adapted to the carrying them about, in the hand and upon the back; the only cloathing they had here was scarcely sufficient to prevent their perishing with cold in the summer of this country, much less in the extreme severity of winter; the shell-sish which seems to be their only food must soon be exhausted at any one place; and we had seen houses upon what appeared to be a deserted station in St. Vincent's bay.

It is also probable that the place where we found them was only a temporary residence, from their having here nothing like a boat or canoe, of which it can scarcely be supposed that they were wholly destitute, especially as they were not sea-sick, or particularly affected, either in our boat or on board the ship. We conjectured that there might be a streight or inlet, running from the sea through great part of this island, from the Streight of Magellan, whence these people might come, leaving their canoes where such inlet terminated.

They did not appear to have among them any government or fubordination: none was more respected than another; yet they seemed to live together in the utmost harmony and good fellowship. Neither did we discover any appearance of religion among them, except the noises which have been mentioned, and which we supposed to be a superstitious ceremony, merely because we could refer them to nothing else: they were used only by one of those who came on board the ship, and the two who conducted Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander to the town, whom we therefore conjectured to be

priefts. Upon the whole, these people appeared to be the most destitute and forlorn, as well as the most stupid of all human beings; the outcasts of Nature, who spent their lives in wandering about the dreary wastes, where two of our people perished with cold in the midst of summer; with no dwelling but a wretched hovel of flicks and grafs, which would not only admit the wind, but the fnow and the rain: almost naked; and destitute of every convenience that is furnished by the rudest art, having no implement even to dress their food: yet they were content. They seemed to have no wish for any thing more than they possessed, nor did anything that we offered them appear acceptable but beads, as an ornamental fuperfluity of life. What bodily pain they might fuffer from the severities of their winter we could not know; but it is cercain, that they fuffered nothing from the want of the innumerable articles which we confider, not as the luxuries and conveniencies only, but the necessaries of life: as their defires are few, they probably enjoy them all; and how much they may be gainers by an exemption from the care, labour and folicitude, which arife from a perpetual and unfuccessful effort to gratify that infinite variety of defires which the refinements of artificial life have produced among us, is not very eafy to determine: possibly this may counterbalance all the real difadvantages of their fituation in comparison with ours, and make the scales by which good and evil are distributed to man, hang even between us.

In this place we faw no quadruped except feals, fea-lions, and dogs; of the dogs it is remarkable that they bark, which those that are originally bred in America do not. And this is a further proof, that the people we faw here had, either immediately or remotely, communicated with the inhabitants of Europe. There are, however, other quadrupeds in this part of the country; for when Mr. Banks was at the top

1769. January. of the highest hill that he ascended in his expedition through the woods, he saw the footsteps of a large beast imprinted upon the surface of a bog, though he could not with any probability guess of what kind it might be.

Of land-birds there are but few; Mr. Banks faw none larger than an English blackbird, except some hawks and a vulture; but of water-fowl there is great plenty, particularly ducks. Of fish we saw scarce any, and with our hooks could catch none that was sit to eat; but shell-fish, limpets, clams, and muscles were to be found in abundance.

Among the infects, which were not numerous, there was neither gnat nor musquito, nor any other species that was either hurtful or troublesome, which perhaps is more than can be said of any other uncleared thanty. During the snow-blasts, which happened every day while we were here, they hide themselves; and the moment it is fair they appear again, as nimble and vigorous as the warmest weather could make them.

Of plants, Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander found a vaft variety; the far greater part wholly different from any that have been hitherto described. Besides the birch, and winter's bark, which have been mentioned already, there is the beach, Fagus antarcticus, which, as well as the birch, may be used for timber. The plants cannot be enumerated here; but as the scurvy-grass, Cardamine antiscorbutica, and the wild celery, Apium antarcticum, probably contain antiscorbutic qualities, which may be of great benefit to the crews of such ships as shall hereafter touch at this place, the following short description is inserted:

The fcurvy-grafs will be found in plenty in damp places, near fprings of water, and in general in all places that lie near the beach, especially at the watering-place in the Bay

of Good Success: when it is young, the state of its greatest perfection, it lies flat upon the ground, having many leaves of a bright green, standing in pairs opposite to each other, with a fingle one at the end, which generally makes the fifth upon a foot stalk: the plant, passing from this state, shoots up in stalks that are sometimes two feet high, at the top of which are fmall white bloffoms, and thefe are fucceeded by long pods: the whole plant greatly refembles that which in England is called Lady's fmock, or Cuckow-flower. The wild celery is very like the celery in our gardens, the flowers are white, and stand in the same manner, in small tufts at the top of the branches, but the leaves are of a deeper green. It grows in great abundance near the beach, and generally upon the foil that lies next above the fpring tides. It may indeed eafily be known by the tafte, which is between that of celery and parsley. We used the celery in large quantities, particularly in our foup, which, thus medicated, produced the fame good effects which feamen generally derive from a vegetable diet, after having been long confined to falt provisions.

On Sunday, the 22d of January, about two o'clock in the Sunday 22. morning, having got our wood and water on board, we failed out of the Bay, and continued our course through the Streight.

CHAP. VI.

A general Description of the S. E. part of Terra del Fuego, and the Streight of Le Maire; with some Remarks on Lord Anson's Account of them, and Directions for the Passage Westward, round this Part of America, into the South Seas.

1769. January.

LMOST all writers who have mentioned the island of Terra del Fuego, describe it as destitute of wood, and covered with fnow. In the winter it may possibly be covered with fnow, and those who faw it at that feason might perhaps be eafily deceived, by its appearance, into an opinion that it was deflitute of wood. Lord Anfon was there in the beginning of March, which answers to our September; and we were there the beginning of January, which answers to our July, which may account for the difference of his defcription of it from ours. We fell in with it about twentyone leagues to the westward of the Streight of Le Maire, and from the time that we first faw it, trees were plainly to be distinguished with our glasses; and as we came nearer, though here and there we discovered patches of snow, the sides of the hills and the fea-coast appeared to be covered with a beautiful verdure. The hills are lofty, but not mountainous, though the fummits of them are quite naked. The foil in the valleys is rich, and of a confiderable depth; and at the foot of almost every hill there is a brook, the water of which has a reddish hue, like that which runs through our turf bogs in England, but it is by no means ill tafted, and upon the whole proved to be the best that we took in during our voyage. We ranged the coast to the Streight, and had soundings all the way from 40 to 20 fathom, upon a gravelly and sandy bottom. The most remarkable land on Terra del Fuego is a hill, in the form of a sugar-loaf, which stands on the west side not far from the sea; and the three hills, called the three brothers, about nine miles to the westward of Cape St. Diego, the low point that forms the north entrance of the Streight of Le Maire.

It is faid in the account of Lord Anfon's voyage, that it is difficult to determine exactly where the Streight lies, though the appearance of Terra del Fuego be well known, without knowing also the appearance of Staten Land; and that some navigators have been deceived by three hills on Staten Land, which have been mistaken for the three brothers on Terra del Fuego, and fo over-shot the Streight. But no ship can possibly miss the Streight that coasts Terra del Fuego within fight of land, for it will then, of itself, be sufficiently confpicuous; and Staten Land, which forms the east fide, will be flill more manifestly distinguished, for there is no land on Terra del Fuego like it. The Streight of Le Maire can be missed only by standing too far to the eastward, without keeping the land of Terra del Fuego in fight: if this is done, it may be missed, however accurately the appearance of the coast of Staten Land may have been exhibited; and if this is not done, it cannot be miffed, though the appearance of that coast be not known. The entrance of the Streight should not be attempted but with a fair wind and moderate weather, and upon the very beginning of the tide of flood, which happens here, at the full and change of the moon, about one or two o'clock; it is also best to keep as near to the Terra. del Fuego shore as the winds will admit. By attending tothese particulars, a ship may be got quite through the Streight



Streight in one tide; or, at least, to the southward of Success Bay, into which it will be more prudent to put, if the wind should be southerly, than to attempt the weathering of Staten Land with a lee wind and a current, which may endanger her being driven on that island.

The Streight itself, which is bounded on the west by Terra del Fuego, and on the east by the west end of Staten Land, is about five leagues long, and as many broad. The Bay of Good Success lies about the middle of it, on the Terra del Fuego fide, and is discovered immediately upon entering the Streight from the northward; and the fouth head of it may be diffinguished by a mark on the land, that has the appearance of a broad road, leading up from the fea into the country: at the entrance it is half a league wide, and runs in westward about two miles and an half. There is good anchorage in every part of it, in from ten to feven fathom, clear ground; and it affords plenty of exceeding good wood and water. The tides flow in the Bay, at the full and change of the moon, about four or five o'clock, and rife about five or fix feet perpendicular. But the flood runs two or three hours longer in the Streight than in the Bay; and the ebb, or northerly current, runs with near double the strength of the flood.

In the appearance of Staten Land, we did not discover the wildness and horror that is ascribed to it in the account of Lord Anson's voyage. On the north side are the appearances of bays or harbours; and the land, when we saw it, was neither destitute of wood nor verdure, nor covered with snow. The island seems to be about twelve leagues in length, and five broad.

On the west side of the Cape of Good Success, which forms the S. W. entrance of the Streight, lies Valentine's Bay, of which

which we only faw the entrance; from this bay the land trends away to the W.S.W. for twenty or thirty leagues; it appears to be high and mountainous, and forms feveral bays and inlets.

1769. January.

At the distance of fourteen leagues from the bay of Good Success, in the direction of S.W. W. and between two and three leagues from the shore, lies New Island. It is about two leagues in length from N.E. to S.W. and terminates to the N.E. in a remarkable hillock. At the distance of seven leagues from New Island, in the direction of S.W. lies the isle Evous; and a little to the west of the south of this island lie Barnevelt's two small slat islands, close to each other; they are partly surrounded with rocks, which rise to different heights above the water, and lie twenty-four leagues from the Streight of Le Maire. At the distance of three leagues from Barnevelt's islands, in the direction of S.W. by S. lies the S.E. point of Hermit's islands: these islands lie S.E. and N.W. and are pretty high: from most points of view they will be taken for one island, or a part of the main.

From the S.E. point of Hermit's islands to Cape Horn the course is S.W. by S. distance three leagues.

The appearance of this Cape and Hermit's islands is represented in the chart of this coast, from our first making land to the Cape, which includes the Streight of Le Maire, and part of Staten Land. In this chart I have laid down no land, nor traced out any shore but what I saw myself, and thus far it may be depended upon: the bays and inlets, of which we saw only the openings, are not traced; it can, however, scarcely be doubted, but that most, if not all of them, assord anchorage, wood and water. The Dutch squadron, commanded by Hermit, certainly put into some of them in the year 1624; and it was Chapenham, the Vice Vol. II.

1769. January. Admiral of this squadron, who first discovered that the land of Cape Horn consisted of a number of islands. The account, however, which those who failed in Hermit's fleet have given of these parts is extremely defective; and those of Schouton and Le Maire are still worse: it is therefore no wonder that the charts hitherto published should be erroneous, not only in laying down the land, but in the latitude and longitude of the places they contain. I will, however, venture to affert, that the longitude of few parts of the world is better ascertained than that of the Streight of Le Maire, and Cape Horn, in the chart now offered to the public, as it was laid down by several observations of the sun and moon, that were made both by myself and Mr. Green.

The variation of the compass on this coast I found to be from 23° to 25° E. except near Barnevelt's islands and Cape Horn, where we found it less, and unsettled; probably it is disturbed here by the land, as Hermit's squadron, in this very place found all their compasses differ from each other. The declination of the dipping-needle, when set up on shore in Success Bay, was 68° 15′ below the horizon.

Between Streight Le Maire and Cape Horn, we found a current fetting, generally very flrong, to the N. E. when we were in with the shore; but lost it when we were at the distance of sifteen or twenty leagues.

Thursday 26.

On the 26th of January, we took our departure from Cape Horn, which lies in latitude 55° 53′ S. longitude 68° 13′ W. The farthest fouthern latitude that we made was 60° 10′, our longitude was then 74° 30′ W.; and we found the variation of the compass, by the mean of eighteen azimuths, to be 27° 9′ E. As the weather was frequently calm, Mr. Banks went out in a small boat to shoot birds, among which were some albatrosses and sheerwaters. The albatrosses were ob-

ferved

1769.

ferved to be larger than those which had been taken northward of the Streight; one of them measured ten feet two inches from the tip of one wing to that of the other, when they were extended: the sheerwater, on the contrary, is less, and darker coloured on the back. The albatrosses we skinned, and having soaked them in falt water till the morning, we parboiled them, then throwing away the liquor, stewed them in a very little fresh water till they were tender, and had them served up with savoury sauce; thus dressed, the dish was universally commended, and we eat of it very heartily even when there was fresh pork upon the table.

From a variety of observations which were made with great care, it appeared probable in the highest degree, that, from the time of our leaving the land to the 13th of February, when we were in latitude 49° 32′, and longitude 90° 37′, we had no current to the west.

February. Monday 13.

At this time we had advanced about 12° to the westward, and 3 and to the northward of the Streight of Magellan: having been just three and thirty days in coming round the land of Terra del Fuego, or Cape Horn, from the east entrance of the Streight to this fituation. And though the doubling of Cape Horn is fo much dreaded, that, in the general opinion, it is more eligible to pass through the Streight of Magellan, we were not once brought under our close reef'd topfails after we left the Streight of Le Maire. The Dolphin in her last voyage, which she performed at the same feafon of the year with ours, was three months in getting through the Streight of Magellan, exclusive of the time that fhe lay in Port Famine; and I am perfuaded, from the winds we had, that if we had come by that passage, we should not at this time have been in these seas; that our people would have been fatigued, and our anchors, cables, fails and rig-



ging much damaged; neither of which inconveniencies we had now fuffered. But supposing it more eligible to go round the Cape, than through the Streight of Magellan; it may fill be questioned, whether it is better to go through the Streight of Le Maire, or fland to the eastward, and go round Staten Land. The advice given in the Account of Lord Anfon's voyage is, "That all fhips bound to the South " Seas, instead of passing through the Streight of Le Maire, " should constantly pass to the eastward of Staten Land, and " should be invariably bent on running to the fouthward as " far as the latitude of 61 or 62 degrees, before they endea-" your to stand to the westward." But, in my opinion, different circumftances may at one time render it eligible to pass through the Streight, and to keep to the eastward of Staten Land at another. If the land is fallen in with to the westward of the Streight, and the wind is favourable for going through, I think it would be very injudicious to lofe time by going round Staten Land, as I am confident that, by attending to the directions which I have given, the Streight may be passed with the utmost safety and convenience: but if, on the contrary, the land is fallen in with to the eastward of the Streight, and the wind should prove tempestuous or unfavourable, I think it would be best to go round Staten Land. But I cannot in any case concur in recommending the running into the latitude of 61 or 62, before any endeavour is made to fland to the westward. We found neither the current nor the florms which the running fo far to the fouthward is supposed necessary to avoid; and indeed, as the winds almost constantly blow from that quarter, it is scarcely possible to pursue the advice. The navigator has no choice but to fland to the fouthward, close upon a wind, and by keeping upon that tack, he will not only make fouthing, but westing; and, if the wind varies towards the north of

the west, his westing will be considerable. It will, indeed, be highly proper to make fure of a westing sufficient to double all the lands, before an attempt is made to fland to the northward, and to this every man's own prudence will of necessity direct him.

1769. February.

We now began to have firong gales and heavy feas, with irregular intervals of calm and fine weather.

CHAP. VII.

The Sequel of the Passage from Cate Horn to the newly discovered Islands in the South Seas, with a Description of their Figure and Appearance; some Account of the Inhabitants, and several Incidents that happened during the Course, and at the Ship's Arrival among them.

N the 1st of March, we were in latitude 38° 44' S. and longitude 110° 33' W. both by observation and by the log. This agreement, after a run of 660 leagues, was thought to be very extraordinary; and is a demonstration, that after we left the land of Cape Horn we had no current that affected the fhip. It renders it also highly probable, that we had been near no land of any confiderable extent; for currents are always found when land is not remote, and fometimes, particularly on the east fide of the continent in the North Sea, when land has been distant 100 leagues.

Many birds, as usual, were constantly about the ship, so that Mr. Banks killed no less than 62 in one day; and what is more remarkable, he caught two forest slies, both of them of the fame species, but different from any that have hither1769. March. to been described; these probably belonged to the birds, and came with them from the land, which we judged to be at a great distance. Mr. Banks also, about this time, found a large cuttle-fish, which had just been killed by the birds, floating in a mangled condition upon the water; it was very different from the cuttle-sishes that are found in the European seas; for its arms, instead of suckers, were furnished with a double row of very sharp talons, which resembled those of a cat, and, like them, were retractable into a sheath of skin, from which they might be thrust at pleasure. Of this cuttle-sish we made one of the best soups we had ever tasted.

Wednef. 8.

Fiday 24.

there was not one to be feen. We continued our course without any memorable event till the 24th, when some of the people who were upon the watch in the night, reported that they saw a log of wood pass by the ship; and that the sea, which was rather rough, became suddenly as smooth as a mill-pond. It was a general opinion, that there was land to windward; but I did not think myself at liberty to search for what I was not sure to find; though I judged we were not far from the islands that were discovered by Quiros in

1606. Our latitude was 22° 11'S. and longitude 127° 55' W.

The albatroffes now began to leave us, and after the 8th

Saturday 25.

On the 25th, about noon, one of the marines, a young fellow about twenty, was placed as centry at the cabbin door; while he was upon this duty, one of my fervants was at the fame place preparing to cut a piece of feal-skin into tobacco-pouches: he had promised one to several of the men, but had refused one to this young fellow, though he had asked him several times; upon which he jocularly threatened to steal one, if it should be in his power. It happened that the servant being called hassily away, gave the skin in charge to

71

Saturday 25

the centinel, without regarding what had paffed between them. The centinel immediately fecured a piece of the skin, which the other missing at his return, grew angry; but after fome altercation, contented himself with taking it away, declaring, that, for fo trifling an affair, he would not complain of him to the officers. But it happened that one of his fellow foldiers, over-hearing the dispute, came to the knowlege of what had happened, and told it to the rest; who, taking it into their heads to stand up for the honour of their corps, reproached the offender with great bitterness, and reviled him in the most opprobrious terms; they exaggerated his offence into a crime of the deepest die; they said it was a theft by a centry when he was upon duty, and of a thing that had been committed to his trust; they declared it a difgrace to affociate with him; and the Serjeant, in particular, faid that, if the person from whom the skin had been stolenwould not complain, he would complain himself; for that his honour would fuffer if the offender was not punished. From the fcoffs and reproaches of these men of honour, the poor young fellow retired to his hammock in an agony of confusion and shame. The Serjeant soon after went to him, and ordered him to follow him to the deck: he obeyed without reply; but it being in the dusk of the evening, he slipped from the Serjeant and went forward: he was feen by fome of the people, who thought he was gone to the head; but a fearch being made for him afterwards, it was found that he had thrown himfelf overboard; and I was then first made acquainted with the theft and its circumstances.

The loss of this man was the more regretted as he was remarkably quiet and industrious, and as the very action that put an end to his life was a proof of an ingenuous mind; for to such only difgrace is insupportable.

April.
Tuesday 4.
Lagoon
Island.

On Tuesday the 4th of April, about ten o'clock in the morning, Mr. Banks's fervant, Peter Brifcoe, difcovered land, bearing fouth, at the distance of about three or four leagues. I immediately hauled up for it, and found it to be an island of an oval form, with a lagoon in the middle, which occupied much the larger part of it; the border of land which circumferibes the lagoon is in many places very low and narrow, particularly on the fouth fide, where it confifts principally of a beach or reef of rocks: it has the fame appearance also in three places on the north side; so that, the firm land being disjoined, the whole looks like many islands covered with wood. On the west end of the island is a large tree, or clump of trees, that in appearance resembles a tower; and about the middle are two cocoa-nut trees, which rife above all the reft, and, as we came near to the island, appeared like a flag. We approached it on the north fide, and though we came within a mile, we found no bottom with 130 fathom of line, nor did there appear to be any anchorage about it. The whole is covered with trees of different verdure, but we could diffinguish none, even with our glaffes, except cocoa-nuts and palm-nuts. We faw feveral of the natives upon the shore, and counted four and twenty. They appeared to be tall, and to have heads remarkably large; perhaps they had fomething wound round them which we could not diffinguish; they were of a copper colour, and had long black hair. Eleven of them walked along the beach abreast of the ship, with poles or pikes in their hands which reached twice as high as themselves: while they walked on the beach they feemed to be naked; but foon after they retired, which they did as foon as the ship had passed the island, they covered themselves with fomething that made them appear of a light colour. Their habitations were under fome clumps of palm-nut trees, which which at a diffance appeared like high ground; and to us, who for a long time had feen nothing but water and fky, Tuefday 4. except the dreary hills of Terra del Fuego, these groves feemed a terrestrial paradise. To this spot, which lies in latitude 18° 47" S. and longitude 139° 28' W. we gave the name of LAGOON ISLAND. The variation of the needle here is 2° 54' E.

About one o'clock we made fail to the westward, and about Thrumbhalf an hour after three we faw land again to the N. W. We got up with it at funfet, and it proved to be a low woody island, of a circular form, and not much above a mile in compass. We discovered no inhabitants, nor could we diffinguish any cocoa-nut trees, though we were within half a mile of the shore. The land, however, was covered with verdure of many hues. 1 It lies in latitude 18° 35' S. and longitude 139° 48' W. and is distant from Lagoon Island, in the direction tion of N. 62 W. about feven leagues. We called it THRUMBE CAP. I discovered, by the appearance of the shore, that at this place it was low-water; and I had observed at Lagoon Island, that it was either high-water, or that the sea neither ebbed nor flowed: I infer, therefore, that a S. by E. or S.

We went on with a fine trade-wind and pleafant weather, Wednef. 5. and on the 5th, about three in the afternoon, we discovered land to the westward. It proved to be a low island, of much greater extent than either of those that we had seen before, being about ten or twelve leagues in compass. Several of us remained at the mast-head the whole evening, admiring its extraordinary figure: it was shaped exactly like a bow, the arch and cord of which were land, and the space between them water; the cord was a flat beach, without any figns of vegetation, having nothing upon it but heaps of fea-weed, VOL. II. which

moon makes high-water.

April. Wednes. 5. which lay in different ridges, as higher or lower tides had left them. It appeared to be about three or four leagues long, and not more than two hundred yards wide; but as a horizontal plain is always feen in perspective, and greatly fore-shortened, it is certainly much wider than it appeared: the horns, or extremities of the bow, were two large tufts of cocoa-nut trees; and much the greater part of the arch was covered with trees of different height, figure and hue; in some parts, however, it was naked and low like the cord: fome of us thought they discovered openings through the cord, into the pool, or lake, that was included between that and the bow; but whether there were or were not fuch openings is uncertain. We failed abreaft of the low beach, or bow-ftring, within less than a league of the shore, till sunset, and we then judged ourselves to be about half way between the two horns: here we brought to, and founded, but found no bottom with one hundred and thirty fathom; and, as it is dark almost instantly after funfet in these latitudes, we suddenly loft fight of the land, and making fail again, before the line was well hauled in, we fleered by the found of the breakers, which were distinctly heard till we got clear of the coast.

We knew this island to be inhabited, by smoke which we saw in different parts of it, and we gave it the name of Bow ISLAND. Mr. Gore, my Second Lieutenant, said, after we had sailed by the island, that he had seen several of the natives, under the first clump of trees, from the deck; that he had distinguished their houses, and seen several canoes hauled up under the shade; but in this he was more fortunate than any other person on board. The east end of this island, which from its sigure we called the Bow, lies in latitude 18° 23′ S. and longitude 141° 12′ W. we observed the variation of the compass to be 5° 38′ E.

On the next day, Thursday the 6th, about noon, we saw land again to the westward, and came up with it about three. It appeared to be two islands, or rather groups of islands, The Groups, extending from N.W. by N. to S. E. by S. about nine leagues. Of these, the two largest were separated from each other by a channel of about half a mile broad, and were feverally furrounded by fmaller islands, to which they were joined by reefs that lay under water.

These islands were long narrow strips of land, ranging in all directions, some of them ten miles or upwards in length, but none more than a quarter of a mile broad, and upon all of them there were trees of various kinds, particularly the cocoa-nut. The fouth-eastermost of them lies in the latitude of 18° 12' S. and longitude 142° 42' W. and at the distance of twenty-five leagues, in the direction of W. 1 N. from the west end of Bow Island. We ranged along the S. W. side of this island, and hauled into a bay which lies to the N. W. of the fouthermost point of the Group, where there was a fmooth fea, and the appearance of anchorage, without much furf on the shore. We founded, but we found no bottom with one hundred fathom, at the distance of no more than three quarters of a mile from the beach, and I did not think it prudent to go nearer.

While this was doing, feveral of the inhabitants affembled upon the shore, and some came out in their canoes as far as the reefs, but would not pass them: when we saw this, we ranged, with an eafy fail, along the shore; but just as we were passing the end of the island, six men, who had for fome time kept abreaft of the ship, suddenly launched two canoes with great quickness and dexterity, and three of them getting into each, they put off, as we imagined with a defign to come on board us; the ship was therefore brought

April.
Thurfday 6.

to, but they, like their fellows, stopped at the reef; we did not however immediately make fail, as we observed two messengers dispatched to them from the other canoes, which were of a much larger fize: we perceived that these messengers made great expedition, wading and swimming along the reef; at length they met, and the men on board the canoes making no dispositions to pass the reef, after having received the message, we judged that they had resolved to come no farther: after waiting, therefore, some little time longer, we stood off; but when we were got about two or three miles from the shore, we perceived some of the natives following us in a canoe with a fail; we did not, however, think it worth while to wait for her, and though she had passed the reef, she soon after gave over the chace.

According to the best judgment that we could form of the people when we were nearest the shore, they were about our fize, and well-made. They were of a brown complexion, and appeared to be naked; their hair, which was black, was confined by a fillet that went round the head, and fluck out behind like a bush. The greater part of them carried in their hands two weapons; one of them was a flender pole, from ten to fourteen feet long, on one end of which was a fmall knob, not unlike the point of a spear; the other was about four feet long, and shaped like a paddle, and possibly might be fo, for fome of their canoes were very fmall: those which we faw them launch feemed not intended to carry more than the three men that got into them: we faw others that had on board fix or feven men, and one of them hoisted a fail which did not feem to reach more than fix feet above the gunwale of the boat, and which, upon the falling of a flight shower, was taken down and converted into an awning or tilt. The canoe which followed us to fea hoisted a fail not unlike an English lug-sail, and almost as lofty as an English boat of the fame fize would have carried.

The people, who kept abreast of the ship on the beach, made many fignals; but whether they were intended to frighten us away, or invite us on shore, it is not easy to determine: we returned them by waving our hats and shouting, and they replied by fhouting again. We did not put their disposition to the test, by attempting to land; because, as the island was inconsiderable, and as we wanted nothing that it could afford, we thought it imprudent as well as cruel to risk a contest, in which the natives must have suffered by our fuperiority, merely to gratify an idle curiofity; especially as we expected soon to fall in with the island where we had been directed to make our astronomical observation. the inhabitants of which would probably admit us without opposition, as they were already acquainted with our strength. and might also procure us a ready and peaceable reception. among the neighbouring people, if we should defire it.

To these islands we gave the name of THE GROUPS.

On the 7th, about half an hour after fix in the morning, Friday 7. being just at day-break, we discovered another island to the northward, which we judged to be about four miles in circumference. The land lay very low, and there was a piece of water in the middle of it; there feemed to be some wood upon it, and it looked green and pleasant; but we saw neither cocoa trees nor inhabitants: it abounded however with birds, and we therefore gave it the name of BIRD-ISLAND.

It lies in latitude 17° 48'S. and longitude 143° 35' W. at the distance of ten leagues, in the direction W. 1 N. from the west end of the Groups. The variation here was 6° 32' E.

On the 8th, about two o'clock in the afternoon, we faw Saturday 8. land to the northward, and about funfet came abreast of it,

Chain Ifland.

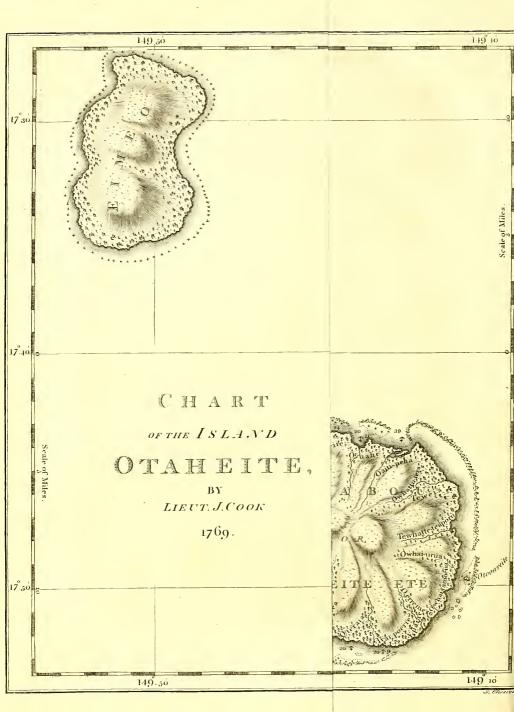
April.
Saturday 8.

at about the distance of two leagues. It appeared to be a double range of low woody islands joined together by reefs, so as to form one island, in the form of an ellipsis or oval, with a lake in the middle of it. The small islands and reefs that circumscribe the lake have the appearance of a chain, and we therefore gave it the name of Chain Island. Its length scenned to be about five leagues, in the direction of N.W. and S.E. and its breadth about five miles. The trees upon it appeared to be large, and we saw smoke rising in different parts of it from among them, a certain sign that it was inhabited. The middle of it lies in latitude 17° 23' S. and longitude 145° 54' W. and is distant from Bird Island forty-sive leagues in the direction of W. by N. The variation here was, by several azimuths, found to be 4° 54' E.

Monday ro.

On the 10th, having had a tempessuous night with thunder and rain, the weather was hazy till about nine o'clock in the morning, when it cleared up, and we saw the island to which Captain Wallis, who first discovered it, gave the name of Osnaburgh Island, called by the natives Maitea, bearing N.W. by W. distant about five leagues. It is a high round island, not above a league in circuit; in some parts it is covered with trees, and in others a naked rock. In this direction it looked like a high crown'd hat; but when it bears North, the top of it has more the appearance of the roof of a house. We made its latitude to be 17° 48'S. its longitude 148° 10'W. and its distance from Chain Island 44 leagues, in the direction of W. by S.

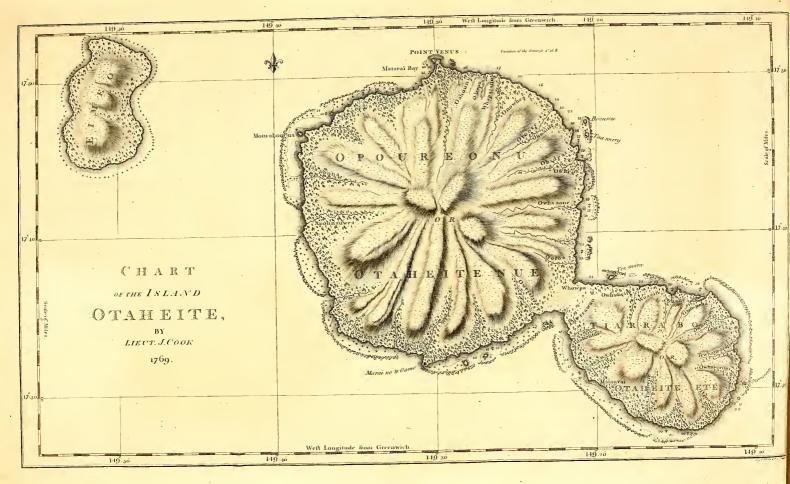




CHAP. VIII.

The Arrival of the Endeavour at Otaheite, called by Captain Wallis, King George the III.'s Island. Rules established for Traffic with the Natives, and an Account of several Incidents which happened in a Visit to Tootahah and Toubourai Tamaida, two Chiefs.

A BOUT one o'clock, on Monday the 10th of April, some of the people who were looking out for the island to which we were bound, faid they faw land alread, in that Monday 10. part of the horizon where it was expected to appear; but it was fo faint that, whether there was land in fight or not, remained a matter of dispute till sunset. The next morning, Tuesday 11. however, at fix o'clock, we were convinced that those who faid they had discovered land, were not mistaken; it appeared to be very high and mountainous, extending from W. by S. 1. S. to W. by N. 1. N. and we knew it to be the fame that Captain Wallis had called King George the III.'s Island. We were delayed in our approach to it by light airs and calms, fo that in the morning of the 12th we were but little nearer Wednes, 12than we had been the night before; but about feven a breeze fprung up, and before eleven feveral canoes were feen making towards the ship: there were but few of them, however. that would come near; and the people in those that did, could not be perfuaded to come on board. In every canoe there were young plantains, and branches of a tree which the Indians call E'Midbo; these, as we afterwards learnt, were brought as tokens of peace and amity, and the people in one of the canoes handed them up the ship's side, making signals



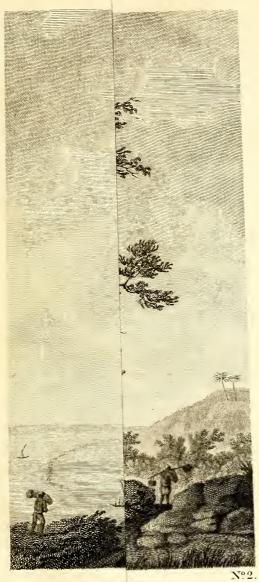
CHAP. VIII.

The Arrival of the Endeavour at Otaheite, called by Captain Wallis, King George the III.'s Island. Rules established for Traffic with the Natives, and an Account of several Incidents which happened in a Visit to Tootahah and Toubourai Tamaida, two Chiefs.

A BOUT one o'clock, on Monday the 10th of April, some of the people who were looking out for the island to which we were bound, faid they faw land ahead, in that Monday 10. part of the horizon where it was expected to appear; but it was fo faint that, whether there was land in fight or not, remained a matter of dispute till sunset. The next morning, Tuesday 11. however, at fix o'clock, we were convinced that those who faid they had discovered land, were not mistaken; it appeared to be very high and mountainous, extending from W. by S. ¹/₂S. to W. by N. ¹/₂ N. and we knew it to be the fame that Captain Wallis had called King George the III.'s Island. We were delayed in our approach to it by light airs and calms, fo that in the morning of the 12th we were but little nearer Wednes, 12, than we had been the night before; but about feven a breeze fprung up, and before eleven feveral canoes were feen making towards the ship: there were but few of them, however, that would come near; and the people in those that did, could not be perfuaded to come on board. In every canoe there were young plantains, and branches of a tree which the Indians call E'Midbo; these, as we afterwards learnt, were brought as tokens of peace and amity, and the people in one of the canoes handed them up the ship's side, making signals

at the fame time with great earnestness, which we did not immediately understand; at length we guessed that they wished these symbols should be placed in some conspicuous part of the ship; we, therefore, immediately stuck them among the rigging, at which they expressed the greatest satisfaction. We then purchased their cargoes, consisting of cocoa-nuts, and various kinds of fruit, which after our long voyage were very acceptable.

We flood on with an eafy fail all night, with foundings Thursday 13. from 22 fathom to 12, and about seven o'clock in the morning we came to an anchor in 13 fathom, in Port-royal bay, called by the natives Matavai. We were immediately furrounded by the natives in their canoes, who gave us cocoanuts, fruit refembling apples, bread-fruit, and some small fishes, in exchange for beads and other trifles. They had with them a pig, which they would not part with for any thing but a hatchet, and therefore we refused to purchase it; because, if we gave them a hatchet for a pig now, we knew they would never afterwards fell one for lefs, and we could not afford to buy as many as it was probable we should want at that price. The bread-fruit grows on a tree that is about the fize of a middling oak: its leaves are frequently a foot and an half long, of an oblong shape, deeply sinuated like those of the fig-tree, which they resemble in confistence and colour, and in the exuding of a white milky juice upon being broken. The fruit is about the fize and shape of a child's head, and the furface is reticulated not much unlike a truffle: it is covered with a thin skin, and has a core about as big as the handle of a fmall knife: the eatable part lies between the skin and the core; it is as white as snow, and formewhat of the confishence of new bread: it must be roasted before it is eaten, being first divided into three or four parts:

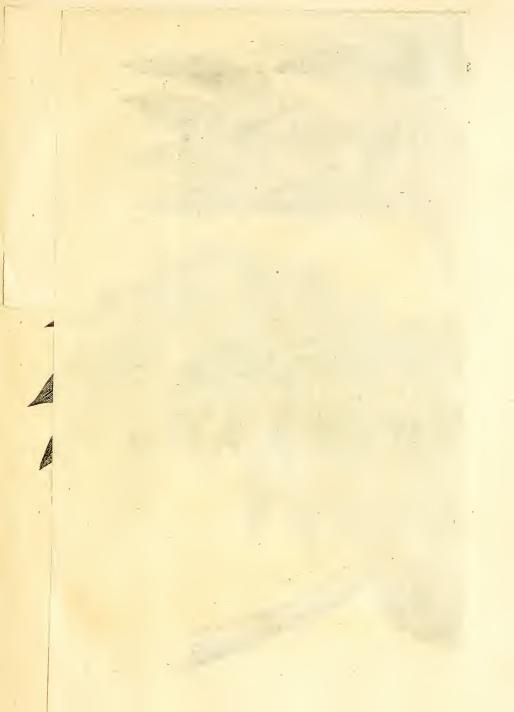


at the fame time with great earnestness, which we did not immediately understand; at length we guessed that they wished these symbols should be placed in some conspicuous part of the ship; we, therefore, immediately stuck them among the rigging, at which they expressed the greatest satisfaction. We then purchased their cargoes, consisting of cocoa-nuts, and various kinds of fruit, which after our long voyage were very acceptable.

We flood on with an eafy fail all night, with foundings Thursday 13. from 22 fathom to 12, and about seven o'clock in the morning we came to an anchor in 13 fathom, in Port-royal bay, called by the natives Matavai. We were immediately furrounded by the natives in their canoes, who gave us cocoanuts, fruit resembling apples, bread-fruit, and some small fishes, in exchange for beads and other trifles. They had with them a pig, which they would not part with for any thing but a hatchet, and therefore we refused to purchase it; because, if we gave them a hatchet for a pig now, we knew they would never afterwards fell one for lefs, and we could not afford to buy as many as it was probable we should want at that price. The bread-fruit grows on a tree that is about the fize of a middling oak: its leaves are frequently a foot and an half long, of an oblong shape, deeply sinuated like those of the fig-tree, which they resemble in consistence and colour, and in the exuding of a white milky juice upon being broken. The fruit is about the fize and shape of a child's head, and the furface is reticulated not much unlike a truffle: it is covered with a thin skin, and has a core about as big as the handle of a fmall knife: the eatable part lies between the skin and the core; it is as white as snow, and fomewhat of the confishence of new bread: it must be roasted before it is eaten, being first divided into three or four parts:













its tafle is infipid, with a flight fweetness somewhat resembling that of the crumb of wheaten-bread mixed with a Jerusalem artichoke.

April.
Thurfday 13.

Among others who came off to the fhip was an elderly man, whose name, as we learnt afterwards, was Owhaw, and who was immediately known to Mr. Gore, and several others who had been here with Captain Wallis; as I was informed that he had been very useful to them, I took him on board the ship with some others, and was particularly attentive to gratify him, as I hoped he might also be useful to us.

As our flay here was not likely to be very fhort, and as it was necessary that the merchandise which we had brought for traffic with the natives should not diminish in its value, which it would certainly have done, if every person had been left at liberty to give what he pleased for such things as he should purchase; at the same time that confusion and quarrels must necessarily have arisen from there being no standard at market: I drew up the following rules, and ordered that they should be punctually observed.

Rules to be observed by every person in or belonging to his Majesty's Bark the Endeavour, for the better establishing a regular and uniform trade for provision, &c. with the inhabitants of George's Island.

"I. To endeavour, by every fair means, to cultivate a friendship with the natives; and to treat them with all imaginable humanity.

"II. A proper person, or persons, will be appointed to trade with the natives for all manner of provisions, fruit, and other productions of the earth; and no officer or sea"man, or other person belonging to the ship, excepting such as are so appointed, shall trade or offer to trade for any fort Vol. II.

M "of

April.
Thurfday 13.

" of provision, fruit, or other productions of the earth, unless they have leave so to do.

"III. Every person employed on shore, on any duty what"foever, is strictly to attend to the same; and if by any ne"glect he loseth any of his arms, or working tools, or suffers

" them to be stolen, the full value thereof will be charged

" against his pay, according to the custom of the navy in

" fuch cases, and he shall receive such farther punishment

" as the nature of the offence may deferve.

"IV. The fame penalty will be inflicted on every perform who is found to embezzle, trade, or offer to trade, with any part of the ship's stores of what nature soever.

"V. No fort of iron, or any thing that is made of iron, or any fort of cloth, or other useful or necessary articles, are to be given in exchange for any thing but provision.

" Ј. Соок."

As foon as the ship was properly secured, I went on shore with Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, a party of men under arms, and our friend Owhaw. We were received from the boat by some hundreds of the inhabitants, whose looks at least gave us welcome, though they were struck with such awe, that the first who approached us crouched so low that he almost crept upon his hands and knees. It is remarkable that he, like the people in the canoes, presented to us the same symbol of peace that is known to have been in use among the ancient and mighty nations of the northern hemisphere, the green branch of a tree. We received it with looks and gestures of kindness and satisfaction; and observing that each of them held one in his hand, we immediately gathered every one a bough, and carried it in our hands in the same manner.

Thurfday 13.

They marched with us about half a mile towards the place where the Dolphin had watered, conducted by Owhaw; they then made a full flop, and having laid the ground bare, by clearing away all the plants that grew upon it, the principal perfons among them threw their green branches upon the naked fpot, and made figns that we should do the same; we immediately showed our readiness to comply, and to give a greater folemnity to the rite, the marines were drawn up, and marching in order, each dropped his bough upon those of the Indians, and we followed their example. We then proceeded, and when we came to the watering-place it was intimated to us by figns, that we might occupy that ground, but it happened not to be fit for our purpose. During our walk they had shaken off their first timid sense of our superiority, and were become familiar: they went with us from the watering-place and took a circuit through the woods: as we went along, we distributed beads and other small prefents among them, and had the fatisfaction to fee that they were much gratified. Our circuit was not less than four or five miles, through groves of trees, which were loaded with cocoa-nuts and bread-fruit, and afforded the most grateful shade. Under these trees were the habitations of the people, most of them being only a roof without walls, and the whole fcene realized the poetical fables of Arcadia. We remarked however, not without fome regret, that in all our walk we had feen only two hogs, and not a fingle fowl. Those of our company who had been here with the Dolphin told us, that none of the people whom we had yet feen were of the first class; they suspected that the chiefs had removed, and upon carrying us to the place where what they called the Queen's palace had flood, we found that no traces of it were left. We determined therefore to return in the morning, and endeayour to find out the Noblesse in their retreats.

In the morning, however, before we could leave the ship, several canoes came about us, most of them from the westward, and two of them were filled with people, who by their dress and deportment appeared to be of a superior rank: two of these came on board, and each singled out his friend; one of them, whose name we found to be Matahah, fixed upon Mr. Banks, and the other upon me: this ceremony consisted in taking off great part of their clothes and putting them upon us. In return for this, we presented each of them with a hatchet and some beads. Soon after they made signs for us to go with them to the places where they lived, pointing to the S. W.; and as I was desirous of finding a more commodious harbour, and making farther trial of the disposition of the people, I consented.

I ordered out two boats, and with Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, the other gentlemen, and our two Indian friends, we embarked for our expedition. After rowing about a league, they made figns that we should go on shore, and gave us to understand that this was the place of their residence. We accordingly landed, among feveral hundreds of the natives, who conducted us into a house of much greater length than any we had feen. When we entered, we faw a middle-aged man, whose name we afterwards discovered to be TOOTAHAH; mats were immediately spread, and we were defired to fit down over against him. Soon after we were feated, he ordered a cock and hen to be brought out, which he presented to Mr. Banks and me; we accepted the present, and in a fhort time each of us received a piece of cloth, perfumed after their manner, by no means difagreeably, which they took great pains to make us remark. The piece prefented to Mr. Banks was eleven yards long and two wide; in return for which, he gave a laced filk neckcloth, which he happened to have on, and a linen pocket handkerchief:

Tootahah immediately dreffed himself in this new finery, with an air of perfect complacency and satisfaction. But it is now time that I should take some notice of the ladies.

April.
Friday 14.

Soon after the interchanging of our prefents with Tootahah, they attended us to feveral large houses, in which we walked about with great freedom: they shewed us all the civility of which, in our situation, we could accept; and, on their part, seemed to have no scruple that would have prevented its being carried farther. The houses, which as I have observed before, are all open, except a roof, afforded no place of retirement; but the ladies, by frequently pointing to the mats upon the ground, and sometimes seating themselves and drawing us down upon them, left us no room to doubt of their being much less jealous of observation than we were.

We now took leave of our friendly Chief, and directed our course along the shore; when we had walked about a mile, we met, at the head of a great number of people, another Chief, whose name was Tuboural Tamaide, with whom we were also to ratify a treaty of peace, with the ceremony of which we were now become better acquainted. Having received the branch which he presented to us, and given another in return, we laid our hands upon our lest breasts, and pronounced the word Taio, which we supposed to signify friend; the Chief then gave us to understand, that if we chose to eat, he had victuals ready for us. We accepted his offer, and dined very heartily upon sish, bread-fruit, cocoa-nuts and plantains, dressed after their manner; they eat some of their fish raw, and raw sish was offered to us, but we declined that part of the entertainment.

During this visit a wife of our noble host, whose name was Tomio, did Mr. Banks the honour to place herself upon

the fame matt, close by him. Tomio was not in the first bloom of her youth, nor did she appear to have been ever remarkable for her beauty: he did not therefore, I believe, pay her the most flattering attention: it happened too, as a farther mortification to this lady, that feeing a very pretty girl among the crowd, he, not adverting to the dignity of his companion, beckoned her to come to him: the girl, after some entreaty, complied, and fat down on the other side of him; he loaded her with beads, and every showy trifle that would pleafe her: his Princefs, though fhe was fomewhat mortified at the preference that was given to her rival, did not discontinue her civilities, but still assiduously supplied him with the milk of the cocoa-nut, and fuch other dainties as were in her reach. This fcene might possibly have become more curious and interesting, if it had not been suddenly interrupted by an interlude of a more ferious kind. Just at this time, Dr. Solander and Mr. Monkhouse complained that their pockets had been picked. Dr. Solander had loft an opera glass in a shagreen case, and Mr. Monkhouse his fnuff-box. This incident unfortunately put an end to the good-humour of the company. Complaint of the injury was made to the Chief; and, to give it weight, Mr. Banks flarted up, and haftily flruck the but end of his firelock upon the ground: this action, and the noise that accompanied it, flruck the whole affembly with a panic, and every one of the natives ran out of the house with the utmost precipitation, except the Chief, three women, and two or three others, who appeared by their drefs to be of a fuperior rank.

The Chief, with a mixture of confusion and concern, took Mr. Banks by the hand, and led him to a large quantity of cloth, which lay at the other end of the house: this he of-

4

fered to him piece by piece, intimating by figns, that if that would atone for the wrong which had been done, he might take any part of it, or, if he pleased, the whole. Mr. Banks put it by, and gave him to understand, that he wanted nothing but what had been dishonestly taken away. Toubourai Tamaide then went hastily out, leaving Mr. Banks with his wife Tomio, who during the whole scene of terror and confusion had kept constantly at his side, and intimating his defire that he should wait there till his return. Mr. Banks accordingly fat down, and converfed with her, as well as he could by figns, about half an hour. The chief then came back with the fnuff-box and the case of the opera glass in his hand, and, with a joy in his countenance that was painted with a strength of expression which distinguishes these people from all others, delivered them to the owners. The case of the opera glass, however, upon being opened, was found to be empty; upon this discovery, his countenance changed in a moment; and catching Mr. Banks again by the hand, he rushed out of the house, without uttering any sound, and led him along the shore, walking with great rapidity: when they had got about a mile from the house, a woman met him and gave him a piece of cloth, which he hastily took. from her, and continued to press forward with it in his hand. Dr. Solander and Mr. Monkhouse had followed them. and they came at length to a house where they were received by a woman, to whom he gave the cloth, and intimated to the gentlemen that they should give her some beads. They immediately complied; and the beads and cloth being depofited upon the floor, the woman went out, and in about half an hour returned with the opera glass, expressing the same joy upon the occasion that had before been expressed by the Chief. The beads were now returned, with an inflexible resolution

87

refolution not to accept them; and the cloth was, with with the same pertinacity, forced upon Dr. Solander, as a recompence for the injury that had been done him. He could not avoid accepting the cloth, but insisted in his turn upon giving a new present of beads to the woman. It will not perhaps be easy to account for all the steps that were taken in the recovery of this glass and snuff-box; but this cannot be thought strange, considering that the scene of action was among a people whose language, policy and connections are even now but imperfectly known; upon the whole, however, they show an intelligence and influence which would do honour to any system of government, however regular and improved. In the evening, about six o'clock, we returned to the ship.

CHAP. IX.

A Place fixed upon for an Observatory and Fort: an Excursion into the Woods, and its Consequences. The Fort erected: a Visit from several Chiefs on board and at the Fort, with some Account of the Music of the Natives, and the Manner in which they dispose of their Dead.

On the next morning, Saturday the 15th, feveral of the Chiefs whom we had feen the day before came on board, and brought with them, hogs, bread-fruit, and other refreshments, for which we gave them hatchets and linen, and such things as seemed to be most acceptable.

April.
Saturday 15.

As in my excursion to the westward, I had not found any more convenient harbour than that in which we lay, I determined to go on shore and fix upon some spot, commanded by the ship's guns, where I might throw up a small fort for our defence, and prepare for making our astronomical observation.

I therefore took a party of men, and landed without delay, accompanied by Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and the aftronomer, Mr. Green. We foon fixed upon a part of the fandy beach, on the N. E. point of the bay, which was in every respect convenient for our purpose, and not near any habitation of the natives. Having marked out the ground that we intended to occupy, a small tent belonging to Mr. Banks was set up, which had been brought on shore for that purpose: by this time a great number of the people had gathered about us; but, as it appeared, only to look on, there Vol. II.

April.
Saturday 15.

not being a fingle weapon of any kind among them. I intimated, however, that none of them were to come within the line I had drawn, except one who appeared to be a chief, and Owhaw. To these two persons I addressed myself by figns, and endeavoured to make them understand, that we wanted the ground which we had marked out to fleep upon for a certain number of nights, and that then we should go away. Whether I was understood I cannot certainly determine; but the people behaved with a deference and respect that at once pleafed and furprifed us: they fat down peaceably without the circle, and looked on, without giving us any interruption, till we had done, which was upwards of two hours. As we had feen no poultry, and but two hogs, in our walk when we were last on shore at this place, we suspected that, upon our arrival, they had been driven farther up the country; and the rather, as Owhaw was very importunate with us, by figns, not to go into the woods, which, however, and partly for these reasons, we were determined to do. Having therefore appointed the thirteen marines and a petty officer to guard the tent, we fet out, and a great number of the natives joined our party. As we were croffing a little river that lay in our way we faw fome ducks, and Mr. Banks, as foon as he had got over, fired at them, and happened to kill three: at one shot: this struck them with the utmost terror, so that most of them fell suddenly to the ground, as if they also had been shot at the same discharge: it was not long, however, before they recovered from their fright, and we continued our rout; but we had not gone far before we were alarmed by the report of two pieces, which were fired by the guard at the tent. We had then straggled a little distance from each other, but Owhaw immediately called us together, and by waving his hand, fent away every Indian who followed us except three, each of whom, as a pledge of peace on their part,

91

part, and an entreaty that there might be peace on ours, hastily broke a branch from the trees, and came to us with it in their hands. As we had too much reason to fear that some mischief had happened, we hasted back to the tent, which was not distant above half a mile, and when we came up, we found it entirely deserted, except by our own people.

April. Saturday 15.

It appeared, that one of the Indians who remained about the tent after we left it, had watched his opportunity, and, taking the centry unawares, had fnatched away his mufquet. Upon this, the petty officer, a midfhipman, who commanded the party, perhaps from a fudden fear of farther violence, perhaps from the natural petulance of power newly acquired, and perhaps from a brutality in his nature, ordered the marines to fire: the men, with as little confideration or humanity as the officer, immediately discharged their pieces among the thickest of the flying crowd, confishing of more than a hundred; and observing that the thief did not fall, pursued him, and shot him dead. We afterwards learnt, that none of the others were either killed or wounded.

Owhaw, who had never left us, observing that we were now totally deserted, got together a few of those who had fled, though not without some difficulty, and ranged them about us: we endeavoured to justify our people as well as we could, and to convince the Indians that if they did no wrong to us, we should do no wrong to them: they went away without any appearance of distrust or resentment; and having struck our tent, we returned to the ship, but by no means satisfied with the transactions of the day.

Upon questioning our people more particularly, whose conduct they soon perceived we could not approve, they alleged that the centinel whose musquet was saken away, was violently assaulted and thrown down, and that a push

April.
Saturday 15.

was afterwards made at him by the man who took the mustquet, before any command was given to fire. It was also fuggested, that Owhaw had fuspicions, at least, if not certain knowlege, that fomething would be attempted against our people at the tent, which made him fo very earnest in his endeavours to prevent our leaving it; others imputed his importunity to his defire that we should confine ourselves to the beach: and it was remarked that neither Owhaw, nor the Chiefs who remained with us after he had fent the rest of the people away, would have inferred the breach of peace from the firing at the tent, if they had had no reason to fuspect that some injury had been offered by their countrymen; especially as Mr. Banks had just fired at the ducks: and yet that they did infer a breach of peace from that incident, as was manifest from their waving their hands for the people to disperse, and instantly pulling green branches from the trees. But what were the real circumstances of this unhappy affair, and whether either and which of these conjectures were true, can never certainly be known.

Sunday 16.

The next morning but few of the natives were feen upon the beach, and not one of them came off to the ship. This convinced us that our endeavours to quiet their apprehensions had not been effectual; and we remarked with particular regret, that we were deserted even by Owhaw, who had hitherto been so constant in his attachment, and so active in renewing the peace that had been broken.

Appearances being thus unfavourable, I warped the ship nearer to the shore, and moored her in such a manner as to command all the N. E. part of the bay, particularly the place which I had marked out for the building a fort. In the evening, however, I went on shore with only a boat's crew, and some of the Gentlemen: the natives gathered about us, but

not in the fame number as before; there were I believe between thirty and forty, and they trafficked with us for cocoanuts and other fruit, to all appearance as friendly as ever.

1769.

On the 17th, early in the morning, we had the misfortune Monday 175. to lofe Mr. Buchan, the perfon whom Mr. Banks had brought out as a painter of landscapes and figures. He was a soberdiligent, and ingenious young man, and greatly regretted by Mr. Banks; who hoped, by his means, to have gratified his friends in England with representations of this country. and its inhabitants, which no other person on board could. delineate with the fame accuracy and elegance. He had always been subject to epileptic fits, one of which seized him. on the mountains of Terra del Fuego, and this diforder being aggravated by a bilious complaint which he contracted on board the ship, at length put an end to his life. It was at first proposed to bury him on shore, but Mr. Banks thinking that it might perhaps give offence to the natives, with whose. customs we were then wholly unacquainted, we committed. his body to the fea, with as much decency and folemnity as our circumstances and situation would admit.

In the forenoon of this day we received a visit from Tubourai Tamaide and Tootahah, our Chiefs, from the West: they brought with them, as emblems of peace, not branches of plantain, but two young trees, and would not venture onboard till these had been received, having probably been alarmed by the mischief which had been done at the tent. Each of them also brought, as propitiatory gifts, some breadfruit, and a hog ready dreffed: this was a most acceptable. prefent, as we perceived that hogs were not always to be got; and in return we gave to each of our noble benefactors a hatchet and a nail. In the evening we went on shore and fet up a tent, in which Mr. Green and myfelf fpent the night,

1769. April. in order to observe an eclipse of the first fatellite of Jupiter; but the weather becoming cloudy, we were disappointed.

Tuefday 18.

On the 18th, at day-break, I went on shore, with as many people as could possibly be spared from the ship, and began to erect our fort. While fome were employed in throwing up intrenchments, others were bufy in cutting pickets and fascines, which the natives, who soon gathered round us as they had been used to do, were so far from hindering, that many of them voluntarily affifted us, bringing the pickets and fascines from the wood where they had been cut, with great alacrity: we had indeed been fo fcrupulous of invading their property, that we purchased every stake which was used upon this occasion, and cut down no tree till we had first obtained their confent. The soil where we conflructed our fort was fandy, and this made it necessary to strengthen the intrenchments with wood; three fides were to be fortified in this manner; the fourth was bounded by a river, upon the banks of which I proposed to place a proper number of water-casks. This day we served pork to the thip's company for the first time, and the Indians brought down fo much bread-fruit and cocoa-nuts, that we found it necessary to fend away part of them unbought, and to acquaint them, by figns, that we should want no more for two days to come. Every thing was purchased this day with beads: a fingle bead, as big as a pea, being the purchase of five or fix cocoa-nuts, and as many of the bread-fruit. Mr. Banks's tent was got up before night within the works, and he flept on shore for the first time. Proper centries were placed round it, but no Indian attempted to approach it the whole night.

Wednes. 19.

The next morning, our friend Tubourai Tamaide made Mr. Banks a vifit at the tent, and brought with him not only only his wife and family, but the roof of a house, and feveral materials for fetting it up, with furniture and implements of various kinds, intending, as we understood him, to take up his residence in our neighbourhood: this instance of his confidence and good-will gave us great pleafure, and we determined to strengthen his attachment to us by every means in our power. Soon after his arrival, he took Mr. Banks by the hand, and leading him out of the line, fignified that he should accompany him into the woods. Mr. Banks readily confented, and having walked with him about a quarter of a mile, they arrived at a kind of awning which he had already fet up, and which feemed to be his occasional habitation. Here he unfolded a bundle of his country cloth, and taking out two garments, one of red cloth, and the other of very neat matting, he clothed Mr. Banks in them, and without any other ceremony, immediately conducted him back to the tent. His attendants foon after brought him fome pork and bread-fruit, which he eat, dipping his meat into falt water instead of fauce: after his meal he retired to Mr. Banks's bed, and flept about an hour. In the afternoon, his wife Tomio brought to the tent a young man about two and twenty years of age, of a very comely appearance, whom they both feemed to acknowledge as their fon, though we afterwards discovered that he was not fo. In the evening, this young man and another Chief, who had also paid us a visit, went away to the westward, but Tubourai Tamaide and his wife returned to the awning in the fkirts of the wood.

Our Surgeon, Mr. Monkhouse, having walked out this evening, reported, that he had seen the body of the man who had been shot at the tents, which he said was wrapped in cloth, and placed on a kind of bier, supported by stakes, under a roof that seemed to have been set up for the pur-

1769: April. Wednes. 19. pose: that near it were deposited some instruments of war, and other things, which he would particularly have examined but for the stench of the body, which was intolerable. He said, that he saw also two more sheds of the same kind, in one of which were the bones of a human body that had sain till they were quite dry. We discovered afterwards, that this was the way in which they usually disposed of their dead.

A kind of market now began to be kept just without the lines, and was plentifully supplied with every thing but pork. Tubourai Tamaide was our constant guest, imitating our manners, even to the using of a knife and fork, which he did very handily.

As my curiofity was excited by Mr. Monkhouse's account of the fituation of the man who had been fhot, I took an opportunity to go with fome others to fee it. I found the shed under which his body lay, close by the house in which he refided when he was alive, fome others being not more than ten yards distant; it was about 15 feet long, and 11 broad, and of a proportionable height: one end was wholly open, and the other end, and the two fides, were partly enclosed with a kind of wicker work. The bier on which the corps was deposited, was a frame of wood like that in which the fea beds, called cotts, are placed, with a matted bottom, and supported by four posts, at the height of about five feet from the ground. The body was covered first with a matt, and then with white cloth; by the fide of it lay a wooden mace, one of their weapons of war, and near the head of it, which lay next to the close end of the shed, lay two cocoa nut-shells. fuch as are fometimes used to carry water in; at the other end a bunch of green leaves, with fome dried twigs, all tied together, were fluck in the ground, by which lay a flone

97

Wednef. 19

about as big as a cocoa-nut: near these lay one of the young plantain trees, which are used for emblems of peace, and close by it a stone ax. At the open end of the shed also hung, in feveral strings, a great number of palm-nuts, and without the shed, was stuck upright in the ground, the stem of a plantain tree about five feet high, upon the top of which was placed a cocoa nut-shell full of fresh water: against the fide of one of the posts hung a small bag, containing a few pieces of bread-fruit ready roasted, which were not all put in at the same time, for some of them were fresh, and others stale. I took notice that feveral of the natives observed us with a mixture of folicitude and jealoufy in their countenances, and by their gestures expressed uneafiness when we went near the body, standing themselves at a little distance while we were making our examination, and appearing to be pleafed when we came away.

Our residence on shore would by no means have been disagreeable if we had not been incessantly tormented by the slies, which, among other mischief, made it almost impossible for Mr. Parkinson, Mr. Banks's natural history painter, to work; for they not only covered his subject so as that no part of its surface could be seen, but even eat the colour off the paper as fast as he could lay it on. We had recourse to musquito nets and sly-traps, which, though they made the inconvenience tolerable, were very far from removing it.

On the 22d, Tootahah gave us a specimen of the music Saturday 22, of this country; four persons performed upon flutes which had only two stops, and therefore could not sound more than four notes, by half tones: they were sounded like our Geraman flutes, except that the performer, instead of applying it

Vol. II.

0

tó

April.
Saturday 22.

to his mouth, blew into it with one nostril, while he stopped the other with his thumb: to these instruments four other persons sung, and kept very good time; but only one tune was played during the whole concert.

Several of the natives brought us axes, which they had received from on board the Dolphin, to grind and repair; but among others, there was one which became the fubject of much fpeculation, as it appeared to be French: after much enquiry, we learnt that a fhip had been here between our arrival and the departure of the Dolphin, which we then conjectured to have been a Spaniard, but now know to have been the Boudeuse, commanded by M. Bougainville.

CHAP. X.

An Excursion to the Eastward, an Account of several Incidents that happened both on board and on shore, and of the first Interview with Oberea, the Person who, when the Dolphin was here, was supposed to be Queen of the Island, with a Description of the Fort.

N the 24th, Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander examined the country for feveral miles along the shore to the eastward: for about two miles it was flat and fertile; after that the hills firetched quite to the water's edge, and a little farther ran out into the fea, fo that they were obliged to climb over them. These hills, which were barren, continued for about three miles more, and then terminated in a large plain, which was full of good houses, and people who appeared to live in great affluence. In this place there was a river, much more confiderable than that at our fort, which issued from a deep and beautiful valley, and, where our travellers croffed it, though at some distance from the sea, was near one hundred yards wide. About a mile beyond this river the country became again barren, the rocks every where projecting into the fea, for which reason they resolved to return. Just as they had formed this resolution, one of the natives offered them refreshment, which they accepted. They found this man to be of a kind that has been described by various authors, as mixed with many nations, but distinct from them all. His skin was of a dead white, without the least appearance of what is called complexion, though fome parts of his

0 2

April.

Monday 24.

body

April.

Monday 24.

body were in a fmall degree lefs white than others: his hair, eye-brows, and beard were as white as his fkin; his eyes appeared as if they were bloodshot, and he seemed to be very short-sighted.

At their return they were met by Tubourai Tamaide, and his women, who, at feeing them, felt a joy which not being able to express, they burst into tears, and wept some time before their passion could be restrained.

Tuesday 25.

This evening Dr. Solander lent his knife to one of these women, who neglected to return it, and the next morning Mr. Banks's also was missing; upon this occasion I must bear my testimony, that the people of this country, of all ranks, men and women, are the errantest thieves upon the face of the earth: the very day after we arrived here, when they came on board us, the chiefs were employed in flealing what they could in the cabbin, and their dependants were no less industrious in other parts of the ship; they snatched up every thing that it was possible for them to secrete till they got on shore, even to the glass ports, two of which they carried off undetected. Tubourai Tamaide was the only one except Tootahah who had not been found guilty, and the prefumption, arifing from this circumstance, that he was exempt from a vice, of which the whole nation befides were guilty, cannot be fupposed to outweigh strong appearances to the contrary. Mr. Banks therefore, though not without some reluctance, accused him of having stolen his knife: he folemnly and fleadily denied that he knew any thing of it; upon which Mr. Banks made him understand, that whoever had taken it, he was determined to have it returned: upon this refolute declaration, one of the natives who was prefent, produced a rag in which three knives were very carefully tied up. One was that which Dr. Solander

101

had lent to the woman, another was a table knife belonging to me, and the owner of the third was not known. With these the chief immediately set out, in order to make restitution of them to their owners at the tents. Mr. Banks remained with the women, who expressed great apprehensions that some mischief was designed against their lord. When he came to the tents he restored one of the knives to Dr. Solander and another to me, the third not being owned, and then began to fearch for Mr. Banks's in all the places where he had ever feen it. After some time, one of Mr. Banks's fervants, understanding what he was about, immediately fetched his master's knife, which it seems he had laid by the day before, and till now knew nothing of its having been miffed. Tubourai Tamaide, upon this demonstration of his innocence, expressed the strongest emotions of mind, both in his looks and gestures; the tears started from his eyes, and he made figns, with the knife, that, if he was ever guilty of fuch an action as had been imputed to him, he would fubmit to have his throat cut. He then rushed out of the lines. and returned hastily to Mr. Banks, with a countenance that feverely reproached him with his fuspicions. Mr. Banks foon understood that the knife had been received from his fervant, and was fcarcely less affected at what had happened than the Chief; he felt himself to be the guilty person, and was very defirous to atone for his fault. The poor Indian, however violent his paffions, was a stranger to fullen resentment; and upon Mr. Banks's spending a little time familiarly with him, and making him a few trifling presents, he forgot the wrong that had been done him, and was perfectly reconciled.

Upon this occasion it may be observed, that these people have a knowlege of right and wrong from the mere dictates of natural conscience; and involuntarily condemn them-

April.
Tuesday 25.

felves when they do that to others, which they would condemn others for doing to them. That Tubourai Tamaide felt the force of moral obligation, is certain; for the imputation of an action which he confidered as indifferent, would not, when it appeared to be groundless, have moved him with fuch excess of passion. We must indeed estimate the virtue of these people, by the only standard of morality, the conformity of their conduct to what in their opinion is right; but we must not hastily conclude that theft is a testimony of the fame depravity in them that it is in us, in the inflances in which our people were fufferers by their dishonesty; for their temptation was fuch, as to furmount would be confidered as a proof of uncommon integrity among those who have more knowlege, better principles, and ftronger motives to resist the temptations of illicit advantage: an Indian among penny knives, and beads, or even nails and broken glass, is in the same state of trial with the meanest servant in Europe among unlocked coffers of jewels and gold.

Wednes. 26.

On the 26th, I mounted fix fwivel guns upon the fort, which I was forry to fee flruck the natives with dread: fome fishermen who lived upon the point removed farther off, and Owhaw told us, by figns, that in four days we should fire great guns.

Thursday 27.

On the 27th, Tubourai Tamaide, with a friend, who eat with a voracity that I never faw before, and the three women that usually attended him, whose names were Terapo, Tirao, and Omie, dined at the fort: in the evening they took their leave, and set out for the house which Tubourai Tamaide had set up in the skirts of the wood; but in less than a quarter of an hour he returned in great emotion, and hastily seizing Mr. Banks's arm, made signs that he should follow him. Mr. Banks immediately complied, and

they foon came up to a place where they found the ship's butcher, with a reaping-hook in his hand: here the Chief ftopped, and, in a transport of rage which rendered his figns fcarcely intelligible, intimated that the butcher had threatened, or attempted, to cut his wife's throat with the reapinghook. Mr. Banks then fignified to him, that if he could fully explain the offence, the man should be punished. Upon this he became more calm, and made Mr. Banks understand that the offender, having taken a fancy to a stone hatchet which lay in his house, had offered to purchase it of his wife for a nail: that she having refused to part with it upon any terms, he had catched it up, and throwing down the nail, threatened to cut her throat if the made any refistance: to prove this charge the hatchet and the nail were produced, and the butcher had fo little to fay in his defence that there was not the least reason to doubt of its truth.

Mr. Banks having reported this matter to me, I took an opportunity, when the Chief and his women, with other Indians, were on board the ship, to call up the butcher, and after a recapitulation of the charge and the proof, I gave orders that he should be punished, as well to prevent other offences of the fame kind, as to acquit Mr. Banks of his promise; the Indians saw him stripped and tied up to the rigging with a fixed attention, waiting in filent suspence for the event; but as foon as the first stroke was given, they interfered with great agitation, earnestly intreating that the rest of the punishment might be remitted: to this, however, for many reasons, I could not consent, and when they found that they could not prevail by their intercession, they gave vent to their pity by tears.

Their tears indeed, like those of children, were always. ready to express any passion that was strongly excited, and.

like

April. Thursday 27. 1769. April. Friday 28.

like those of children they also appeared to be forgotten as foon as flied; of which the following among many others, is a remarkable instance. Very early in the morning of the 28th, even before it was day, a great number of them came down to the fort, and Terapo being observed among the women on the outfide of the gate, Mr. Banks went out and brought her in; he faw that the tears then flood in her eyes, and as foon as fhe entered they began to flow in great abundance: he enquired earnestly the cause, but instead of answering the took from under her garment a fhark's tooth, and flruck it fix or feven times into her head with great force; a profusion of blood followed, and she talked loud, but in a most melancholy tone, for some minutes, without at all regarding his enquiries, which he repeated with still more impatience and concern, while the other Indians, to his great furprize, talked and laughed, without taking the leaft notice of her diffress. But her own behaviour was still more extraordinary. As foon as the bleeding was over, she looked up with a fmile, and began to collect fome fmall pieces of cloth, which during her bleeding she had thrown down to catch the blood; as foon as fhe had picked them all up, fhe - carried them out of the tent, and threw them into the fea, carefully dispersing them abroad, as if she wished to prevent the fight of them from reviving the remembrance of what fhe had done. She then plunged into the river, and after having washed her whole body, returned to the tents with the fame gaiety and cheerfulness as if nothing had happened.

It is not indeed strange that the forrows of these artless people should be transient, any more than that their passions should be suddenly and strongly expressed: what they feel they have never been taught either to disguise or suppress, and having no habits of thinking which perpetually recal

the past, and anticipate the future, they are affected by all the changes of the passing hour, and reslect the colour of the time, however frequently it may vary: they have no project which is to be pursued from day to day, the subject of unremitted anxiety and solicitude, that first rushes into the mind when they awake in the morning, and is last dismissed when they sleep at night. Yet if we admit that they are upon the whole happier than we, we must admit that the child is happier than the man, and that we are losers by the perfection of our nature, the increase of our knowlege, and the enlargement of our views.

Canoes were continually coming in during all this forenoon, and the tents at the fort were crowded with people of both fexes from different parts of the Island. I was myfelf bufy on board the ship, but Mr. Mollineux, our master, who was one of those that made the last voyage in the Dolphin, went on shore. As soon as he entered Mr. Banks's tent he fixed his eyes upon one of the women, who was fitting there with great composure among the rest, and immediately deelared her to be the person who at that time was supposed to be Queen of the island; she also, at the same time, acknowledging him to be one of the strangers whom she had seen before. The attention of all present was now diverted from every other object, and wholly engaged in confidering a perfon who had made fo diftinguished a figure in the accountsthat had been given of this island by its first discoverers; and we foon learnt that her name was OBEREA. She feemed to be about forty years of age, and was not only tall, but of a large make; her fkin was white, and there was an uncommon intelligence and fenfibility in her eyes: fhe appeared to have been handsome when the was young, but at this time little more than memorials of her beauty were left.



As foon as her quality was known, an offer was made to conduct her to the ship. Of this she readily accepted, and came on board with two men and feveral women, who feemed to be all of her family; I received her with fuch marks of diffinction as I thought would gratify her most, and was not sparing of my presents, among which this august personage seemed particularly delighted with a child's doll. After some time spent on board, I attended her back to the fhore; and as foon as we landed, fhe prefented me with a hog, and feveral bunches of plantains, which she caused to be carried from her canoes up to the fort in a kind of procession, of which she and myself brought up the rear. In our way to the fort we met Tootahah, who, though not King, appeared to be at this time invested with the fovereign authority; he feemed not to be well pleafed with the diftinction that was flewed to the lady, and became so jealous when the produced her doll, that to propitiate him it was thought proper to compliment him with another. At this time he thought fit to prefer a doll to a hatchet; but this preference arose only from a childish jealousy, which could not be foothed but by a gift of exactly the fame kind with that which had been prefented to Oberea; for dolls in a very fhort time were univerfally confidered as trifles of no value.

The men who had visited us from time to time had, without scruple, eaten of our provisions; but the women had never yet been prevailed upon to taste a morfel. To-day, however, though they refused the most pressing solicitations to dine with the Gentlemen, they afterwards retired to the scrvants' apartment, and eat of plantains very heartily; a mystery of female economy here, which none of us could explain.

On the 29th, not very early in the forenoon, Mr. Banks went to pay his court to Oberea, and was told that she was ffill afleep under the awning of her canoe: thither therefore he went, intending to call her up, a liberty which he thought he might take, without any danger of giving offence: but, upon looking into her chamber, to his great aftonishment, he found her in bed with a handsome young fellow about five and twenty, whose name was Obadée: he retreated with fome hafte and confusion, but was soon made to understand, that fuch amours gave no occasion to scandal, and that Obadée was univerfally known to have been felected by her as the object of her private favours. The lady being too polite to fuffer Mr. Banks to wait long in her antichamber, dreffed herfelf with more than usual expedition, and as a token of of special grace, clothed him in a suit of fine cloth and proceeded with him to the tents. In the evening, Mr. Banks paid a vifit to Tubourai Tamaide, as he had often done before, by candle light, and was equally grieved and furprized to find him and his family in a melancholy mood, and most of them in tears: he endeavoured in vain to discover the cause, and therefore his stay among them was but short. When he reported this circumstance to the officers at the fort, they recollected that Owhaw had foretold, that in four days we should fire our great guns; and as this was the eve of the third day, the fituation in which Tubourai Tamaide and his family had been found, alarmed them. The fentries therefore were doubled at the fort, and the Gentlemen flept under arms; at two in the morning, Mr. Banks himfelf went round the point, but found every thing fo quiet, that he gave up all fuspicions of mischief intended by the natives as groundlefs. We had however another fource of fecurity; our little fortification was now complete. The north and

1769. April. Saturday 29. fouth fides confifled of a bank of earth four feet and an half high on the infide, and a ditch without ten feet broad and fix deep; on the west fide, facing the bay, there was a bank of earth four feet high, and pallisadoes upon that, but no ditch, the works here being at high-water mark; on the east fide, upon the bank of the river, was placed a double row of water casks, filled with water; and as this was the weakest fide, the two four pounders were planted there, and fix swivel guns were mounted so as to command the only two avenues from the woods. Our garrison consisted of about five and forty men with small arms, including the officers, and the gentlemen who resided on shore; and our fentries were as well relieved as in the best regulated frontier in Europe.

∯unday 30.

We continued our vigilance the next day, though we had no particular reason to think it necessary; but about ten o'clock in the morning, Tomio came running to the tents, with a mixture of grief and fear in her countenance, and taking Mr. Banks, to whom they applied in every emergency and diffrefs, by the arm, intimated that Tubourai Tamaide was dying, in confequence of fomething which our people had given him to eat, and that he must instantly go with her to his house. Mr. Banks set out without delay, and found his Indian friend leaning his head against a post, in an attitude of the utmost languor and despondency; the people about him intimated that he had been vomiting, and brought out a leaf folded up with great care, which they faid contained fome of the poifon, by the deleterious effects of which he was now dying. Mr. Banks haftily opened the leaf, and upon examining its contents found them to be no other than a chew of tobacco, which the chief had begged of some of our people, and which they had indifferently given

109

him: he had observed that they kept it long in the mouth, and being desirous of doing the same, he had chewed it to powder, and swallowed the spittle. During the examination of the leaf and its contents, he looked up at Mr. Banks with the most piteous aspect, and intimated that he had but a very short time to live. Mr. Banks, however, being now master of his disease, directed him to drink plentifully of cocoanut milk, which in a short time put an end to his sickness and apprehensions, and he spent the day at the fort with that uncommon flow of cheerfulness and good-humour, which is always produced by a sudden and unexpected relief from pain either of body or mind.

Captain Wallis having brought home one of the adzes which these people, having no metal of any kind, make of flone, Mr. Stevens, the Secretary to the Admiralty, procured one to be made of iron in imitation of it, which I brought out with me, to shew how much we excelled in making tools after their own fashion: this I had not yet produced, as it never happened to come into my mind. But on the first of May, Tootahah coming on board about ten o'clock in the forenoon, expressed a great curiosity to see the contents of every cheft and drawer that was in my cabbin; as I always made a point of gratifying him, I opened them immediately, and having taken a fancy to many things that he faw, and collected them together, he at last happened to cast his eve upon this adze; he inflantly fnatched it up with the greateft eagerness, and putting away every thing which he had before felected, he asked me whether I would let him have that: I readily confented; and, as if he was afraid I should repent, he carried it off immediately in a transport of joy, without making any other request, which whatever had been our liberality was feldom the cafe.

May. Monday 1. May. Monday 1. About noon, a Chief, who had dined with me a few days before, accompanied by fome of his women, came on board alone: I had observed that he was fed by his women, but I made no doubt, that upon occasion he would condescend to feed himself: in this, however, I found myself mistaken. When my noble guest was seated, and the dinner upon the table, I helped him to some victuals: as I observed that he did not immediately begin his meal, I pressed him to eat: but he still continued to sit motionless like a statue, without attempting to put a single morsel into his mouth, and would certainly have gone without his dinner, if one of the servants had not fed him.

CHAP. XI.

The Observatory set up; the Quadrant stolen, and Consequences of the Theft: A Visit to Tootahah: Description of a Wrestling-match: European Seeds sown: Names given to our People by the Indians.

IN the afternoon, of Monday the 1st of May, we set up the observatory, and took the astronomical quadrant, with some other instruments on shore, for the first time.

May. Monday 1.

The next morning, about nine o'clock, I went on shore Tuesday 2. with Mr. Green to fix the quadrant in a fituation for use, when to our inexpressible furprize and concern it was not to be found. It had been deposited in the tent which was referved for my use, where, as I passed the night on board, nobody flept: it had never been taken out of the packingcafe, which was eighteen inches fquare, and the whole was of confiderable weight; a fentinel had been posted the whole night within five yards of the tent door, and none of the other instruments were missing. We at first suspected that it might have been flolen by fome of our own people, who feeing a deal box, and not knowing the contents, might think it contained nails, or some other subjects of traffic with the natives. A large reward was therefore offered to any one who could find it, as, without this, we could not perform the fervice for which our voyage was principally undertaken. Our fearch in the mean time was not confined to the fort and the places adjacent, but as the case might possibly have been carried back to the ship, if any of our

May.
Tuefday 2.

own people had been the thieves, the most diligent fearch was made for it on board; all the parties however returned without any news of the quadrant. Mr. Banks, therefore, who upon fuch occasions declined neither labour nor risk, and who had more influence over the Indians than any of us, determined to go in fearch of it into the woods; he hoped, that if it had been stolen by the natives, he should find it wherever they had opened the box, as they would immediately discover that to them it would be wholly useless: or, if in this expectation he should be disappointed, that he might recover it by the afcendancy he had acquired over He fet out, accompanied by a midshipman the Chiefs. and Mr. Green, and as he was croffing the river he was met by Tubourai Tamaide, who immediately made the figure of a triangle with three bits of straw upon his hand. By this Mr. Banks knew that the Indians were the thieves; and that, although they had opened the cafe, they were not disposed to part with the contents. No time was therefore to be loft, and Mr. Banks made Tubourai Tamaide understand, that he must instantly go with him to the place whither the quadrant had been carried; he confented, and they fet out together to the eastward, the Chief inquiring at every house which they passed after the thief by name: the people readily told him which way he was gone, and how long it was fince he had been there: the hope which this gave them that they should overtake him, supported them under their fatigue, and they pressed forward, sometimes walking, sometimes. running, though the weather was intolerably hot; when they had climbed a hill at the distance of about four miles, their conductor shewed them a point full three miles farther, and gave them to understand that they were not to expect the instrument till they had got thither. paused; they had no arms, except a pair of pistols, which

Mr. Banks always carried in his pocket; they were going to a place that was at least feven miles distant from the fort, where the Indians might be less submissive than at home, and to take from them what they had ventured their lives to get; and what, notwithstanding our conjectures, they appeared defirous to keep: thefe were discouraging circumstances, and their fituation would become more critical at every step. They determined, however, not to relinquish their enterprize, nor to purfue it without taking the best measures for their security that were in their power. It was therefore determined, that Mr. Banks and Mr. Green should go on, and that the Midshipman should return to me, and defire that I would fend a party of men after them, acquainting me at the fame time, that it was impossible they should return till it was dark. Upon receiving this message I set out, with fuch a party as I thought fufficient for the occasion; leaving orders, both at the ship and at the fort, that no canoe should be suffered to go out of the bay, but that none of the natives should be seized or detained.

In the mean time, Mr. Banks and Mr. Green purfued their journey, under the auspices of Tubourai Tamaide, and in the very fpot which he had specified, they met one of his own people, with part of the quadrant in his hand. At this most welcome fight they stopped; and a great number of Indians immediately came up, fome of whom pressing rather rudely upon them, Mr. Banks thought it necessary to shew one of his piftols, the fight of which reduced them infantly to order: as the crowd that gathered round them was every moment increasing, he marked out a circle in the grafs, and they ranged themselves on the outside of it to the number of feveral hundreds with great quietness and decorum. Into the middle of this circle, the box, which was now arrived, was ordered to be brought, with feveral reading glaffes, and YOL. II. other

1769. May. Tuefday 2. other fmall matters, which in their hurry they had put into a piftol-cafe, that Mr. Banks knew to be his property, it having been fome time before ftolen from the tents, with a horse piftol in it, which he immediately demanded, and which was also restored.

Mr. Green was impatient to fee whether all that had been taken away was returned, and upon examining the box found the stand, and a few small things of less consequence, wanting; several persons were sent in search of these, and most of the small things were returned: but it was signified that the thief had not brought the stand so far, and that it would be delivered to our friends as they went back; this being confirmed by Tubourai Tamaide, they prepared to return, as nothing would then be wanting but what might easily be supplied; and after they had advanced about two miles, I met them with my party, to our mutual satisfaction, congratulating each other upon the recovery of the quadrant, with a pleasure proportioned to the importance of the event.

About eight o'clock, Mr. Banks with Tubourai Tamaide got back to the fort; when, to his great furprize, he found Tootahah in cuftody, and many of the natives in the utmost terror and distress, crowding about the gate. He went hastily in, some of the Indians were suffered to follow him, and the scene was extremely affecting. Tubourai Tamaide pressing forward, ran up to Tootahah, and catching him in his arms, they both burst into tears, and wept over each other, without being able to speak: the other Indians were also in tears for their Chief, both he and they being strongly possessed with the notion that he was to be put to death. In this situation they continued till I entered the fort, which was about a quarter of an hour afterwards. I was equally surprized

Tuefday 2.

115

furprized and concerned at what had happened, the confining Tootahah being contrary to my orders, and therefore inflantly fet him at liberty. Upon enquiring into the affair, I was told, that my going into the woods with a party of men under arms, at a time when a robbery had been committed, which it was supposed I should refent, in proportion to our apparent injury by the lofs, had fo alarmed the natives, that in the evening they began to leave the neighbourhood of the fort with their effects: that a double canoe having been feen to put off from the bottom of the bay by Mr. Gore, the Second Lieutenant, who was left in command on board the fhip, and who had received orders not to fuffer any canoe to go out, he fent the Boatfwain with a boat after her to bring her back: that as foon as the boat came up, the Indians, being alarmed, leaped into the fea; and that Tootahah, being unfortunately one of the number, the Boatswain took him up, and brought him to the ship, suffering the rest of the people to fwim on fhore: that Mr. Gore, not fufficiently attending to the order that none of the people should be confined, had fent him to the fort, and Mr. Hicks, the First Lieutenant, who commanded there, receiving him in charge from Gore, did not think himself at liberty to dismis him.

The notion that we intended to put him to death had poffessed him so strongly, that he could not be persuaded to the contrary till by my orders he was led out of the fort. The people received him as they would have done a father in the same circumstances, and every one pressed forward to embrace him. Sudden joy is commonly liberal, without a scrupulous regard to merit; and Tootahah, in the first expansion of his heart, upon being unexpectedly restored to liberty and life, insisted upon our receiving a present of two hogs; though, being conscious that upon this occasion we had no claim to favours, we refused them many times.

May. Wedness. 3.

Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander attended the next morning in their usual capacity of market-men, but very few Indiansappeared, and those who came brought no provisions. Tootahah, however, fent fome of his people for the canoe thathad been detained, which they took away. A canoe having also been detained that belonged to Oberea, Turia, the person. who managed her affairs when the Dolphin was here, wasfent to examine whether any thing on board had been taken away: and he was fo well fatisfied of the contrary, that he left the canoe where he found it, and joined us at the fort, where he fpent the day, and flept on board the canoe at night. About noon, some fishing boats came abreast of the tents, but would part with very little of what they had on board; and we felt the want of cocoa-nuts and bread-fruit very feverely. In the course of the day, Mr. Banks walked out into the woods, that by converfing with the people he might recover their confidence and good-will: he found them civil, but they all complained of the ill-treatment of their Chief; who, they faid, had been beaten and pulled by the hair. Mr. Banks endeavoured to convince them, that he had fuffered no personal violence, which to the best of our knowlege was true; yet, perhaps the Boatfwain had behaved with a brutality which he was afraid or ashamed to acknowledge. The Chief himfelf being, probably, upon recollection, of opinion that we had ill-deferved the hogs, which he had left with us as a prefent, fent a messenger in the afternoon to demand an ax, and a fhirt in return; but as I was told that he did not intend to come down to the fort for ten days, I excufed myfelf from giving them till I should see him, hoping that his impatience might induce him to fetch them, and knowing that abfence would probably continue the coolness between us, to which the first interview might put an end.

The next day we were still more fensible of the inconvenience we had incurred by giving offence to the people in the person of their Chief; for the market was so ill supplied that we were in want of necessaries. Mr. Banks therefore went into the woods to Tubourai Tamaide, and with fome difficulty perfuaded him to let us have five baskets of breadfruit; a very feafonable fupply, as they contained above one hundred and twenty. In the afternoon another meffenger arrived from Tootahah for the ax and shirt; as it was nowbecome absolutely necessary to recover the friendship of this man, without which it would be feareely possible to procure provisions, I fent word that Mr. Banks and myfelf would visit him on the morrow, and bring what he wanted with us.

Early the next morning he fent again to remind me of my Friday 5. promife, and his people feemed to wait till we should fet out with great impatience: I therefore ordered the pinnace, in which I embarked with Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander about ten o'clock: we took one of Tootahah's people in the boat with us, and in about an hour we arrived at his place of refidence which is called EPARRE, and is about four miles to

We found the people waiting for us in great numbers upon the shore, so that it would have been impossible for us to have proceeded, if way had not been made for us by a tall well-looking man, who had fomething like a turban about his head, and a long white flick in his hand, with which he laid about him at an unmerciful rate. This man conducted us to the Chief, while the people shouted round us, Taio Tootahah, "Tootahah is your friend." We found him, like an ancient Patriarch, fitting under a tree, with a number of venerable old men flanding round him; he made 2. fign to us to fit down, and immediately asked for his ax:

the westward of the tents.

1769. May. Friday 5.

this I prefented to him, with an upper garment of broadcloth, made after the country fashion, and trimmed with tape, to which I also added a shirt: he received them with great fatisfaction, and immediately put on the garment; but the shirt he gave to the person who had cleared the way for us upon our landing, who was now feated by us, and of whom he feemed defirous that we fhould take particular notice. In a fhort time, Oberea, and feveral other women whom we knew, came and fat down among us: Tootahah left us several times, but after a short absence returned; we thought it had been to flow himself in his new finery to the people, but we wronged him, for it was to give directions for our refreshment and entertainment. While we were waiting for his return the last time he left us, very impatient to be difmiffed, as we were almost fuffocated in the croud, word was brought us, that he expected us elsewhere: we found him fitting under the awning of our own boat, and making figns that we should come to him: as many of us therefore went on board as the boat would hold, and he then ordered bread-fruit and cocoa-nuts to be brought, of both which we tafted, rather to gratify him than because we had a defire to eat. A message was soon after brought him, upon which he went out of the boat, and we were in a fhort time defired to follow. We were conducted to a large area or court-yard, which was railed round with bamboos about three feet high, on one fide of his house, where an entertainment was provided for us, entirely new: this was a wreflling match. At the upper end of the area fat the Chief, and feveral of his principal men were ranged on each fide of him, fo as to form a femicircle; these were the judges, by whom the victor was to be applauded; feats were also left for us at each end of the line, but we chose rather to be at liberty among the rest of the spectators.

119

May. Friday 5.

When all was ready, ten or twelve perfons, whom we understood to be the combatants, and who were naked, except a cloth that was fastened about the waist, entered the area. and walked flowly round it, in a flooping posture, with their left hands on their right breafts, and their right hands open, with which they frequently ftruck the left fore-arm fo as to produce a quick fmart found: this was a general challenge to the combatants whom they were to engage, or any other person present: after these followed others in the same manner, and then a particular challenge was given, by which each man fingled out his antagonist: this was done by joining the finger ends of both hands, and bringing them to the breaft, at the fame time moving the elbows up and down with a quick motion: if the person to whom this was addreffed accepted the challenge, he repeated the figns, and immediately each put himself into an attitude to engage: the next minute they closed; but, except in first feizing each other, it was a mere contest of strength: each endeavoured to lay hold of the other, first by the thigh, and if that failed by the hand, the hair, the cloth, or elsewhere as he could: when this was done they grappled, without the leaft dexterity or skill, till one of them, by having a more advantageous hold, or greater muscular force, threw the other on his back. When the contest was over, the old men gave their plaudit to the victor in a few words, which they repeated together in a kind of tune: his conquest was also generally celebrated by three huzzas. The entertainment was then fuspended for a few minutes, after which another couple of wreftlers came forward and engaged in the fame manner: if it happened that neither was thrown; after the contest had continued about a minute, they parted, either by confent or the intervention of their friends, and in this case each slapped his arm, as a challenge to a new engagement, either with

May.
Friday 5.

the fame antagonist or some other. While the wrestlers were engaged, another party of men performed a dance which lasted also about a minute; but neither of these parties took the least notice of each other, their attention being wholly sixed on what they were doing. We observed with pleasure, that the conqueror never exulted over the vanquished, and that the vanquished never repined at the success of the conqueror; the whole contest was carried on with perfect goodwill and good-humour, though in the presence of at least sive hundred spectators, of whom some were women. The number of women indeed was comparatively small, none but those of rank were present, and we had reason to believe that they would not have been spectators of this exercise but in compliment to us.

This lasted about two hours; during all which time the man who had made way for us when we landed, kept the people at a proper distance, by striking those who pressed forward very severely with his stick: upon enquiry we learnt, that he was an officer belonging to Tootahah, acting as a master of the ceremonies.

It is fearcely possible for those who are acquainted with the athletic sports of very remote antiquity, not to remark a rude resemblance of them in this wrestling-match among the natives of a little island in the midst of the Pacific Ocean: and even our female readers may recollect the account given of them by Fenelon in his Telemachus, where, though the events are sictitious, the manners of the age are faithfully transcribed from authors by whom they are supposed to have been truly related.

When the wreftling was over, we were given to underfland that two hogs, and a large quantity of bread-fruit were preparing for our dinner, which, as our appetites were now

keen,

keen, was very agreeable intelligence. Our hoft, however, feemed to repent of his liberality; for, instead of fetting his two hogs before us, he ordered one of them to be carried into our boat; at first we were not forry for this new dispofition of matters, thinking that we should dine more comfortably in the boat than on shore, as the croud would more eafily be kept at a distance: but when we came on board, he ordered us to proceed with his hog to the ship; this was mortifying, as we were now to row four miles while our dinner was growing cold; however, we thought fit to comply, and were at last gratisted with the cheer that he had provided, of which he and Tubourai Tamaide had a liberal fhare.

Our reconciliation with this man operated upon the people like a charm; for he was no fooner known to be on board, than bread-fruit, cocoa-nuts, and other provisions were brought to the fort in great plenty.

Affairs now went on in the ufual channel; but pork being ftill a fcarce commodity, our Mafter, Mr. Mollineux, and Mr. Green went in the pinnace to the eastward, on the 8th, Monday 8. early in the morning, to fee whether they could procure any hogs or poultry in that part of the country: they proceeded in that direction twenty miles; but though they faw many hogs, and one turtle, they could not purchase either at any price: the people every where told them, that they all belonged to Tootahah, and that they could fell none of them without his permission. We now began to think that this man was indeed a great Prince; for an influence fo extenfive and absolute could be acquired by no other. And we afterwards found that he administered the government of this part of the island, as fovereign, for a minor whom we never faw all the time that we were upon it. When Mr.

VOL. II.

 \mathbf{R}

Green

May.

Monday 8.

Green returned from this expedition, he faid he had feen a tree of a fize which he was afraid to relate, it being no lefs than fixty yards in circumference; but Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander foon explained to him, that it was a fpecies of the fig, the branches of which, bending down, take fresh root in the earth, and thus form a congeries of trunks, which being very close to each other, and all joined by a common vegetation, might easily be mistaken for one.

Though the market at the fort was now tolerably supplied, provisions were brought more slowly: a sufficient quantity used to be purchased between sun-rise and eight o'clock, but it was now become necessary to attend the greatest part of the day. Mr. Banks, therefore, fixed his little boat up before the door of the fort, which was of great use as a place to trade in; hitherto we had purchased cocoanuts and bread-fruit for beads; but the market becoming rather slack in these articles, we were now, for the first time, forced to bring out our nails: one of our smallest size, which was about four inches long, procured us twenty cocoanuts, and bread-fruit in proportion, so that in a short time our first plenty was restored.

Tuesday 9.

On the 9th, foon after breakfast, we received a visit from Oberea, being the first that she had made us after the loss of our quadrant, and the unfortunate confinement of Tootahah; with her came her present favourite, Obadée, and Tupia: they brought us a hog and some bread-fruit, in return for which we gave her a hatchet. We had now afforded our Indian friends a new and interesting object of curiosity, our forge, which having been set up some time, was almost constantly at work. It was now common for them to bring pieces of iron, which we supposed they must have got from the Dolphin, to be made into tools of various kinds; and as

I was very defirous to gratify them, they were indulged, except when the fmith's time was too precious to be spared. Oberea having received her hatchet, produced as much old iron as would have made another, with a request that another might be made of it: in this, however, I could not gratify her, upon which she brought out a broken ax, and defired it might be mended; I was glad of an opportunity to

compromise the difference between us: her ax was mended, and she appeared to be content. They went away at night, and took with them the canoe, which had been a confiderable time at the point, but promifed to return in three

days.

1769. Tuesday o.

On the 10th, I put some seeds of melons and other plants Wednes, 10. into a fpot of ground which had been turned up for the purpose; they had all been sealed up by the person of whom they were bought, in fmall bottles with rofin; but none of them came up except mustard; even the cucumbers and melons failed, and Mr. Banks is of opinion that they were spoiled by the total exclusion of fresh air.

This day we learnt the Indian name of the island, which is OTAHEITE, and by that name I shall hereafter distinguish it: -but after great pains taken we found it utterly impossible to teach the Indians to pronounce our names; we had, therefore, new names, confifting of fuch founds as they produced in the attempt. They called me Toote; Mr. Hicks, Hete; Molineux they renounced in absolute despair, and called the Master Boba, from his Christian name Robert; Mr. Gore was Toarro; Dr. Solander, Torano; and Mr. Banks, Tapane; Mr. Green, Eteree; Mr. Parkinfon, Patini; Mr. Sporing, Polini; Peterfgill, Petrodero; and in this manner they had now formed names for almost every man in the ship: in some, however, it was not easy to find any traces of the original,

124

May. Wednef. 10. and they were perhaps not mere arbitrary founds formed upon the occasion, but fignificant words in their own language. Monkhouse, the Midshipman, who commanded the party that killed the man for stealing the musket, they called *Matte*; not merely by an attempt to imitate in sound the first fyllable of Monkhouse, but because *Matte* signifies *dead*; and this probably might be the case with others.

CHAP. XII.

Some Ladies visit the Fort with very uncommon Geremonies:
The Indians attend Divine Service, and in the Evening
exhibit a most extraordinary Spectacle: Tubourai Tamaide falls into Temptation.

Friday 12.

FRIDAY, the 12th of May, was distinguished by a visit from some ladies whom we had never seen before, and who introduced themselves with some very singular ceremonies. Mr. Banks was trading in his boat at the gate of the fort as usual, in company with Tootahah, who had that morning paid him a visit, and some other of the natives; between nine and ten o'clock, a double canoe came to the landing-place, under the awning of which sat a man and two women: the Indians that were about him made signs that he should go out to meet them, which he hasted to do; but by the time he could get out of the boat, they had advanced within ten yards of him: they then stopped, and made signs that he should do so too, laying down about a dozen young plantain trees, and some other small plants: he complied, and the people having made a lane between

125 -

them, the man, who appeared to be a fervant, brought them to Mr. Banks by one of each at a time, passing and repassing fix times, and always pronouncing a fhort fentence when he delivered them. Tupia, who flood by Mr. Banks, acted as his master of the ceremonies, and receiving the branches as they were brought, laid them down in the boat. When this was done, another man brought a large bundle of cloth, which having opened, he fpread piece by piece upon the ground, in the space between Mr. Banks and his visitors; there were nine pieces, and having laid three pieces one upon another, the foremost of the women, who seemed to be the principal, and who was called OORATTOOA, stepped upon them, and taking up her garments all round her to the waift, turned about, with great composure and deliberation, and with an air of perfect innocence and simplicity, three times; when this was done, she dropped the veil, and stepping off the cloth, three more pieces were laid on, and she repeated the ceremony, then stepping off as before; the last three were laid on, and the ceremony was repeated in the fame manner the third time. Immediately after this the cloth was rolled up, and given to Mr. Banks, as a prefent from the lady, who, with her friend, came up and faluted him. He made fuch prefents to them both as he thought would be most acceptable, and after having staid about an hour they went away. In the evening, the Gentlemen at the fort had a visit from Oberea, and her favourite female attendant, whose name was Otheothea, an agreeable girl, whom they were the more pleased to see, because, having been fome days abfent, it had been reported that she was either fick or dead.

On the 13th, the market being over about ten o'clock, Mr. Saturday 13. Banks walked into the woods with his gun, as he generally did, for the benefit of the fliade in the heat of the day: as he

May.
Saturday 13.

was returning back, he met Tubourai Tamaide, near his occafional dwelling, and flopping to fpend a little time with him, he fuddenly took the gun out of Mr. Banks's hand, cocked it, and, holding it up in the air, drew the trigger: fortunately for him, it flashed in the pan: Mr. Banks immediately took it from him, not a little furprifed how he had acquired fufficient knowlege of a gun to discharge it, and reproved him with great feverity for what he had done. As it was of infinite importance to keep the Indians totally ignorant of the management of fire-arms, he had taken every opportunity of intimating that they could never offend him fo highly as by even touching his piece; it was now proper to enforce this prohibition, and he therefore added threats to his reproof: the Indian bore all patiently; but the moment Mr. Banks croffed the river, he fet off with all his family and furniture for his house at Eparre. This being quickly known from the Indians at the fort, and great inconvenience being apprehended from the displeasure of this man, who upon all occasions had been particularly useful, Mr. Banks determined to follow him without delay, and folicit his return: he fet out the fame evening, accompanied by Mr. Mollineux, and found him fitting in the middle of a large circle of people, to whom he had probably related what had happened, and his fears of the confequences; he was himfelf the very picture of grief and dejection, and the fame passions were strongly marked in the countenances of all the people that furrounded him. When Mr. Banks and Mr. Mollineux went into the circle, one of the women expressed her trouble, as Terapo had done upon another occasion, and struck a fhark's tooth into her head feveral times, till it was covered with blood. Mr. Banks loft no time in putting an end to this universal distress; he affured the Chief, that every thing which had paffed should be forgotten, that there was not

the least animofity remaining on one side, nor any thing to be feared on the other. The Chief was foon foothed into confidence and complacency, a double canoe was ordered to be got ready, they all returned together to the fort before supper, and as a pledge of perfect reconciliation, both he and his wife flept all night in Mr. Banks's tent: their prefence, however, was no palladium; for, between eleven and twelve o'clock, one of the natives attempted to get into the fort by scaling the walls, with a defign, no doubt, to fleal whatever he should happen to find; he was discovered by the centinel, who happily did not fire, and he ran away much faster than any of our people could follow him. The iron, and iron-tools, which were in continual use at the armourer's forge, that was fet up within the works, were temptations to theft which none of these people could withstand.

On the 14th, which was Sunday, I directed that Divine Sunday 14s Service should be performed at the fort: we were defirous that some of the principal Indians should be present, but when the hour came, most of them were returned home. Mr. Banks, however, croffed the river, and brought back Tubourai Tamaide and his wife Tomio, hoping that it would give occasion to some enquiries on their part, and some inflruction on ours: having feated them, he placed himfelf between them, and during the whole fervice, they very attentively observed his behaviour, and very exactly imitated it; flanding, fitting, or kneeling, as they faw him do: they were confcious that we were employed about fomewhat ferious and important, as appeared by their calling to the Indians without the fort to be filent; yet when the fervice was over, neither of them asked any questions, nor would they attend to any attempt that was made to explain what had been done.

1769. Way. Sunday 14. Such were our Matins; our Indians thought fit to perform Vespers of a very different kind. A young man, near six feet high, performed the rites of Venus with a little girl about eleven or twelve years of age, before several of our people, and a great number of the natives, without the least sense of its being indecent or improper, but, as appeared, in perfect conformity to the custom of the place. Among the spectators were several women of superior rank, particularly Oberea, who may properly be said to have affisted at the ceremony; for they gave instructions to the girl how to perform her part, which, young as she was, she did not seem much to stand in need of.

This incident is not mentioned as an object of idle curiofity, but as it deferves confideration in determining a queftion which has been long debated in philosophy; Whether the fhame attending certain actions, which are allowed on all fides to be in themselves innocent, is implanted in Nature, or superinduced by custom? If it has its origin in custom, it will, perhaps, be found difficult to trace that custom, however general, to its source; if in instinct, it will be equally difficult to discover from what cause it is subdued or at least over-ruled among these people, in whose manners not the least trace of it is to be found.

Monday 15.

On the 14th and 15th, we had another opportunity of obferving the general knowlege which these people had of any design that was formed among them. In the night between the 13th and 14th, one of the water-casks was stolen from the outside of the fort: in the morning, there was not an Indian to be seen who did not know that it was gone; yet they appeared not to have been trusted, or not to have been worthy of trust; for they seemed all of them disposed to give intelligence where it might be found. Mr. Banks

traced

Monday 15.

129

traced it to a part of the bay where he was told it had been put into a canoe, but as it was not of great consequence he did not complete the discovery. When he returned, he was told by Tubourai Tamaide, that another cask would be stolen before the morning: how he came by this knowlege it is not eafy to imagine; that he was not a party in the defign is certain, for he came with his wife and his family to the place where the water casks stood, and placing their beds near them, he faid he would himself be a pledge for their fafety, in despight of the thief: of this, however, we would not admit; and making him understand that a fentry would be placed to watch the casks till the morning, he removed the beds into Mr. Banks's tent, where he and his family spent the night, making figns to the fentry when he retired, that he should keep his eyes open. In the night this intelligence appeared to be true; about twelve o'clock the thief came. but discovering that a watch had been set, he went away without his booty.

Mr. Banks's confidence in Tubourai Tamaide had greatly increased since the affair of the knife, in consequence of which he was at length exposed to temptations which neither his integrity nor his honour was able to resist. They had withstood many allurements, but were at length ensured by the fascinating charms of a basket of nails; these nails were much larger than any that had yet been brought into trade, and had, with perhaps some degree of criminal negligence, been dest in a corner of Mr. Banks's tent, to which the Chief had always free access. One of these nails Mr. Banks's servant happened to see in his possession, upon his having inadvertently thrown back that part of his garment under which it was concealed. Mr. Banks being told of this, and knowing that no such thing had been given

1769. May. Monday 15. him, either as a prefent or in barter, immediately examined the basket, and discovered, that out of seven nails sive were missing. He then, though not without great reluctance, charged him with the fact, which he immediately confessed, and however he might suffer, was probably not more hurt than his accuser. A demand was immediately made of restitution; but this he declined, saying, that the nails were at Eparre: however, Mr. Banks appearing to be much in earnest, and using some threatening signs, he thought sit to produce one of them. He was then taken to the fort, to receive such judgment as should be given against him by the general voice.

After some deliberation, that we might not appear to think too lightly of his offence, he was told, that if he would bring the other four nails to the fort, it should be forgotten. To this condition he agreed; but I am forry to say he did not fulfil it. Instead of fetching the nails, he removed with his family before night, and took all his furniture with him.

As our long-boat had appeared to be leaky, I thought it necessary to examine her bottom, and, to my great surprize, found it so much eaten by the worms, that it was necessary to give her a new one; no such accident had happened to the Dolphin's boats, as I was informed by the officers on board, and therefore it was a misfortune that I did not expect: I feared that the pinnace also might be nearly in the same condition; but, upon examining her; I had the satisfaction to find that not a worm had touched her, though she was built of the same wood, and had been as much in the water; the reason of this difference I imagine to be, that the long-boat was paid with varnish of pine, and the pinnace painted with white lead and oil; the bottoms of all boats therefore which are sent into this country should be painted

like that of the pinnace, and the ships should be supplied with a good flock, in order to give them a new coating when it shall be found necessary.

1769.

Having received repeated messages from Tootahah, that Wednes, 24, if we would pay him a vifit he would acknowledge the favour by a prefent of four hogs, I fent Mr. Hicks, my First Lieutenant, to try if he could not procure the hogs upon easier terms, with orders to show him every civility in his power. Mr. Hicks found that he was removed from Eparre to a place called Tettahah, five miles farther to the westward. He was received with great cordiality; one hog was immediately produced, and he was told that the other three, which were at fome distance, should be brought in the morning. Mr. Hicks readily confented to flay; but the morning came without the hogs, and it not being convenient to flay longer, he returned in the evening, with the one that he had got.

On the 25th, Tubourai Tamaide and his wife Tomio made Thursday 25. their appearance at the tent, for the first time since he had been detected in stealing the nails; he seemed to be under fome difcontent and apprehension, yet he did not think fit to purchase our countenance and good-will by restoring the four which he had fent away. As Mr. Banks and the other Gentlemen treated him with a coolness and reserve which did not at all tend to reflore his peace or good-humour, his flay was fhort, and his departure abrupt. Mr. Monkhouse, the Surgeon, went the next morning in order to effect a reconciliation, by perfuading him to bring down the nails, but he could not fucceed.

CHAP. XIII.

Another Vifit to Tootabah, with various Adventures: Extraordinary Amusement of the Indians, with Remarks: upon it: Preparations to observe the Transit of Venus, and what happened in the mean time at the Fort.

N the 27th, it was determined that we should pay our visit to Tootahah, though we were not very confident Saturday 27. that we should receive the hogs for our pains. I therefore fet out early in the morning, with Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, and three others, in the pinnace. He was now removed: from Tettahah, where Mr. Hicks had feen him, to a place called Atahourou, about fix miles farther, and as we could not go above half way thither in the boat, it was almost evening before we arrived: we found him in his usual state, fitting under a tree, with a great crowd about him. We made our presents in due form, confisting of a yellow stuff petticoat, and fome other trifling articles, which were gracioufly received; a hog was immediately ordered to be killed: and dreffed for fupper, with a promife of more in the morning: however, as we were lefs defirous of feating upon our journey than of carrying back with us provisions, which would be more welcome at the fort, we procured a reprieve: for the hog, and supped upon the fruits of the country. Asnight now came on, and the place was crowded with many more than the houses and canoes would contain; there being: Oberea with her attendants, and many other travellers whom: we knew, we began to look out for lodgings. Our party confifted

Saturday 27.

133.

confifted of fix: Mr. Banks thought himself fortunate in being offered a place by Oberea in her canoe, and wishing his friends a good night, took his leave. He went to rest early, according to the custom of the country, and taking off his clothes, as was his constant practice, the nights being hot, Oberea kindly infifted upon taking them into her own cuftody, for otherwise she said they would certainly be stolen. Mr. Banks having fuch a fafeguard, refigned himfelf to fleep with all imaginable tranquillity: but awaking about eleven o'clock, and wanting to get up, he fearched for his clothes where he had feen them deposited by Oberea when he lay down to fleep, and foon perceived that they were missing. He immediately awakened Oberea, who flarting up, and hearing his complaint, ordered lights, and prepared in great hafte to recover what he had loft: Tootahah himfelf flept in the next canoe, and being foon alarmed, he came to them and fet out with Oberea in fearch of the thief: Mr. Banks was not in a condition to go with them, for of his apparel fcarce any thing was left him but his breeches; his coat, and his waiftcoat, with his piftols, powder-horn, and many other things that were in the pockets, were gone. In about half an hour his two noble friends returned, but without having, obtained any intelligence of his clothes or of the thief. At first he began to be alarmed, his musquet had not indeed. been taken away, but he had neglected to load it; where I and Dr. Solander had disposed of ourselves he did not know; and therefore, whatever might happen, he could not have recourse to us for assistance. He thought it best, however, to express neither fear nor suspicion of those about him, and giving his musquet to Tupia, who had been waked in the confusion and stood by him, with a charge not to suffer it to be stolen, he betook himself again to rest, declaring himself perfectly fatisfied with the pains that Tootahah and Oberea May.

Saturday 27.

had taken to recover his things, though they had not been fuccessful. As it cannot be supposed that in such a situation his fleep was very found, he foon after heard music, and faw lights at a little diffance on shore: this was a concert or asfembly, which they call a Heiva, a common name for every public exhibition; and as it would necessarily bring many people together, and there was a chance of my being among them with his other friends, he rose, and made the best of his way towards it: he was foon led by the lights and the found to the hut where I lay, with three other Gentlemen of our party; and eafily diffinguishing us from the rest, he made up to us more than half naked, and told us his melancholy flory. We gave him fuch comfort as the unfortunate generally give to each other, by telling him that we were fellow-fufferers; I showed him that I was myfelf without flockings, they having been flolen from under my head, though I was fure I had never been afleep, and each of my affociates convinced him, by his appearance, that he had loft a jacket. We determined, however, to hear out the concert, however deficient we might appear in our drefs; it confifted of three drums, four flutes, and feveral voices: when this entertainment, which lasted about an hour, was over, we retired again to our fleeping-places; having agreed, that nothing could be done toward the recovery of our things till the morning.

Sunday 23.

We rose at day-break, according to the custom of the country; the first man that Mr. Banks saw was Tupia, faithfully attending with his musquet; and soon after, Oberea brought him some of her country clothes, as a succedaneum for his own, so that when he came to us he made a most motley appearance, half Indian and half English. Our party soon got together, except Dr. Solander, whose quarters we did not know, and who had not affished at the concert: in a

fhort

fhort time Tootahahi made his appearance, and we preffed him to recover our clothes; but neither he nor Oberca could be perfuaded to take any measure for that purpose, so that we began to suspect that they had been parties in the theft. About eight o'clock, we were joined by Dr. Solander, who had fallen into honester hands, at a house about a mile distant, and had lost nothing.

Having given up all hope of recovering our clothes, which indeed were never afterwards heard of, we fpent all the morning in foliciting the hogs which we had been promifed; but in this we had no better fuccefs: we therefore, in no very good humour, fet out for the boat about twelve o'clock, with only that which we had redeemed from the butcher and the cook the night before.

As we were returning to the boat, however, we were entertained with a fight that in some measure compensated for our fatigue and disappointment. In our way we came to one of the few places where access to the island is not guarded by a reef, and, confequently, a high furf breaks upon the shore; a more dreadful one indeed I had feldom feen; it was impoffible for any European boat to have lived in it; and if the best fwimmer in Europe had, by any accident, been exposed to its fury, I am confident that he would not have been able to preserve himself from drowning, especially as the shore was covered with pebbles and large flones; yet, in the midst of these breakers, were ten or twelve Indians swimming for their amusement: whenever a furf broke near them, they dived under it, and, to all appearance with infinite facility, rose again on the other side. This diversion was greatly improved by the stern of an old canoe, which they happened to find upon the fpot; they took this before them, and fwam out with it as far as the outermost-breach, then two or three. 1769. May. Sunday 28. of them getting into it, and turning the fquare end to the breaking wave, were driven in towards the shore with incredible rapidity, sometimes almost to the beach; but generally the wave broke over them before they got half way, in which case they dived, and rose on the other side with the canoe in their hands: they then swam out with it again, and were again driven back, just as our holiday youth climb the hill in Greenwich park for the pleasure of rolling down it. At this wonderful scene we stood gazing for more than half an hour, during which time none of the swimmers attempted to come on shore, but seemed to enjoy their sport in the highest degree; we then proceeded in our journey, and late in the evening got back to the fort.

Upon this occasion it may be observed, that human nature is endued with powers which are only accidentally exerted to the utmost; and that all men are capable of what no man attains, except he is stimulated to the effort by some uncommon circumstances or fituation. These Indians effected what to us appeared to be fupernatural, merely by the application of fuch powers as they possessed in common with us, and all other men who have no particular infirmity or defect. The truth of the observation is also manifest from more familiar inflances. The rope-dancer and balance-mafter owe their art, not to any peculiar liberality of Nature, but to an accidental improvement of her common gifts; and though equal diligence and application would not always produce equal excellence in these, any more than in other arts; yet there is no doubt but that a certain degree of proficiency in them might be univerfally attained. Another proof of the existence of abilities in mankind, that are almost universally dormant, is furnished by the attainments of blind men. It cannot be supposed that the loss of one sense, like the amputation

putation of a branch from a tree, gives new vigour to those that remain. Every man's hearing and touch, therefore, are capable of the nice distinctions which astonish us in those that have lost their sight, and if they do not give the same intelligence to the mind, it is merely because the same intelligence is not required of them: he that can see may do from choice what the blind do by necessity, and by the same diligent attention to the other senses, may receive the same notices from them; let it therefore be remembered as an encouragement to persevering diligence, and a principle of general use to mankind, that he who does all he can, will ever effect much more than is generally thought to be possible.

Among other Indians that had visited us, there were some from a neighbouring island which they called Eimeo or Imao, the same to which Captain Wallis had given the name of the Duke of York's island, and they gave us an account of no less than two and twenty islands that lay in the neighbourhood of Otaheite.

As the day of observation now approached, I determined, in consequence of some hints which had been given me by Lord Morton, to send out two parties to observe the transit from other situations; hoping, that if we should fail at Otaheite, they might have better success. We were, therefore, now busily employed in preparing our instruments, and instructing such Gentlemen in the use of them as I intended to send out.

On Thursday the 1st of June, the Saturday following being the day of the Transit, I dispatched Mr. Gore in the long-boat to Imao, with Mr. Monkhouse and Mr. Sporing, a Gentleman belonging to Mr. Banks, Mr. Green having furnished them with proper instruments. Mr. Banks himself thought Vol. II.

June. Thurfday 1. June. Thurfday 1. fit to go upon this expedition, and feveral natives, particularly Tubourai Tamaide and Tomio, were also of the party. Very early on the Friday morning, I fent Mr. Hicks, with Mr. Clerk and Mr. Petersgill, the Master's Mates, and Mr. Saunders, one of the Midshipmen, in the pinnace to the eastward, with orders to fix on some convenient spot, at a distance from our principal observatory, where they also might employ the instruments with which they had been furnished for the same purpose.

Friday 2,

The long-boat not having been got ready till Thursday in the afternoon, though all possible expedition was used to fit her out; the people on board, after having rowed most part of the night, brought her to a grappling just under the land of Imao. Soon after day-break, they faw an Indian canoe, which they hailed, and the people on board shewed them an inlet through the reef into which they pulled, and foon fixed upon a coral rock, which rose out of the water about one hundred and fifty yards from the shore, as a proper situation for their observatory: it was about eighty yards long and twenty broad, and in the middle of it was a bed of white fand, large enough for the tents to stand upon. Mr. Gore and his affiftants immediately began to fet them up, and make other necessary preparations for the important business of the next day. While this was doing, Mr. Banks, with the Indians of Otaheite, and the people whom they had met in the canoe. went ashore upon the main island, to buy provisions; of which he procured a fufficient fupply before night. When he returned to the rock he found the observatory in order. and the telescopes all fixed and tried. The evening was very fine, yet their folicitude did not permit them to take much rest in the night: one or other of them was up every half hour, who fatisfied the impatience of the rest by reporting

the changes of the fky; now encouraging their hope by telling them that it was clear, and now alarming their fears by an account that it was hazev.

176g lune.

At day-break they got up, and had the fatisfaction to fee Saturday 3. the fun rife, without a cloud. Mr. Banks then, wishing the observers, Mr. Gore and Mr. Monkhouse, success, repaired again to the island, that he might examine its produce, and get a fresh supply of provisions: he began by trading with the natives, for which purpose he took his station under a tree; and to keep them from pressing upon him in a crowd, he drew a circle round him, which he fuffered none of them to enter.

About eight o'clock, he faw two canoes coming towards the place, and was given to understand by the people about him, that they belonged to TARRAO, the King of the island, who was coming to make him a vifit. As foon as the canoes came near the shore, the people made a lane from the beach to the trading-place, and his Majesty landed, with his fister, whose name was Nuna; as they advanced towards the tree where Mr. Banks flood, he went out to meet them, and, with great formality, introduced them into the circle from which the other natives had been excluded. As it is the custom of these people to fit during all their conferences, Mr. Banks unwrapped a kind of Turban of Indian cloth, which he wore upon his head instead of a hat, and spreading it upon the ground, they all fat down upon it together. The royal prefent was then brought, which confifted of a hog and a dog, fome bread-fruit, cocoa-nuts, and other articles of the like kind. Mr. Banks then difpatched a canoe to the observatory for his prefent, and the messengers soon returned with an adze, a shirt, and some beads, which were presented to his Majesty, and received with great fatisfaction.

1769. June. Saturday 3. By this time, Tubourai Tamaide and Tomio joined them, from the observatory. Tomio said, that she was related to Tarrao, and brought him a present of a long nail, at the same time complimenting Nuna with a shirt.

The first internal contact of the planet with the sun being over, Mr. Banks returned to the observatory, taking Tarrao, Nuna, and some of their principal attendants, among whom were three very handsome young women, with him: he showed them the planet upon the sun, and endeavoured to make them understand that he and his companions had come from their own country on purpose to see it. Soon after, Mr. Banks returned with them to the island, where he spent the rest of the day in examining its produce, which he found to be much the same with that of Otaheite. The people whom he saw there also exactly resembled the inhabitants of that island, and many of them were persons whom he had seen upon it; so that all those whom he had dealt with, knew of what his trading articles consisted, and the value they bore.

Sanday 4.

The next morning, having struck the tents, they set out on their return, and arrived at the fort before night.

The observation was made with equal success by the perfons whom I had sent to the eastward, and at the fort, there not being a cloud in the sky from the rising to the setting of the sun, the whole passage of the planet Venus over the sun's disk was observed with great advantage by Mr. Green, Dr. Solander, and myself: Mr. Green's telescope and mine were of the same magnifying power, but that of Dr. Solander was greater. We all saw an atmossphere or dusky cloud round the body of the planet, which very much disturbed the times of contact, especially of the internal ones; and we differed from each other in our accounts of the times of the

contacts much more than might have been expected. According to Mr. Green,

1769. June.

Hours.	Min.	Sec.
9	25	42 7.5
9	44	4
		- 24
3	14	87 5
3	32	10
	9 9	9 25 9 44 3 14 3 32

The latitude of the observatory was found to be 17° 29′ 15″; and the longitude 149° 32′ 30″ W. of Greenwich. A more particular account will appear by the tables, for which the reader is referred to the Transactions of the Royal Society, vol. lxi. part 2. page 397 & feq. where they are illustrated by a cut.

But if we had reason to congratulate ourselves upon the success of our observation, we had scarce less cause to regret the diligence with which that time had been improved by some of our people to another purpose. While the attention of the officers was engrossed by the Transit of Venus, some of the ship's company broke into one of the store-rooms, and stole a quantity of spike nails, amounting to no less than one hundred weight: this was a matter of public and serious concern; for these nails, if circulated by the people among the Indians, would do us irreparable injury, by reducing the value of iron, our staple commodity. One of the thieves was detected, but only seven nails were found in his custody. He was punished with two dozen lashes, but would impeach none of his accomplices.

CHAP. XIV.

The Ceremonies of an Indian Funeral particularly described:
General Observations on the Subject: A Character found among the Indians to which the Ancients paid great Veneration: A Robbery at the Fort, and its Consequences; with a Specimen of Indian Cookery, and various Incidents.

June. Monday 5. On the 5th, we kept his Majesty's birth-day; for though it is the 4th, we were unwilling to celebrate it during the absence of the two parties who had been sent out to observe the Transit. We had several of the Indian Chiefs at our entertainment, who drank his Majesty's health by the name of Kihiargo, which was the nearest imitation they could produce of King George.

About this time died an old woman of fome rank, who was related to Tomio, which gave us an opportunity to fee how they disposed of the body, and confirmed us in our opinion that these people, contrary to the present custom of all other nations now known, never bury their dead. In the middle of a small square, neatly railed in with bamboo, the awning of a canoe was raised upon two posts, and under this the body was deposited upon such a frame as has before been described: it was covered with sine cloth, and near it was placed bread-fruit, sish, and other provisions: we supposed that the food was placed there for the spirit of the deceased, and consequently, that these Indians had some confused notion of a separate state; but upon our applying for further

143

June. Monday 5.

further information to Tubourai Tamaide, he told us, that the food was placed there as an offering to their gods. They do not, however, fuppose, that the gods eat, any more than the Jews supposed that Jehovah could dwell in a house: the offering is made here upon the fame principle as the Temple was built at Jerusalem, as an expression of reverence and gratitude, and a folicitation of the more immediate presence of the Deity. In the front of the area was a kind of stile, where the relations of the deceased stood to pay the tribute of their forrow; and under the awning were innumerable fmall pieces of cloth, on which the tears and blood of the mourners had been shed; for in their paroxysms of grief it is a univerfal custom to wound themselves with the shark's tooth. Within a few yards two occasional houses were fer up, in one of which fome relations of the deceased constantly refided, and in the other the chief mourner, who is always a man, and who keeps there a very fingular drefs in which a ceremony is performed that will be described in its turn. Near the place where the dead are thus fet up to rot, the bones are afterwards buried.

What can have introduced among these people the custom of exposing their dead above ground, till the sless is confumed by putrefaction, and then burying the bones, it is perhaps impossible to guess; but it is remarkable, that Ælian and Apollonius Rhodius impute a similar practice to the ancient inhabitants of Colchis, a country near Pontus in Asia, now called Mingrelia; except that among them this manner of disposing of the dead did not extend to both sexes: the women they buried; but the men they wrapped in a hide, and hung up in the air by a chain. This practice among the Colchians is referred to a religious cause. The principal objects of their worship were the Earth and the Air; and it is supposed that, in consequence of some superstitious notion,

June. Monday 5.

they devoted their dead to both. Whether the natives of Otalieite had any notion of the fame kind we were neverable certainly to determine; but we foon discovered, that the repositories of their dead were also places of worship. Upon this occasion it may be observed, that nothing can be more abfurd than the notion that the happiness or misery of a future life depends, in any degree, upon the disposition of the body when the state of probation is past; yet that nothing is more general than a folicitude about it. However cheap we may hold any funereal rites which custom has not familiarized, or fuperflition rendered facred, most men gravely deliberate how to prevent their body from being broken by the mattock and devoured by the worm, when it is no longer capable of fensation; and purchase a place for it in holy ground, when they believe the lot of its future existence to be irrevocably determined. So ftrong is the affociation of pleafing or painful ideas with certain opinions and actions which affect us while we live, that we involuntarily act as if it was equally certain that they would affect us in the same manner when we are dead, though this is an opinion that nobody will maintain. Thus it happens, that the defire of preferving from reproach even the name that we leave behind us, or of procuring it honour, is one of the most powerful principles of action, among the inhabitants of the most fpeculative and enlightened nations. Posthumous reputation, upon every principle, must be acknowledged to have no influence upon the dead; yet the defire of obtaining and fecuring it, no force of reason, no habits of thinking can subdue, except in those whom habitual baseness and guilt have rendered indifferent to honour and shame while they lived. This indeed feems to be among the happy imperfections of our nature, upon which the general good of fociety in a certain measure depends; for as some crimes are supposed to

be prevented by hanging the body of the criminal in chains after he is dead, fo in confequence of the fame affociation of ideas, much good is procured to fociety, and much evil prevented, by a defire of preventing difference or procuring honour to a name, when nothing but a name remains.

Perhaps no better use can be made of reading an account of manners altogether new, by which the follies and abfurdities of mankind are taken out of that particular connection in which habit has reconciled them to us, than to confider in how many inflances they are effentially the fame. When an honest devotee of the Church of Rome reads, that there are Indians on the banks of the Ganges, who believe that they shall secure the happiness of a future state by dying with a cow's tail in their hands, he laughs at their folly and fuperflition; and if these Indians were to be told, that there are people upon the continent of Europe, who imagine that they shall derive the same advantage from dying with the flipper of a St. Francis upon their foot, they would laugh in their turn. But if, when the Indian heard the account of the Catholic, and the Catholic that of the Indian, each was to reflect, that there was no difference between the abfurdity of the flipper and of the tail; but that the veil of prejudice and custom, which covered it in their own cafe, was withdrawn in the other, they would turn their knowlege to a profitable purpose.

Having observed that bread-fruit had for some days been brought in less quantities than usual, we enquired the reason; and were told, that there being a great show of fruit upon the trees, they had been thinned all at once, in order to make a kind of sour paste, which the natives call Mabie, and which, in consequence of having undergone a fermentation, will keep a considerable time, and supply them with food when no ripe fruit is to be had.

June. Saturday 10.

On the joth, the ceremony was to be performed, in honour of the old woman whose sepulchral tabernacle has just been described, by the chief mourner; and Mr. Banks had fo great a curiofity to fee all the mysleries of the solemnity, that he determined to take a part in it, being told, that he could be prefent upon no other condition. In the evening, therefore, he repaired to the place where the body lay, and was received by the daughter of the deceafed, and feveral other perfons, among whom was a boy about fourteen years old, who were to affift in the ceremony. Tubourai Tamaide was to be the principal mourner; and his drefs, which was extremely fantaffical, though not unbecoming, is reprefented by a figure in one of the plates. Mr. Banks was stripped of his European clothes, and a fmall piece of cloth being tied round his middle, his body was fineared with charcoal and water, as low as the shoulders, till it was as black as that of a negroe: the fame operation was performed upon feveral others, among whom were fome women, who were reduced to a. flate as near to nakedness as himself; the boy was blacked all over, and then the procession set forward. Tubourai Tamaide uttered fomething, which was supposed to be a prayer, near the body; and did the fame when he came up to his own house: when this was done, the procession was continued towards the fort, permission having been obtained to approach it upon this occasion. It is the custom of the Indians to fly from these processions with the utmost precipitation, fo that as foon as those who were about the fort, faw it at a distance, they hid themselves in the woods. It proceeded from the fort along the shore, and put to slight another body of Indians, confifting of more than an hundred, every one hiding himfelf under the first shelter that he could find: it then croffed the river, and entered the woods, paffing feveral houses, all which were deferted, and not a fingle

fingle Indian could be feen during the rest of the procession, which continued more than half an hour. The office that Mr. Banks performed, was called that of the Nineveh, of which there were two befides himfelf; and the natives having all difappeared, they came to the chief mourner, and faid imatata, there are no people, after which the company was difmiffed to wash themselves in the river, and put on their customary apparel.

Saturday 13,

On the 12th, complaint being made to me, by fome of the Monday 12. natives, that two of the feamen had taken from them feveral bows and arrows, and fome strings of plaited hair, I examined the matter, and finding the charge well supported, I punished each of the criminals with two dozen lashes.

Their bows and arrows have not been mentioned before, nor were they often brought down to the fort: This day, however. Tubourai Tamaide brought down his, in confequence of a challenge which he had received from Mr. Gore. The Chief supposed it was to try who could fend the arrow farthest; Mr. Gore, who best could hit a mark: and as Mr. Gore did not value himself upon shooting to a great distance, nor the Chief upon hitting a mark, there was no trial of skill between them. Tubourai Tamaide, however, to shew us what he could do, drew his bow, and fent an arrow, none of which are feathered, two hundred and feventy-four yards, which is fomething more than a fevently, and fomething lefs, than a fixth part of a mile. Their manner of shooting is fomewhat fingular; they kneel down, and the moment the arrow is discharged, drop the bow.

Mr. Banks, in his morning walk this day, met a number of the natives whom, upon enquiry, he found to be travelling musicians; and having learnt where they were to be at night, we all repaired to the place. The band comified of

1769. June. Monday 12. two flutes and three drums, and we found a great number of people affembled upon the occasion. The drummers accompanied the musick with their voices, and, to our great furprize, we discovered that we were generally the subject of the song. We did not expect to have found among the uncivilized inhabitants of this sequestered spot, a character, which has been the subject of such praise and veneration where genius and knowlege have been most conspicuous; yet these were the bards or minstrels of Otaheite. Their song was unpremeditated, and accompanied with musick; they were continually going about from place to place, and they were rewarded by the master of the house, and the audience, with such things as one wanted and the other could spare.

Wednes. 14.

On the 14th, we were brought into new difficulties and inconvenience by another robbery at the fort. In the middle of the night, one of the natives contrived to fteal an iron coal-rake, that was made use of for the oven. It happened to be fet up against the inside of the wall, so that the top of the handle was visible from without; and we were informed. that the thief, who had been feen lurking there in the evening, came fecretly about three o'clock in the morning, and, watching his opportunity when the centinel's back was turned, very dexteroufly laid hold of it with a long crooked flick, and drew it over the wall. I thought it of fome confequence, if possible, to put an end to these practices at once, by doing fomething that should make it the common interest of the natives themselves, to prevent them. I had given firict orders that they should not be fired upon, even when detected in these attempts, for which I had many reasons: the common centinels were by no means fit to be entrufted with a power of life and death, to be exerted whenever they fhould think fit, and I had already experienced that they

Wednes, I.I.

140)

were ready to take away the lives that were in their power, upon the flightest occasion; neither indeed did I think that the thefts which these people committed against us, were, in them, crimes worthy of death: that thieves are hanged in England, I thought no reason why they should be shot in Otaheite; because, with respect to the natives, it would have been an execution by a law ex post facto: they had no fuch law among themselves, and it did not appear to me that we had any right to make fuch a law for them. That they should abstain from theft, or be punished with death, was not one of the conditions under which they claimed the advantages of civil fociety, as it is among us; and as I was not willing to expose them to fire-arms, loaded with shot, neither could I perfectly approve of firing only with powder: at first, indeed, the noise and the smoke would alarm them, but when they found that no mischief followed, they would be led to despife the weapons themselves, and proceed to infults, which would make it necessary to put them to the test, and from which they would be deterred by the very fight of a gun, if it was never used but with effect. At this time, an accident furnished me with what I thought a happy expedient. It happened that above twenty of their failing canoes were just come in with a supply of fish: upon these I immediately feized, and bringing them into the river behind the fort, gave publick notice, that except the rake, and all the rest of the things which from time to time had been stolen, were returned, the canoes should be burnt. This menace I ventured to publish, though I had no defign to put it into execution, making no doubt but that it was well known in whose possession the stolen goods were, and that as restitution was thus made a common cause, they would all of them in a fhort time be brought back. A lift of the things was made out, confisting principally of the rake, the musquet which

had been taken from the marine when the Indian was shot: the piftols which Mr. Banks loft with his clothes at Atahourou; a fword belonging to one of the petty officers, and the water cask. About noon, the rake was restored, and great

folicitation was made for the release of the canoes: but I still Thursday 15. infisted upon my original condition. The next day came, and nothing farther was reftored, at which I was much furprised, for the people were in the utmost distress for the fish, which in a fhort time would be fpoilt; I was, therefore, reduced to a difagreeable fituation, either of releafing the canoes, contrary to what I had folemnly and publickly declared, or to detain them, to the great injury of those who were innocent, without answering any good purpose to ourselves: as a temporary expedient, I permitted them to take the fish; but still detained the canoes. This very licence, however, was productive of new confusion and injury; for, it not being easy at once to distinguish to what particular persons the feveral lots of fish belonged, the canoes were plundered, under favour of this circumstance, by those who had no right to any part of their cargo. Most pressing instances were ftill made that the canoes might be reftored, and I having now the greatest reason to believe, either that the things for which I detained them were not in the island, or that those who fuffered by their detention had not fufficient influence over the thieves to prevail upon them to relinquish their booty, determined at length to give them up, not a little mortified at the bad fuccess of my project.

Another accident also about this time was, notwithstanding all our caution, very near embroiling us with the Indians. I fent the boat on shore with an officer to get ballastfor the fhip, and not immediately finding flones convenient for the purpose, he began to pull down some part of an inclosure where they deposited the bones of their dead: this

the Indians violently opposed, and a messenger came down to the tents to acquaint the officers that they would not fuffer it. Mr. Banks immediately repaired to the place, and an amicable end was foon put to the difpute, by fending the boat's crew to the river, where stones enough were to be gathered without a possibility of giving offence. It is very remarkable, that these Indians appeared to be much more jealous of what was done to the dead than the living. This was the only measure in which they ventured to oppose us, and the only infult that was offered to any individual among us was upon a fimilar occasion. Mr. Monkhouse happening one day to pull a flower from a tree which grew in one of their fepulchral inclosures, an Indian, whose jealousy hadprobably been upon the watch, came fuddenly behind him, and ftruck him: Mr. Monkhouse laid hold of him, but he was inflantly rescued by two more, who took hold of Mr. Monkhouse's hair, and forced him to quit his hold of their companion, and then ran away without offering him any farther violence.

In the evening of the 19th, while the canoes were still de- Monday 10th tained, we received a visit from Oberea, which surprised us not a little, as she brought with her none of the things that. had been flolen, and knew that she was suspected of having fome of them in her cuftody. She faid indeed, that her favourite Obadee, whom fhe had beaten and difmiffed, had taken them away; but she seemed conscious, that she had no right to be believed: fhe discovered the strongest signs of fear, yet she furmounted it with assonishing resolution; and was very preffing to fleep with her attendants in Mr. Banks's tent. In this, however, the was not gratified; the affair of the jackets was too recent, and the tent was besides filled. with other people. No body elfe feemed willing to entertain.

1769. June.

her, and she therefore, with great appearance of mortification and disappointment, spent the night in her canoe.

Tuefday 20.

The next morning early, she returned to the fort, with her canoe and every thing that it contained, putting herself wholly into our power, with fomething like greatness of mind, which excited our wonder and admiration. As the most effectual means to bring about a reconciliation, she presented us with a hog, and feveral other things, among which was a dog. We had lately learnt, that these animals were esteemed by the Indians as more delicate food than their pork; and upon this occasion we determined to try the experiment: the dog, which was very fat, we configned over to Tupia, who undertook to perform the double office of butcher and cook. He killed him by holding his hands close over his mouth and nose, an operation which continued above a quarter of an hour. While this was doing, a hole was made in the ground about a foot deep, in which a fire was kindled, and fome finall flones placed in layers alternately with the wood to heat; the dog was then finged, by holding him over the fire, and, by fcraping him with a shell, the hair taken off as clean as if he had been fealded in hot water: he was then cut up with the fame inftrument, and his entrails being taken out, were fent to the fea, where being carefully washed, they were put into cocoa-nut shells, with what blood had come from the body: when the hole was fufficiently heated, the fire was taken out, and fome of the stones, which were not so hot as to discolour any thing that they touched, being placed at the bottom, were covered with green leaves: the dog, with the entrails, was then placed upon the leaves, and other leaves being laid upon them, the whole was covered with the rest of the hot stones, and the mouth of the hole close slopped with mould: in somewhat less than four hours it was again opened, and the dog taken out excellently baked, and we all agreed that he made a very good dish. The dogs which are here bred to be eaten, taste no animal food, but are kept wholly upon bread-fruit, cocoa-nuts, yams, and other vegetables of the like kind: all the flesh and fish eaten by the inhabitants is dreffed in the fame way.

On the 21st, we were visited at the fort by a Chief, called Wednes, 21. OAMO, whom we had never feen before, and who was treated by the natives with uncommon respect; he brought with him a boy about feven years old, and a young woman about fixteen: the boy was carried upon a man's back, which we considered as a piece of state, for he was as well able to walk as any prefent. As foon as they were in fight, Oberea, and feveral other natives who were in the fort, went out to meet them, having first uncovered their heads and bodies as low as the waift: as they came on, the fame ceremony was performed by all the natives who were without the fort. Uncovering the body, therefore, is in this country probably a mark of respect; and as all parts are here exposed with equal indifference, the ceremony of uncovering it from the waist downwards, which was performed by Oorattooa, might be nothing more than a different mode of compliment, adapted to persons of a different rank. The Chief came into the tent, but no entreaty could prevail upon the young woman to follow him, though fhe feemed to refuse contrary to her inclination: the natives without were indeed all very folicitous to prevent her; fometimes, when her refolution feemed to fail, almost using force: the boy also they restrained in the same manner; but Dr. Solander happening to meet him at the gate, took him by the hand, and led him in before the people were aware of it: as foon, however, as those that were within faw him, they took care to have him fent out.

1769. June. Wednes. 21.

These circumstances having strongly excited our curiofity, we enquired who they were, and were informed, that Oamo was the husband of Oberea, though they had been a long time feparated by mutual confent; and that the young woman and the boy were their children. We learnt also, that the boy, whose name was TERRIDIRI, was heir apparent to the fovereignty of the island, and that his fifter was intended for his wife, the marriage being deferred only till he should arrive at a proper age. The fovereign at this time was a fon of Whappai, whose name was Outou, and who, as before has been observed, was a minor. Whappai, Oamo, and Tootahah, were brothers: Whappai was the eldeft, and Oamo the fecond; fo that, Whappai having no child but Outou, Terridiri, the fon of his next brother Oamo, was heir to the fovereignty. It will, perhaps, feem firange that a boy should be fovereign during the life of his father; but, according to the custom of the country, a child fucceeds to a father's title and authority as foon as it is born: a regent is then elected, and the father of the new fovereign is generally continued in his authority, under that title, till his child is of age; but, at this time, the choice had fallen upon Tootahah, the uncle, in confequence of his having diffinguished himself in a war. Oamo asked many questions concerning England and its inhabitants, by which he appeared to have great shrewdness and understanding.

CHAP. XV.

An Account of the Circumnavigation of the Island, and various Incidents that happened during the Expedition; with a Description of a Burying-place and Place of Worship, called a Morai.

N Monday the 26th, about three o'clock in the morning, I fet out in the pinnace, accompanied by Mr. Banks, to make the circuit of the island, with a view to fketch out the coast and harbours. We took our route to the eastward, and about eight in the forenoon we went on shore, in a diffrict called OAHOUNUE, which is governed by AHIO, a young Chief, whom we had often feen at the tents, and who favoured us with his company to breakfast. Here also we found two other natives of our old acquaintance, TITUBOALO and Hoona, who carried us to their houses, near which we faw the body of the old woman, at whose funeral rites Mr. Banks had affifted, and which had been removed hither from the fpot where it was first deposited, this place having defeended from her by inheritance to Hoona, and it being neceffary on that account that it should lie here. We then proceeded on foot, the boat attending within call, to the harbour in which Mr. Bougainville lay, called OHIDEA, where the natives shewed us the ground upon which his people pitched their tent, and the brook at which they watered, though no trace of them remained, except the holes where the poles of the tent had been fixed, and a fmall piece of potsheard, which Mr. Banks found in looking narrowly about the spot. We met, however, with ORETTE, a Chief X 2 who

June. Monday 26. June. Monday 26. who was their principal friend, and whose brother Outor-Rou went away with them.

This harbour lies on the west side of a great bay, under shelter of a small island called Boourou, near which is another called TAAWIRRII; the breach in the reefs is here very large, but the shelter for the ships is not the best.

Soon after we had examined this place, we took boat, and asked Tituboalo to go with us to the other side of the bay; but he refused, and advised us not to go, for he said the country there was inhabited by people who were not subject to Tootahah, and who would kill both him and us. Upon receiving this intelligence, we did not, as may be imagined, relinquish our enterprize; but we immediately loaded our pieces with ball: this was so well understood by Tituboalo as a precaution which rendered us formidable, that he now consented to be of our party.

Having rowed till it was dark, we reached a low neck of land, or isthmus, at the bottom of the bay, that divides the island into two peninsulas, each of which is a district or government wholly independent of the other. From Port-Royal, where the ship was at anchor, the coast trends E. by S. and E. S. E. ten miles, then S. by E. and S. eleven miles to the isshmus. In the first direction, the shore is in general open to the sea; but in the last it is covered by reefs of rocks, which form several good harbours, with safe anchorage, in 16, 18, 20, and 24 fathom of water, with other conveniences. As we had not yet got into our enemy's country, we determined to sleep on shore: we landed, and though we found but sew houses, we saw several double canoes whose owners were well known to us, and who provided us with supper and lodging; of which Mr. Banks was indebted for his

fhare

fhare to Ooratooa, the lady who had paid him her compliments in fo fingular a manner at the fort. 1769. June.

In the morning, we looked about the country, and found Tuefday 27it to be a marshy slat, about two miles over, across which the
natives haul their canoes to the corresponding bay on the
other side. We then prepared to continue our rout for what
Tituboalo called the other kingdom; he said that the name
of it was Tiarrabou, or Otaheite Ete; and that of the
Chief who governed it, Waheatua: upon this occasion also,
we learnt that the name of the peninsula where we had
taken our station was Opoureonu, or Otaheite Nue. Our
new associate seemed to be now in better spirits than he had
been the day before; the people in Tiarrabou would not kill
us, he said, but he assured us that we should be able to procure no victuals among them; and indeed we had seen no
bread-fruit since we set out.

After rowing a few miles, we landed in a diffrict, which was the dominion of a Chief called MARAITATA, the burying-place of men; whose father's name was Pahairedo, the flealer of boats. Though these names seemed to favour the account that had been given by Tituboalo, we foon found that it was not true. Both the father and the fon received us with the greatest civility, gave us provisions, and, after fome delay, fold us a very large hog for a hatchet. A crowd foon gathered round us, but we faw only two people that we knew; neither did we observe a single bead or ornament among them that had come from our ship, though we saw feveral things which had been brought from Europe. In one of the houses lay two twelve-pound shot, one of which was marked with the broad arrow of England, though the peoplefaid they had them from the ships that lay in Bougainville's harbour.

June. Tuesday 27.

We proceeded on foot till we came to the diffrict which was immediately under the government of the principal Chief, or King of the peninfula, Waheatua. Waheatua had a fon, but whether, according to the cuftom of Opoureonu, he administered the government as regent, or in his own right, is uncertain. This district consists of a large and fertile plain, watered by a river fo wide, that we were obliged to ferry over it in a canoe; our Indian train, however, chose to swim, and took to the water with the same facility as a pack of hounds. In this place we faw no house that appeared to be inhabited, but the ruins of many, that had been very large. We proceeded along the shore, which forms a bay, called OAITIPEHA, and at last we found the Chief fitting near fome pretty canoe awnings, under which, we fupposed, he and his attendants slept. He was a thin old man, with a very white head and beard, and had with him a comely woman, about five and twenty years old, whose name was Toudidde. We had often heard the name of this woman, and, from report and observation, we had reason to think that she was the OBEREA of this peninsula. From this place, between which and the isthmus there are other harbours, formed by the reefs that lie along the shore, where shipping may lie in perfect security, and from whence the land trends S. S. E. and S. to the S. E. part of the island, we were accompanied by TEAREE, the fon of Waheatua, of whom we had purchased a hog, and the country we passed through appeared to be more cultivated than any we had feen in other parts of the island: the brooks were every where banked into narrow channels with flone, and the shore had also a facing of stone, where it was washed by the sea. The houses were neither large nor numerous, but the canoes that were hauled up along the shore were almost innumerable, and fuperior to any that we had feen before, both in fize and

159

Tuefday 27

make; they were longer, the sterns were higher, and the awnings were supported by pillars. At almost every point there was a sepulchral building, and there were many of them also in land. They were of the same sigure as those in Opourconu, but they were cleaner and better kept, and decorated with many carved boards, which were fet upright, and on the top of which were various sigures of birds and men: on one in particular, there was the representation of a cock, which was painted red and yellow, to imitate the feathers of that animal, and rude images of men were, in some of them, placed one upon the head of another. But in this part of the country, however fertile and cultivated, we did not see a single bread-fruit; the trees were entirely bare, and the inhabitants seemed to subsist principally upon nuts which are not unlike a chesnut, and which they call Ahee.

When we had walked till we were weary, we called up the boat, but both our Indians, Tituboalo and Tuahow, were missing: they had, it feems, stayed behind at Waheatua's, expecting us to return thither, in consequence of a promise which had been extorted from us, and which we had it not in our power to fulfil.

Tearee, however, and another, embarked with us, and we proceeded till we came a-breast of a small island called OTOOAREITE; it being then dark, we determined to land, and our Indians conducted us to a place where they said we might sleep: it was a deserted house, and near it was a little cove, in which the boat might lie with great safety and convenience. We were, however, in want of provisions, having been very sparingly supplied since we set out; and Mr. Banks immediately went into the woods to see whether any could be procured. As it was dark, he met with no people, and could find but one house that was inhabited: a bread-

June. Tuefday 27. fruit and a half, a few Ahees, and some fire, were all that it afforded; upon which, with a duck or two, and a few curlieus, we made our supper, which, if not scanty, was disagreeable, by the want of bread, with which we had neglected to furnish ourselves, as we depended upon meeting with bread-fruit, and took up our lodging under the awning of a canoe belonging to Tearee, which followed us.

Wednef. 28.

The next morning, after having spent some time in another fruitless attempt to procure a supply of provisions, we proceeded round the fouth east point, part of which is not covered by any reef, but lies open to the fea; and here the hill rifes directly from the shore. At the fouthermost part of the island, the shore is again covered by a reef, which forms a good harbour; and the land about it is very fertile. We made this rout partly on foot and partly in the boat: when we had walked about three miles, we arrived at a place where we faw feveral large canoes, and a number of people with them, whom we were agreeably furprifed to find were of our intimate acquaintance. Here, with much difficulty, we procured fome cocoa-nuts, and then embarked, taking with us Tuahow, one of the Indians who had waited for us at Waheatua's, and had returned the night before, long after it was dark.

When we came a-breast of the south-east end of the island, we went ashore, by the advice of our Indian guide, who told us that the country was rich and good. The Chief, whose name was Mathiabo, soon came down to us, but seemed to be a total stranger both to us and to our trade: his subjects, however, brought us plenty of cocoa-nuts, and about twenty bread-fruit. The bread-fruit we bought at a very dear rate, but his excellency sold us a pig for a glass bottle, which he preferred to every thing else that we could give

him. We found in his possession a goose and a turkey-cock, which, we were informed, had been left upon the island by the Dolphin: they were both enormously fat, and so tame that they followed the Indians, who were fond of them to excess, wherever they went.

June. Wednes. 23.

In a long house in this neighbourhood, we saw what was altogether new to us. At one end of it, fastened to a semi-circular board, hung sifteen human jaw-bones; they appeared to be fresh, and there was not one of them that wanted a single tooth. A sight so extraordinary, strongly excited our curiosity, and we made many enquiries about it; but at this time could get no information, for the people either could not, or would not understand us.

When we left this place, the Chief, Mathiabo, defired leave to accompany us, which was readily granted. He continued with us the remainder of the day, and proved very useful, by piloting us over the shoals. In the evening, we opened the bay on the north west side of the island, which answered to that on the fouth east, so as at the ishmus, or carryingplace, almost to interfect the island, as I have observed before; and when we had coasted about two-thirds of it, we determined to go on shore for the night. We saw a large house at some distance, which, Mathiabo informed us, belonged to one of his friends; and foon after feveral canoes came off to meet us, having on board fome very handfome women, who, by their behaviour, feemed to have been fent to entice us on shore. As we had before resolved to take up our residence here for the night, little invitation was necesfary. We found that the house belonged to the Chief of the district, whose name was Wiverou: he received us in a very friendly manner, and ordered his people to affift us in dreffing our provision, of which we had now got a tolerable flock. VOL. II. Y

1769. June. Wednes. 28. flock. When our fupper was ready, we were conducted into that part of the house where Wiverou was sitting, in order to eat it; Mathiabo fupped with us, and Wiverou calling for his fupper at the fame time, we eat our meal very fociably, and with great good-humour. When it was over, we began to enquire where we were to fleep, and a part of the house was fhewn us, of which we were told we might take possesfion for that purpose. We then fent for our cloaks, and Mr. Banks began to undress, as his custom was, and, with a precaution which he had been taught by the lofs of the jackets at Atahourou, fent his clothes aboard the boat, proposing to cover himself with a piece of Indian cloth. When Mathiabo perceived what was doing, he also pretended to want a cloak; and, as he had behaved very well, and done us fome fervice, a cloak was ordered for him. We lay down, and observed that Mathiabo was not with us; but we supposed that he was gone to bathe, as the Indians always do before they fleep. We had not waited long, however, when an Indian, who was a stranger to us, came and told Mr. Banks, that the cloak and Mathiabo had difappeared together. This man had so far gained our confidence, that we did not at first believe the report; but it being foon after confirmed by Tuahow, our own Indian, we knew no time was to be loft. As it was impossible for us to pursue the thief with any hope of fuccess, without the assistance of the people about us, Mr. Banks flarted up, and telling our cafe, required them to recover the cloak; and to enforce his requisition, shewed one of his pocket pistols, which he always kept about him. Upon the fight of the piftol, the whole company took the alarm, and, instead of assisting to catch the thief, or recover what had been stolen, began with great precipitation to leave the place; one of them, however, was feized, upon which he immediately offered to direct the chace: I fet out there-

103

fore with Mr. Banks, and though we ran all the way, the alarm had got before us, for in about ten minutes we met a man bringing back the cloak, which the thief had relinquished in great terror; and as we did not then think fit to continue the pursuit, he made his escape. When we returned, we found the house, in which there had been between two and three hundred people, entirely deferted. It being, however, foon known that we had no refentment against any body but Mathiabo, the Chief Wiverou, our hoft, with his wife and many others, returned, and took up their lodging with us for the night. In this place, however, we were deflined to more confusion and trouble, for about five o'clock in the morning our fentry alarmed us, with an account that the boat was missing: he had feen her, he faid, about half an hour before, at her grappling, which was not above fifty yards from the shore; but upon hearing the found of oars, he had looked out again, and could fee nothing of her. At this account we flarted up greatly alarmed, and ran to the water fide: the morning was clear and flar light, fo that we could fee to a confiderable diffance, but there was no appearance of the boat. Our fituation was now fuch as might instify the most terrifying apprehensions; as it was a dead calm, and we could not therefore suppose her to have broken from her grappling, we had great reason to fear that the Indians had attacked her, and finding the people affeep, had fucceeded in their enterprize: we were but four, with only one musquet and two pocket pistols, without a spare ball or charge of powder for either. In this flate of anxiety and diffrefs we remained a confiderable time, expecting the Indians every moment to improve their advantage, when, to our unspeakable satisfaction, we saw the boat return, which 'had been driven from her grappling by the tide; a cir-Y 2 cumflance

1769. June. cumstance to which, in our confusion and surprise, we did not advert.

Thursday 29.

As foon as the boat returned, we got our breakfast, and were impatient to leave the place, lest some other vexatious accident should befal us. It is situated on the north side of Tiarrabou, the south east peninsula, or division, of the island, and at the distance of about sive miles south east from the island, having a large and commodious harbour, inferior to none in the island, about which the land is very rich in produce. Notwithstanding we had had little communication with this division, the inhabitants every where received us in a friendly manner; we found the whole of it fertile and populous, and, to all appearance, in a more flourishing state than Opourconu, though it is not above one fourth part as large.

The next district in which we landed, was the last in Tiarrabou, and governed by a Chief, whose name we underflood to be OMOE. Omoe was building a house, and being therefore very defirous of procuring a hatchet, he would have been glad to have purchased one with any thing that he had in his possession; it happened, however, rather unfortunately for him and us, that we had not one hatchet left in the boat. We offered to trade with nails, but he would not part with any thing in exchange for them; we therefore reimbarked, and put off our boat, but the Chief being unwilling to relinquish all hope of obtaining fomething from usthat would be of use to him, embarked in a canoe, with his wife Whanno-ouda, and followed us. After some time. we took them into the boat, and when we had rowed about a league, they defired we would put ashore: we immediately complied with his request, and found some of his people

who had brought down a very large hog. We were as unwilling to lofe the hog, as the Chief was to part with us, and it was indeed worth the best axe we had in the ship; we therefore hit upon an expedient, and told him, that is he would bring his hog to the fort at MATAVAI, the Indian name for Port Royal bay, he should have a large axe, and a nail into the bargain, for his trouble. To this proposal, after having consulted with his wife, he agreed, and gave us a large piece of his country cloth as a pledge that he would perform his agreement, which, however, he never did.

At this place we faw a very fingular curiofity: it was the figure of a man, constructed of basket work, rudely made, but not ill defigned; it was fomething more than feven feet high, and rather too bulky in proportion to its height. The wicker skeleton was completely covered with feathers, which were white where the fkin was to appear, and black in the parts which it is their custom to paint or stain, and upon the head, where there was to be a representation of hair: upon the head also were four protuberances, three in front and one behind, which we should have called horns, but which the Indians dignified with the name of TATE ETE, little men. The image was called MANIOE, and was faid to be the only one of the kind in Otaheite. They attempted to give us an explanation of its use and design, but we had not. then acquired enough of their language to understand them, We learnt, however, afterwards, that it was a representation. of Mauwe, one of their Eatuas, or gods of the fecond class.

After having fettled our affairs with Omoe, we proceeded on our return, and foon reached Opourconu, the north-west: peninsula. After rowing a few miles, we went on shoreagain, but the only thing we saw worth notice; was a repository for the dead, uncommonly decorated: the pavement

June.
Thurfday 29.

June. Thurfday 29.

was extremely neat, and upon it was raifed a pyramid, about five feet high, which was intirely covered with the fruits of two plants, peculiar to the country. Near the pyramid was a small image of stone, of very rude workmanship, and the first instance of carving in stone that we had seen among these people. They appeared to set a high value upon it, for it was covered from the weather by a shed, that had been erected on purpose.

We proceeded in the boat, and passed through the only harbour, on the fouth fide of Opoureonu, that is fit for shipping. It is fituated about five miles to the westward of the ishmus, between two small islands that lie near the shore, and about a mile distant from each other, and affords good anchorage in eleven and twelve fathom water. We were now not far from the diffrict called PAPARRA, which belonged to our friends Oamo and Oberea, where we proposed to sleep. We went on shore about an hour before night, and found that they were both abfent, having left their habitations to pay us a vifit at Matavai: this, however, did not alter our purpose, we took up our quarters at the house of Oberea, which, though fmall, was very neat, and at this time had no inhabitant but her father, who received us with looks that bid us welcome. Having taken possession, we were willing to improve the little day-light that was left us, and therefore walked out to a point, upon which we had feen, at a distance, trees that are here called Etoa, which generally diffinguish the places where these people bury the bones of their dead: their name for fuch burying-grounds, which are also places of worship, is MORAI. We were soon struck with the fight of an enormous pile, which, we were told, was the Morai of Oamo and Oberea, and the principal piece of Indian architecture in the island. It was a pile of stone work, raifed pyramidically, upon an oblong bafe, or fquare,

two

June.
Thurfday 20,

two hundred and fixty-feven feet long, and eighty-feven wide. It was built like the fmall pyramidal mounts upon which we fometimes fix the pillar of a fun-dial, where each fide is a flight of fleps; the fleps, however, at the fides, were broader than those at the ends, so that it terminated not in a fquare of the fame figure with the base, but in a ridge, like the roof of a house: there were eleven of these steps, each of which was four feet high, fo that the height of the pile was forty-four feet; each step was formed of one course of white coral stone, which was neatly fquared and polished, the rest of the mass, for there was no hollow within, consisted of round pebbles, which, from the regularity of their figure, feemed to have been wrought. Some of the coral stones were very large; we measured one of them, and found it three feet and an half by two feet and an half. The foundation was of rock flones, which were also squared; and one of them measured four feet seven inches by two feet four. Such a structure, raised without the affishance of iron tools to fhape the stones, or mortar to join them, struck us with aftonishment: it seemed to be as compact and firm as it could have been made by any workman in Europe, except that the fleps, which range along its greatest length, are not perfeetly strait, but fink in a kind of hollow in the middle, fo that the whole furface, from end to end, is not a right line, but a curve. The quarry stones, as we saw no quarry in the neighbourhood, must have been brought from a considerable diffance; and there is no method of conveyance here but by hand: the coral must also have been fished from under the water, where, though it may be found in plenty, it lies at a confiderable depth, never lefs than three feet. Both the rock flone and the coral could be fquared only by tools made of the fame fubstance, which must have been a work. of incredible labour; but the polishing was more eafily

effected!

1769. June. I hurfday 29. effected by means of the sharp coral fand, which is found every where upon the fea-shore in great abundance. In the middle of the top flood the image of a bird, carved in wood; and near it lay the broken one of a fish, carved in stone. The whole of this pyramid made part of one fide of a spacious area or fquare, nearly of equal fides, being three hundred and fixty feet by three hundred and fifty-four, which was walled in with stone, and paved with flat stones in its whole extent; though there were growing in it, notwithflanding the pavement, feveral of the trees which they call Etoa, and plantains. About an hundred yards to the west of this building, was another paved area or court, in which were feveral fmall stages raised on wooden pillars, about seven feet high, which are called by the Indians Ewattas, and feem to be a kind of altars, as upon these are placed provisions of all kinds as offerings to their gods; we have fince feen whole hogs placed upon them, and we found here the fculls of above fifty, besides the sculls of a great number of dogs.

The principal object of ambition among these people is to have a magnificent Morai, and this was a striking memorial of the rank and power of Oberea. It has been remarked, that we did not find her invested with the same authority that she exercised when the Dolphin was at this place, and we now learnt the reason of it. Our way from her house to the Morai lay along the sea side, and we observed every where under our feet a great number of human bones, chiefly ribs and vertebræ. Upon enquiring into the cause of so singular an appearance, we were told, that in the then last month of Owarabew, which answered to our December, 1768, about four or sive months before our arrival, the people of Tiarrabou, the S. E. peninsula which we had just visited, made a descent at this place, and killed a great number of people, whose bones were those that we saw upon the shore:

that, upon this occasion, Oberea, and Oamo, who then administered the government for his fon, had fled to the mountains; and that the conquerors burnt all the houses, which were very large, and carried away the hogs and what other animals they found. We learnt also, that the turkey and goofe, which we had feen when we were with Mathiabo, the stealer of cloaks, were among the spoils; this accounted for their being found among people with whom the Dolphin had little or no communication; and upon mentioning the jaw-bones, which we had feen hanging from a board in a long house, we were told, that they also had been carried away as trophies, the people here carrying away the jawbones of their enemies, as the Indians of North America do the fcalps.

Thursday 20.

After having thus gratified our curiofity, we returned to our quarters, where we paffed the night in perfect fecurity and quiet. By the next evening we arrived at Atahourou, Friday 30: the residence of our friend Tootahah, where, the last time we paffed the night under his protection, we had been obliged to leave the best part of our clothes behind us. This adventure, however, feemed now to be forgotten on both fides. Our friends received us with great pleafure, and gave us a good fupper and a good lodging, where we fuffered neither loss or disturbance.

The next day, Saturday, July the 1st, we got back to our fort at Matavai, having found the circuit of the island, including both peninfulas, to be about thirty leagues. Upon our complaining of the want of bread-fruit, we were told. that the produce of the last season was nearly exhausted; and that what was feen fprouting upon the trees, would not be fit to use in less than three months; this accounted for our having been able to procure fo little of it in our route.

July. Saturday 1.

Vol. II. Z While

1769. July. Saturday 1.

While the bread-fruit is ripening upon the flats, the inhabitants are supplied in some measure from the trees which they have planted upon the hills to preferve a fuccession; but the quantity is not fufficient to prevent fcarcity: they live therefore upon the four paste which they call Mabie, upon wild plantains, and ahee-nuts, which at this time are in perfection. How it happened that the Dolphin, which was here at this feafon, found fuch plenty of bread-fruit upon the trees, I cannot tell, except the feason in which they ripen varies.

At our return, our Indian friends crouded about us, and none of them came empty-handed. Though I had determined to reflore the canoes which had been detained to their owners, it had not yet been done; but I now released them as they were applied for. Upon this occasion I could not but remark with concern, that these people were capable of practifing petty frauds against each other, with a deliberate dishonesty, which gave me a much worse opinion of them than I had ever entertained from the robberies they committed under the strong temptation to which a sudden opportunity of enriching themselves with the inestimable metal and manufactures of Europe exposed them.

Among others who applied to me for the release of a canoe, was one Potattow, a man of some consequence, well known to us all. I confented, fuppoling the veffel to be his own, or that he applied on the behalf of a friend: he went immediately to the beach, and took possession of one of the boats, which, with the affiftance of his people, he began to carry off. Upon this, however, it was eagerly claimed by the right owners, who, supported by the other Indians, clamouroufly reproached him for invading their property, and prepared to take the canoe from him by force. Upon this, he

defired

defired to be heard, and told them, that the canoe did, indeed, once belong to those who claimed it; but that I, having seized it as a forfeit, had sold it to him for a pig. This silenced the clamour, the owners, knowing that from my power there was no appeal, acquiesced; and Potattow would have carried off his prize, if the dispute had not fortunately been overheard by some of our people who reported it to me. I gave orders immediately that the Indians should be undeceived; upon which the right owners took possession of their canoe, and Potattow was so conscious of his guilt, that neither he nor his wife, who was privy to his knavery, could look us in the face for some time afterwards.

July.
Saturday 1.

CHAP. XVI.

An Expedition of Mr. Banks to trace the River: Marks of fubterraneous Fire: Preparations for leaving the Island: An Account of Tupia.

July. Monday 3.

N the 3d, Mr. Banks fet out early in the morning, with fome Indian guides, to trace our river up the valley from which it iffues, and examine how far it's banks were inhabited. For about fix miles they met with houses, not far diffant from each other, on each fide of the river, and the valley was every where about four hundred yards wide from the foot of the hill on one fide, to the foot of that on the other; but they were now shewn a house which they were told was the last that they would fee. When they came up to it, the master of it offered them refreshments of cocoanuts and other fruit, of which they accepted; after a short flay, they walked forward for a confiderable time; in bad way it is not eafy to compute distances, but they imagined that they had walked about fix miles farther, following the course of the river, when they frequently passed under vaults. formed by fragments of the rock, in which they were told people who were benighted frequently passed the night. Soon after they found the river banked by fleep rocks, from which a cafcade, falling with great violence, formed a pool. fo steep, that the Indians said they could not pass it. They feemed, indeed, not much to be acquainted with the valley beyond this place, their business lying chiefly upon the declivity

173

clivity of the rocks on each fide, and the plains which extended on their fummits, where they found plenty of a wild plantain, which they called Vae. The way up these rocks from the banks of the river was in every respect dreadful: the fides were nearly perpendicular, and in some places one hundred feet high; they were also rendered exceeding slippery by the water of innumerable springs which issued from the fiffures on the furface: yet up these precipices a way was to be traced by a fuccession of long pieces of the bark of the Hibifcus tiliaceus, which ferved as a rope for the climber to take hold of, and affifted him in fcrambling from one ledge to another, though upon these ledges there was footing only for an Indian or a goat. One of these ropes was nearly thirty feet in length, and their guides offered to affift them in mounting this pass, but recommended another at a little diftance lower down, as less difficult and dangerous. They took a view of this "better way," but found it so bad that they did not to chuse to attempt it, as there was nothing at the top to reward their toil and hazard but a grove of the wild plantain or Vae tree, which they had often feen before.

During this excursion, Mr. Banks had an excellent opportunity to examine the rocks, which were almost every where naked, for minerals; but he found not the least appearance of any. The stones every where, like those of Madeira, shewed manifest tokens of having been burnt; nor is there a single specimen of any stone, among all those that were collected in the island, upon which there are not manifest and indubitable marks of sire; except perhaps some small pieces of the hatchet-stone, and even of that, other fragments were collected which are burnt almost to a pumice. Traces of sire are also manifest in the very clay upon the hills; and it may, therefore, not unreasonably be supposed, that this, and the neighbouring islands, are either shattered remains

July. Menday 3.

of a continent, which fome have supposed to be necessary in this part of the globe, to preferve an equilibrium of its parts. which were left behind when the rest funk by the mining of a fubterraneous fire, fo as to give a passage to the sea over it; or were torn from rocks, which, from the creation of the world, had been the bed of the fea, and thrown up in heaps, to a height which the waters never reach. One or other of these suppositions will perhaps be thought the more probable, as the water does not gradually grow shallow as the fhore is approached, and the islands are almost every where furrounded by reefs, which appear to be rude and broken, as fome violent concussion would naturally leave the folid fubstance of the earth. It may also be remarked upon this occasion, that the most probable cause of earthquakes seems to be the fudden rushing in of water upon some vast mass of fubterraneous fire, by the inflantaneous rarefaction of which into vapour, the mine is fprung, and various fubstances, in all stages of vitrification, with shells, and other marine productions, that are now found fossil, and the strata that covered the furnace, are thrown up; while those parts of the land which were supported upon the broken shell give way, and fink into the gulph. With this theory the phænomena of all earthquakes feem to agree; pools of water are frequently left where land has fubfided, and various fubflances, which manifestly appear to have suffered by the action of fire, are thrown up. It is indeed true, that fire cannot fubfift without air; but this cannot be urged against there being fire below that part of the earth which forms the bed of the fea; because there may be innumerable fissures by which a communication between those parts and the external air may be kept up, even upon the highest mountains, and at the greateft distance from the sea-shore.

On the 4th, Mr. Banks employed himself in planting a great quantity of the seeds of water-melons, oranges, lemons, limes, and other plants and trees which be had collected at Rio de Janeiro. For these he prepared ground on each side of the fort, with as many varieties of soil as he could chuse; and there is little doubt but that they will succeed. He also gave liberally of these seeds to the Indians, and planted many of them in the woods: some of the melon seeds having been planted soon after our arrival, the nativesshewed him several of the plants which appeared to be in the most flourishing condition, and were continually asking him for more.

July.
Tuefday 4.

We now began to prepare for our departure, by bending the fails and performing other necessary operations on board. the ship, our water being already on board, and the provifions examined.- In the mean time we had another vifit from Oamo, Oberea, and their fon and daughter; the Indians expreffing their respect by uncovering the upper parts of their body as they had done before. The daughter, whose name we understood to be Toimata, was very defirous to fee the fort, but her father would by no means fusser her to come in. Tearee, the fon of Waheatua, the fovereign of Tiarrabou, the fouth east peninsula, was also with us at this time; and we received intelligence of the landing of another gueft, whose company was neither expected nor defired: this was no other. than the ingenious gentleman who contrived to fleal our quadrant. We were told, that he intended to try his fortune again in the night; but the Indians all offered very zealoufly. to affift us against him, defiring that, for this purpose, they might be permitted to lie in the fort. This had fo good an effect, that the thief relinquished his enterprize in defpair.

July. Friday 7. On the 7th, the carpenters were employed in taking down the gates and pallifadoes of our little fortification, for firewood on board the ship; and one of the Indians had dexterity enough to steal the staple and hook upon which the gate turned: he was immediately pursued, and after a chace of six miles, he appeared to have been passed, having concealed himself among some rushes in the brook; the rushes were searched, and though the thief had escaped, a scraper was found which had been stolen from the ship sometime before; and soon after our old friend Tubourai Tamaide brought us the staple.

Saturday 8. Sunday 9. On the 8th and 9th, we continued to difmantle our fort, and our friends still flocked about us; fome, I believe, forry at the approach of our departure, and others defirous to make as much as they could of us while we staid.

We were in hopes that we should now leave the island, without giving or receiving any other offence; but it unfortunately happened otherwise. Two foreign seamen having been out with my permission, one of them was robbed of his knife, and endeavouring to recover it, probably with circumstances of great provocation, the Indians attacked him and dangerously wounded him with a stone; they wounded his companion also slightly in the head, and then sled into the mountains. As I should have been forry to take any farther notice of the affair, I was not displeased that the offenders had escaped; but I was immediately involved in a quarrel which I very much regretted, and which yet it was not possible to avoid.

In the middle of the night between the 8th and 9th, Clement Webb and Samuel Gibson, two of the marines, both young men, went privately from the fort, and in the morning were not to be found. As publick notice had been given,

that all hands were to go on board on the next day, and that the ship would fail on the morrow of that day or the day following, I began to fear that the absentees intended to stay Sunday 9. behind. I knew that I could take no effectual steps to recover them, without endangering the harmony and goodwill which at present subsisted among us; and, therefore, determined to wait a day for the chance of their return.

176g. July.

concern, not being returned, an enquiry was made after them of the Indians, who frankly told us, that they did not intend to return, and had taken refuge in the mountains. where it was impossible for our people to find them. They were then requested to assist in the search, and after some deliberation, two of them undertook to conduct fuch persons as I should think proper to fend after them to the place of their retreat. As they were known to be without arms, I thought two would be fufficient, and accordingly dispatched a petty officer, and the corporal of the marines, with the Indian guides, to fetch them back. As the recovery of thefe men was a matter of great importance, as I had no time to lofe, and as the Indians spoke doubtfully of their return, telling us, that they had each of them taken a wife, and were become inhabitants of the country, it was intimated to feveral of the Chiefs who were in the fort with their women. among whom were Tubourai Tamaide, Tomio, and Oberea, that they would not be permitted to leave it till our deferters were brought back. This precaution I thought the more necessary, as, by concealing them a few days, they might compel me to go without them; and I had the pleafure to observe, that they received the intimation with very little figns either of fear or discontent; assuring me that my people

should be secured and sent back as soon as possible. While this was doing at the fort, I fent Mr. Hicks in the pinnace to

Aa

VOL. II.

On Monday morning the 10th, the marines, to my great Monday 10.

fetch

Monday 10.

fetch Tootahah on board the ship, which he did, without alarming either him or his people. If the Indian guides proved faithful and in earnest, I had reason to expect the return of my people with the deferters before evening. Being disappointed, my suspicions increased; and night coming on, I thought it was not fafe to let the people whom I had detained as hoftages continue at the fort, and I therefore ordered Tubourai Tamaide, Oberea, and fome others, to be taken on board the ship. This spread a general alarm, and feveral of them, especially the women, expressed their apprehensions with great emotion and many tears when they were put into the boat. I went on board with them, and Mr. Banks remained on shore, with some others whom I thought it of less consequence to secure.

About nine o'clock, Webb was brought back by fome of the natives, who declared, that Gibson, and the petty officer and corporal, would be detained till Tootahah should be set at liberty. The tables were now turned upon me; but I had proceeded too far to retreat. I immediately dispatched Mr. Hicks in the long-boat, with a ftrong party of men, to refcue the prisoners, and told Tootahah that it behoved him to fend fome of his people with them, with orders to afford them effectual affiftance, and to demand the release of my men in his name, for that I should expect him to anfwer for the contrary. He readily complied; this party recovered my men without the least opposition; and about Tuefday 11. feven o'clock in the morning, returned with them to the ship, though they had not been able to recover the arms which had been taken from them when they were feized: thefe, however, were brought on board in less than half an hour, and the Chiefs were immediately fet at liberty.

When I questioned the petty officer concerning what had happened on shore, he told me, that neither the natives who

Tuefday 11.

went with him, nor those whom they met in their way, would give them any intelligence of the deferters; but, on the contrary, became very troublefome: that, as he was returning for further orders to the ship, he and his comrade were fuddenly feized by a number of armed men, who having learnt that Tootahah was confined, had concealed themselves in a wood for that purpose, and, who having taken them at a difadvantage, forced their weapons out of their hands, and declared, that they would detain them till their Chief should be fet at liberty. He faid, however, that the Indians were not unanimous in this measure; that fome were for fetting them at liberty, and others for detaining them: that an eager dispute ensued, and that from words they came to blows, but that the party for detaining them at length prevailed: that foon after, Webb and Gibson were brought in by a party of the natives, as prisoners, that they also might be secured as hostages for the Chief; but that it was after fome debate refolved to fend Webb to inform me of their resolution, to assure me that his companions were fafe, and direct me where I might fend my answer. Thus it appears that whatever were the difadvantages of feizing the Chiefs, I should never have recovered my men by any other method. When the Chiefs were fet on shore from the thip, those at the fort were also set at liberty, and, after staying with Mr. Banks about an hour, they all went away. Upon this occasion, as they had done upon another of the fame kind, they expressed their joy by an undeserved liberality, flrongly urging us to accept of four hogs. These we absolutely refused as a present, and they as absolutely refuling to be paid for them, the hogs did not change masters. Upon examining the deferters, we found that the account which the Indians had given of them was true: they had frongly attached themselves to two girls, and it was their

Aa2

intention

July.
Tuefday 11.

intention to conceal themselves till the ship had failed, and take up their residence upon the island. This night every thing was got off from the shore, and every body slept on board.

Among the natives who were almost constantly with us, was Tupia, whose name has been often mentioned in this narrative. He had been, as I have before observed, the first minister of Oberea, when she was in the height of her power: he was also the chief Tahowa or priest of the island. confequently well acquainted with the religion of the country, as well with respect to its ceremonies as principles. He had also great experience and knowlege in navigation; and was particularly acquainted with the number and fituation: of the neighbouring islands. This man had often expressed: a defire to go with us, and on the 12th in the morning, having with the other natives left us the day before, he came on board, with a boy about thirteen years of age, his fervant, and urged us to let him proceed with us on our voyage. To have fuch a perfon on board, was certainly defirable for many reasons; by learning his language, and teaching him ours, we should be able to acquire a much better knowlege of the customs, policy, and religion of the people, than our fhort flay among them could give us, I therefore gladly agreed to receive them on board. As we were prevented from failing to-day, by having found it neceffary to make new flocks to our fmall and best bower anchors, the old ones having been totally destroyed by the worms, Tupia faid, he would go once more on shore, and make a fignal for the boat to fetch him off in the evening. He went accordingly, and took with him a miniature picture of Mr. Banks's, to flew his friends, and feveral little things. to give them as parting prefents.

Wednes. 12.

After dinner, Mr. Banks being defirous to procure a drawing of the Morai belonging to Tootahah at Eparré, I attended him thither, accompanied by Dr. Solander, in the pinnace. As foon as we landed, many of our friends came to meet us, though fome absented themselves in resentment of what had happened the day before. We immediately proceeded to Tootahah's house, were we were joined by Oberea, with feveral others who had not come out to meet us, and a perfect reconciliation was foon brought about; in confequence of which they promifed to vifit us early the next day, to take a last farewel of us, as we told them we should certainly set fail in the afternoon. At this place also we found Tupia, who returned with us, and flept this night on board the ship for the first time.

On the next morning, Thursday the 13th of July, the ship Thursday 13. was very early crouded with our friends, and furrounded by a multitude of canoes, which were filled with the natives of an inferior class. Between eleven and twelve we weighed anchor, and as foon as the ship was under fail, the Indians on board took their leaves, and wept, with a decent and filent forrow, in which there was fomething very striking and tender: the people in the canoes, on the contrary, feemed to vie with each other in the loudness of their lamentations, which we confidered rather as affectation than grief. Tupia fustained himself in this scene with a firmness and refolution truly admirable: he wept indeed, but the effort that he made to conceal his tears, concurred, with them, to do him honour. He fent his last present, a shirt, by Otheothea, to Potomai, Tootahah's favourite mistress. and then went with Mr. Banks to the mast-head, waving to the canoes as long as they continued in fight.

1769. July. Thursday 13.

Thus we took leave of Otaheite, and its inhabitants, after a flay of just three months; for much the greater part of the time we lived together in the most cordial friendship, and a perpetual reciprocation of good offices. The accidental differences which now and then happened, could not be more fincerely regretted on their part than they were on ours: the principal causes were such as necessarily resulted from our fituation and circumstances, in conjunction with the infirmities of human nature, from our not being able perfectly to understand each other, and from the disposition of the inhabitants to theft, which we could not at all times bear with or prevent. They had not, however, except in one instance been attended with any fatal confequence; and to that accident were owing the meafures that I took to prevent others of the fame kind. I hoped, indeed, to have availed myself of the impression which had been made upon them by the lives that had been facrificed in their contest with the Dolphin, fo as that the intercourse between us should have been carried on wholly without bloodshed; and by this hope all my measures were directed during the whole of my continuance at the island, and I sincerely wish, that whoever shall next visit it, may be still more fortunate. Our traffick here was carried on with as much order as in the best regulated market in Europe. It was managed principally by Mr. Banks, who was indefatigable in procuring provision and refreshments while they were to be had; but during the latter part of our time they became fcarce, partly by the increased confumption at the fort and ship, and partly by the coming on of the feafon in which cocoa-nuts and bread-fruit fail. All kind of fruit we purchased for beads and nails, but no nails less than fortypenny were current: after a very short time we could never get a pig of more than ten or twelve pounds, for

less than a hatchet; because, though these people set a high value upon spike nails, yet these being an article with which many people in the ship were provided, the women found a much more easy way of procuring them than by bringing down provisions.

July.
Thursday 13.

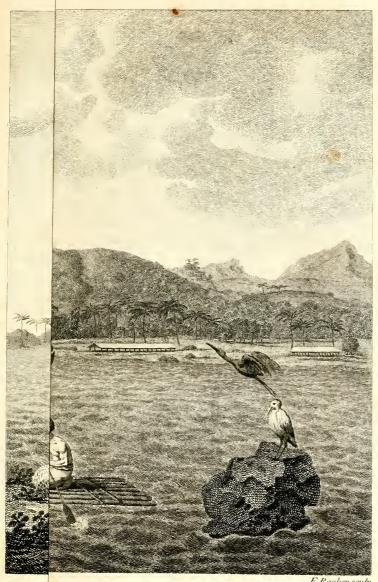
The best articles for traffick here are axes, hatchets, spikes, large nails, looking-glasses, knives, and beads, for some of which, every thing that the natives have may be procured. They are indeed fond of fine linen cloth, both white and printed; but an ax worth half a crown, will setch more than a piece of cloth worth twenty shillings.

CHAP. XVII.

A particular Description of the Island; its Produce and Inhabitants; their Dress, Habitations, Food, domestic Life and Amusements.

1769.

TITE found the longitude of Port-Royal bay, in this ifland, as fettled by Captain Wallis, who discovered it on the 9th of June 1767, to be within half a degree of the truth. We found Point Venus, the northern extremity of the island, and the eastern point of the bay, to lie in the longitude of 149° 30' this being the mean refult of a great number of observations made upon the spot. The island is furrounded by a reef of coral rock, which forms feveral excellent bays and harbours, fome of which have been particularly described, where there is room and depth of water for any number of the largest ships. Port-Royal bay, called by the natives Matavai, which is not inferior to any in Otaheite, may eafily be known by a very high mountain in the middle of the island, which bears due fouth from Point Venus. To fail into it, either keep the west point of the reef that lies before Point Venus, close on board, or give it a birth of near half a mile, in order to avoid a small shoal of coral rocks, on which there is but two fathom and an half of water. The best anchoring is on the eastern side of the bay, where there is fixteen and fourteen fathom upon an oufey bottom. The shore of the bay is a fine fandy beach, behind which runs a river of fresh water, so that any number of ships may water here without incommoding each other; but the only wood for firing, upon the whole island, is that of fruit



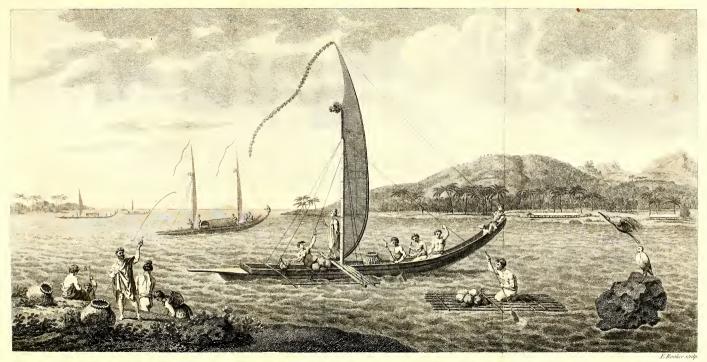
E.Rooker sculp. Nº 4.

CHAP. XVII.

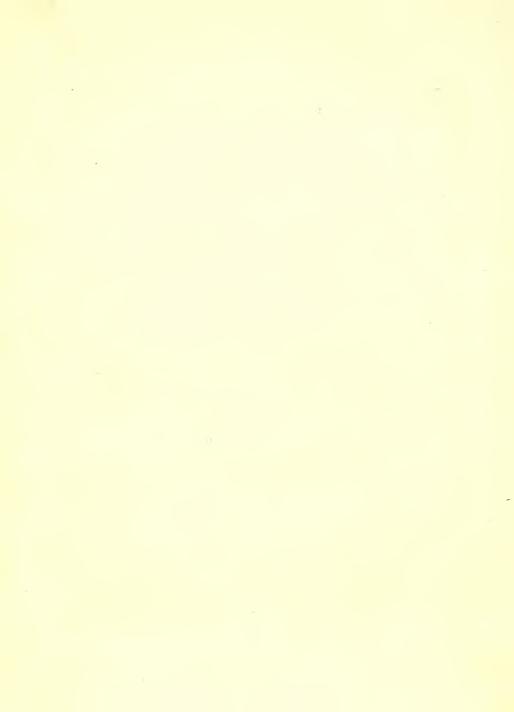
A particular Description of the Island; its Produce and Inhabitants; their Dress, Habitations, Food, domestic Life and Amusements.

1769.

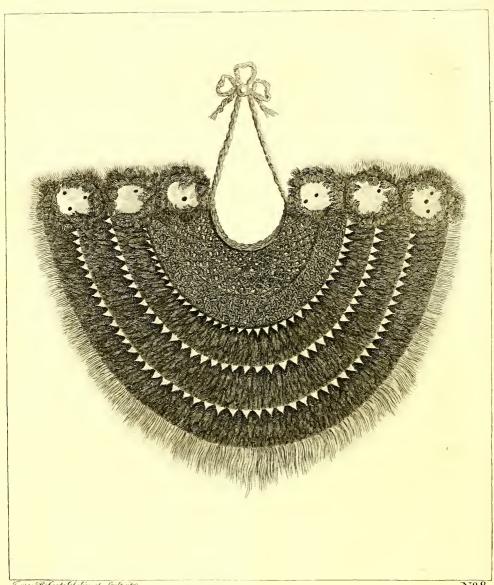
E found the longitude of Port-Royal bay, in this ifland, as fettled by Captain Wallis, who discovered it on the 9th of June 1767, to be within half a degree of the truth. We found Point Venus, the northern extremity of the island, and the eastern point of the bay, to lie in the longitude of 149° 30' this being the mean refult of a great number of observations made upon the spot. The island is furrounded by a reef of coral rock, which forms feveral excellent bays and harbours, fome of which have been particularly described, where there is room and depth of water for any number of the largest ships. Port-Royal bay, called by the natives Matavai, which is not inferior to any in Otaheite, may eafily be known by a very high mountain in the middle of the island, which bears due fouth from Point Venus. To fail into it, either keep the west point of the reef that lies before Point Venus, close on board, or give it a birth of near half a mile, in order to avoid a small shoal of coral rocks, on which there is but two fathom and an half of water. The best anchoring is on the eastern side of the bay, where there is fixteen and fourteen fathom upon an oufey bottom. The shore of the bay is a fine fandy beach, behind which runs a river of fresh water, so that any number of Thips may water here without incommoding each other; but the only wood for firing, upon the whole island, is that of fruit



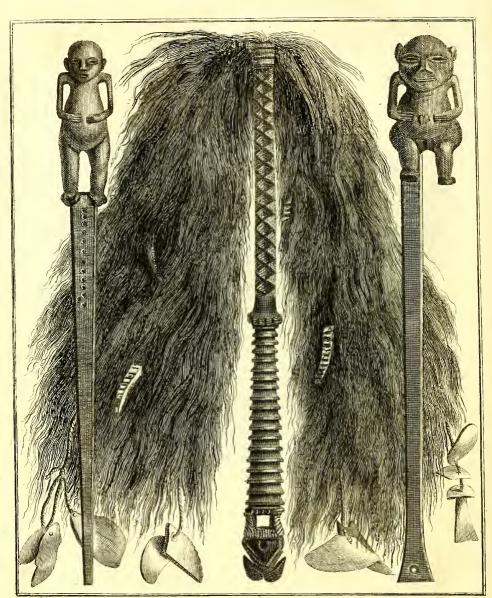
Nº L











fruit trees, which must be purchased of the natives, or all hope of living upon good terms with them given up. There are some harbours to the westward of this bay which have not been mentioned, but, as they are contiguous to it, and laid down in the plan, a description of them is unnecessary.

The face of the country, except that part of it which borders upon the fea, is very uneven; it rifes in ridges that run up into the middle of the island, and there form mountains, which may be feen at the distance of fixty miles: between the foot of these ridges and the sea, is a border of low land, furrounding the whole island, except in a few places. where the ridges rife directly from the fea: the border of low land is in different parts of different breadths, but no where more than a mile and a half. -The foil, except upon the very tops of the ridges, is extremely rich and fertile, watered by a great number of rivulets of excellent water, and covered with fruit trees of various kinds, some of which are of a flately growth and thick foliage, so as to form one continued wood; and even the tops of the ridges, though in general they are bare, and burnt up by the fun, are, in some parts, not without their produce.

The low land that lies between the foot of the ridges and the fca, and fome of the vallies, are the only parts of the ifland that are inhabited, and here it is populous; the houses do not form villages or towns, but are ranged along the whole border at the distance of about fifty yards from each other, with little plantations of plantains, the tree which furnishes them with cloth. The whole island, according to Tupia's account, who certainly knew, could furnish fix thousand seven hundred and eighty fighting men, from which the number of inhabitants may easily be computed.

Produce.

The produce of this island is bread-fruit, cocoa-nuts, bananas, of thirteen forts, the best we had ever eaten; plantains; a fruit not unlike an apple, which, when ripe, is very pleasant; sweet potatoes, yams, cocoas, a kind of Arum; a fruit known here by the name of Jambu, and reckoned most delicious; fugar cane, which the inhabitants eat raw; a root of the falop kind, called by the inhabitants Pea; a plant called Ethee; of which the root only is eaten; a fruit that grows in a pod, like that of a large kidney-bean, which, when it is roafted, eats very much like a chefnut, by the natives called. Abee; a tree called Wharra, called in the East Indies Pandanes, which produces fruit, fomething like the pine-apple; a shrubcalled Nono; the Morinda, which also produces fruit; a species of fern, of which the root is eaten, and fometimes the leaves; and a plant called Theve, of which the root also is eaten: but the fruits of the Nono; the fern, and the Theve, are eaten only by the inferior people, and in times of fcarcity. All these, which serve the inhabitants for food, the earth produces fpontaneously, or with so little culture, that they feem to be exempted from the first general curse, that " man should eat his bread in the sweat of his brow." They have also the Chinese paper mulberry, morus papyrifera, which they call Aouta; a tree refembling the wild fig-tree of the West Indies; another species of fig, which they call Matte; the cordia sebestina orientalis, which they call Etou; a kind of Cyperus grafs, which they call Moo; a species of tournefortia; which they call Tabeinoo; another of the convolvulus poluce, which they call Eurhe; the folanum centifolium, which they call Ebooa; the calaphyllum mophylum, which they call: Tamannu; the bibifcus tiliaceus, called Poeron, a frutescent nettle; the urticaargentea, called Erowa; with many other plants which cannot here be particularly mentioned: those that have been named already, will be referred to in the fubfequent part of this work.

They

They have no European fruit, garden stuff, pulse, or legumes, nor grain of any kind.

1769.

Of tame animals they have only hogs, dogs, and poultry; neither is there a wild animal in the island, except ducks, pigeons, paroquets, with a few other birds, and rats, there being no other quadruped, nor any ferpent. But the sea supplies them with great variety of most excellent sish, to eat which is their chief luxury, and to catch it their principal labour.

As to the people they are of the largest size of Europeans. Persons: The men are tall, strong, well-limbed, and finely shaped. The tallest that we saw was a man upon a neighbouring island, called HUAHEINE, who measured six feet three inches and an half. The women of the superior rank are also in general above our middle stature, but those of the inferior class are rather below it, and some of them are very small. This defect in size probably proceeds from their early commerce with men, the only thing in which they differ from their superiors, that could possibly affect their growth.

Their natural complexion is that kind of clear olive, or Brunette, which many people in Europe prefer to the finest white and red. In those that are exposed to the wind and fun, it is considerably deepened, but in others that live under shelter, especially the superior class of women, it continues of its native hue, and the skin is most delicately smooth and soft; they have no tint in their cheeks, which we distinguish by the name of colour. The shape of the face is comely, the cheek bones are not high, neither are the eyes hollow, nor the brow prominent: the only feature that does not correspond with our ideas of beauty is the nose, which, in general, is somewhat slat; but their eyes, especially those of the women, are full of expression, sometimes sparkling with

fire, and fometimes melting with foftness; their teeth also are, almost without exception, most beautifully even and white, and their breath perfectly without taint.

The hair is almost universally black, and rather coarse; the men have beards which they wear in many fashions, always, however, plucking out great part of them, and keeping the rest perfectly clean and neat. Both sexes also eradicate every hair from under their arms, and accused us of great uncleanliness for not doing the same. In their motions there is at once vigour and case; their walk is graceful, their deportment liberal, and their behaviour to strangers and to each other affable and courteous. In their dispositions alfo, they feemed to be brave, open, and candid, without either fuspicion or treachery, cruelty or revenge; fo that we placed the same confidence in them as in our best friends, many of us, particularly Mr. Banks, fleeping frequently in their houses in the woods, without a companion, and consequently wholly in their power. They were, however, all thieves; and when that is allowed, they need not much fear a competition with the people of any other nation upon earth. During our flay in this island we saw about five or six perfons, like one that was met by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander on the 24th of April, in their walk to the eastward, whose ikins were of a dead white, like the nose of a white horse; with white hair, beard, brows, and eye-lashes; red, tender eyes; a short fight, and scurfy skins, covered with a kind of white down; but we found that no two of these belonged to the fame family, and therefore concluded, that they were not a species, but unhappy individuals, rendered anomalous by difeafe.

Drefs.

It is a custom in most countries where the inhabitants have long hair, for the men to cut it short and the women to pride them.

themselves in its length. Here, however, the contrary custom prevails; the women always cut it short round their ears, and the men, except the fishers, who are almost continually in the water, suffer it to slow in large waves over their shoulders, or tie it up in a bunch on the top of their heads.

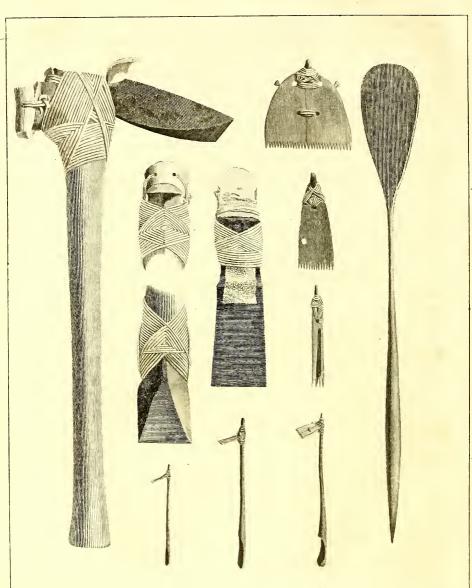
They have a custom also of anointing their heads, with what they call *Monoe*, an oil expressed from the cocoa-nut, in which some sweet herbs or slowers have been insused: as the oil is generally rancid, the smell is at first very disagreeable to a European; and as they live in a hot country, and have no such thing as a comb, they are not able to keep their heads free from lice, which the children and common people sometimes pick out and eat: a hateful custom, wholly different from their manners in every other particular; for they are delicate and cleanly almost without example, and those to whom we distributed combs, soon delivered themselves from vermin, with a diligence which showed that they were not more odious to us than to them.

They have a custom of staining their bodies, nearly in the same manner as is practised in many other parts of the world, which they call *Tattowing*. They prick the skin, so as just not to fetch blood, with a small instrument, something in the form of a hoe; that part which answers to the blade is made of a bone or shell, scraped very thin, and is from a quarter of an inch to an inch and a half wide; the edge is cut into sharp teeth or points, from the number of three to twenty, according to its size: when this is to be used, they dip the teeth into a mixture of a kind of lamp-black, formed of the smoke that rises from an oily nut which they burn instead of candles, and water; the teeth, thus prepared, are placed upon the skin, and the handle to which they are fas-

tened being flruck, by quick fmart blows, with a flick fitted to the purpose, they pierce it, and at the same time carry into the puncture the black composition, which leaves an indelible stain. The operation is painful, and it is fome days before the wounds are healed. It is performed upon the youth of both fexes when they are about twelve or fourteen years of age, on feveral parts of the body, and in various figures, according to the fancy of the parent, or perhaps the rank of the party. The women are generally marked with this stain, in the form of a Z, on every joint of their fingers and toes, and frequently round the outfide of their feet: the men are also marked with the same figure, and both men and women have fquares, circles, crescents, and ill-designed representations of men, birds, or dogs, and various other devices impressed upon their legs and arms, some of which we were told had fignifications, though we could never learn what they were. But the part on which these ornaments are lavished with the greatest profusion, is the breech: this, in both fexes, is covered with a deep black; above which, arches are drawn one over another as high as the fhort ribs. They are often a quarter of an inch broad, and the edges are not ftrait lines, but indented. These arches are their pride, and are shewn both by men and women with a mixture of oftentation and pleafure; whether as an ornament, or a proof of their fortitude and refolution in bearing pain, we could not determine. The face in general is left unmarked; for we faw but one inflance to the contrary. Some old men had the greatest part of their bodies covered with large patches of black, deeply indented at the edges, like a rude imitation of flame; but we were told, that they came from a low island called Noouogra, and were not natives of Otaheite.

Mr. Banks faw the operation of tattowing performed upon the backfide of a girl about thirteen years old. The inftru-





ment used upon this occasion had thirty teeth, and every stroke, of which at least a hundred were made in a minute, drew an ichor or ferum a little tinged with blood. The girl bore it with most stoical resolution for about a quarter of an hour; but the pain of fo many hundred punctures as she had received in that time then became intolerable: she first complained in murmurs, then wept, and at last burst into loud lamentations, earnestly imploring the operator to defift. He was, however, inexorable; and when she began to ftruggle, she was held down by two women, who fometimes foothed and fometimes chid her, and now and then, when, fhe was most unruly, gave her a smart blow. Mr. Banks flaid in a neighbouring house an hour, and the operation was not over when he went away; yet it was performed but upon one fide, the other having been done fometime before; and the arches upon the loins, in which they most pride themselves, and which give more pain than all the rest, were still to be done.

It is strange that these people should value themselves upon what is no distinction; for I never saw a native of this island, either man or woman, in a state of maturity, in whom these marks were wanting: possibly they may have their rise in superstition, especially as they produce no visible advantage, and are not made without great pain; but though we enquired of many hundreds, we could never get any account of the matter.

Their clothing confilts of cloth or matting of different kinds, which will be described among their other manufactures. The cloth, which will not bear wetting, they wear in dry weather, and the matting when it rains; they are put on in many different ways, just as their fancy leads them; for in their garments nothing is cut into shape, nor are any

tyvo:

two pieces fewed together. The drefs of the better fort of women confifts of three or four pieces: one piece, about two yards wide and eleven yards long, they wrap feveral times round their waist, so as to hang down like a petticoat as low as the middle of the leg, and this they call Parou: two or three other pieces, about two yards and an half long and one wide, each having a hole cut in the middle, they place one upon another, and then putting the head through the holes, they bring the long ends down before and behind; the others remain open at the fides, and give liberty to the arms: this, which they call the Tebuta, is gathered round the waift, and confined with a girdle or fash of thinner cloth, which is long enough to go many times round them, and exactly refembles the garment worn by the inhabitants of Peru and Chili, which the Spaniards call Poncho. The drefs of the men is the fame, except that inflead of fuffering the cloth that is wound about the hips to hang down like a petticoat, they bring it between their legs fo as to have fome refemblance to breeches, and it is then called Maro. This is the dress of all ranks of people, and being universally the same as to form, the gentlemen and ladies diffinguish themselves from the lower people by the quantity; fome of them will wrap round them feveral pieces of cloth, eight or ten yards long, and two or three broad; and fome throw a large piece loofely over their shoulders in the manner of a cloak, or perhaps two pieces, if they are very great personages, and are defirous to appear in flate. The inferior fort, who have only a fmall allowance of cloth from the tribes or families to which they belong, are obliged to be more thinly clad. In the heat of the day they appear almost naked, the women having only a fcanty petticoat, and the men nothing but the fash that is passed between their legs and fastened round the waift. As finery is always troublesome, and particularly in

a hot country, where it confifts in putting one covering upon another, the women of rank always uncover themselves as low as the waist in the evening, throwing off all that they wear on the upper part of the body, with the same negligence and ease as our ladies would lay by a cardinal or double handkerchief. And the Chiefs, even when they visited us, though they had as much cloth round their middle as would clothe a dozen people, had frequently the rest of the body quite naked.

Upon their legs and feet they wear no covering; but they shade their faces from the fun with little bonnets, either of matting or of cocoa-nut leaves, which they make occasionally in a few minutes. This, however, is not all their headdrefs; the women fometimes wear little turbans, and fometimes a drefs which they value much more, and which, indeed, is much more becoming, called Tomou; the Tomou confifts of human hair, plaited in threads, scarcely thicker than fewing filk. Mr. Banks has pieces of it above a mile in length, without a knot. Thefe they wind round the head in fuch a manner as produces a very pretty effect, and in a very great quantity; for I have feen five or fix fuch pieces wound about the head of one woman: among these threads they slick flowers of various kinds, particularly the cape-jeffamine, of which they have great plenty, as it is always planted near their houses. The men fometimes slick the tail feather of the Tropic-bird upright in their hair, which, as I have obferved before, is often tied in a bunch upon the top of their heads: fometimes they wear a kind of whimfical garland, made of flowers of various kinds, fluck into a piece of the rind of a plantain; or of fearlet peas, fluck with gum upon a piece of wood: and fometimes they wear a kind of wig, made of the hair of men or dogs, or perhaps of cocoa-nut strings, woven upon one thread, which is tied under their hair. VOL. II. Cc

hair, fo that these artificial honours of their head may hang down behind. Their personal ornaments, besides flowers, are few; both sexes wear ear-rings, but they are placed only on one side: when we came they consisted of small pieces of shell, stone, berries, red peas, or some small pearls, three in a string; but our beads very soon supplanted them all.

The children go quite naked; the girls till they are three or four years old, and the boys till they are fix or feven.

Houses.

The houses, or rather dwellings of these people have been occasionally mentioned before: they are all built in the wood, between the fea and the mountains, and no more ground is cleared for each house, than just fufficient to prevent the dropping of the branches from rotting the thatch with which they are covered; from the house, therefore, the inhabitant steps immediately under the shade, which is the most delightful that can be imagined. It consists of groves of bread-fruit and cocoa-nuts, without underwood, which are interfected, in all directions, by the paths that lead from one house to the other. Nothing can be more grateful than this shade in fo warm a climate, nor any thing more beautiful than these walks. As there is no underwood, the shade cools without impeding the air; and the houses, having no walls, receive the gale from whatever point it blows. I shall now give a particular description of a house of a middling fize, from which, as the structure is universally the same, a perfect idea may be formed both of those that are bigger, and those that are less.

The ground which it covers is an oblong fquare, four and swenty feet long, and eleven wide; over this a roof is raifed, upon three rows of pillars or pofts, parallel to each other, one on each fide, and the other in the middle. This roof confifts of two flat fides inclining to each other, and termi-

nating

nating in a ridge, exactly like the roofs of our thatched houses in England. The utmost height within is about nine feet, and the eaves on each side reach to within about three feet and an half of the ground: below this, and through the whole height at each end, it is open, no part of it being inclosed with a wall. The roof is thatched with palm-leaves, and the sloor is covered, some inches deep, with soft hay; over this are laid mats, so that the whole is one cushion, upon which they sit in the day, and sleep in the night. In some houses, however, there is one stool, which is wholly appropriated to the master of the family; besides this, they have no furniture, except a few little blocks of wood, the upper side of which is hollowed into a curve, and which serve them for pillows.

The house is indeed principally used as a dormitory; for, except it rains, they eat in the open air, under the shade of the next tree. The clothes that they wear in the day, serve them for covering in the night; the floor is the common bed of the whole household, and is not divided by any partition. The master of the house and his wife sleep in the middle, next to them the married people, next to them the unmarried women, and next to them, at a little distance, the unmarried men; the servants, or Toutous, as they are called, sleep in the open air, except it rains, and in that case they come just within the shed.

There are, however, houses of another kind, belonging to the Chiefs, in which there is some degree of privacy. These are much smaller, and so constructed as to be carried about in their canoes from place to place, and set up occasionally, like a tent; they are inclosed on the sides with cocoa-nut leaves, but not so close as to exclude the air, and the Chief and his wife sleep in them alone.

There are houses also of a much larger size, not built either for the accommodation of a single Chief, or a single family; but as common receptacles for all the people of a district. Some of them are two hundred feet long, thirty broad, and, under the ridge, twenty feet high; these are built and maintained at the common expence of the district, for the accommodation of which they are intended; and have on one side of them a large area, inclosed with low pallisadoes.

These houses, like those of separate families, have no walls. Privacy, indeed, is little wanted among people who have not even the idea of indecency, and who gratify every appetite and passion before witnesses, with no more sense of impropriety than we feel when we fatisfy our hunger at a social board with our family or friends. Those who have no idea of indecency with respect to actions, can have none with respect to words; it is, therefore, scarcely necessary to observe, that, in the conversation of these people, that which is the principal source of their pleasure, is always the principal topic; and that every thing is mentioned without any restraint or emotion, and in the most direct terms, by both sexes.

Food.

Of the food eaten here the greater part is vegetable. Here are no tame animals except hogs, dogs, and poultry, as I have observed before, and these are by no means plenty. When a Chief kills a hog, it is almost equally divided among his dependants; and as they are very numerous, the share of each individual at these feasts, which are not frequent, must necessarily be small. Dogs and fowls fall somewhat more frequently to the share of the common people. I cannot much commend the slavour of their fowls; but we all agreed, that a South Sea dog was little inferior to an English lamb;

their

their excellence is probably owing to their being kept up, and fed wholly upon vegetables. The fea affords them a great variety of fish. The smaller fish, when they catch any, are generally eaten raw, as we eat oysters; and nothing that the fea produces comes amiss to them: they are fond of lobfters, crabs, and other shell-fish, which are found upon the coast; and they will eat not only sea-insects, but what the feamen call Blubbers, though fome of them are fo tough, that they are obliged to fuffer them to become putrid before they can be chewed. Of the many vegetables that have been mentioned already as ferving them for food, the principal is the bread-fruit, to procure which costs them no trouble or labour but climbing a tree: the tree which produces it, does not indeed shoot up spontaneously; but if a man plants ten of them in his lifetime, which he may do in about an hour, he will as completely fulfil his duty to his own and future generations, as the native of our less temperate climate can do by ploughing in the cold of winter, and reaping in the fummer's heat, as often as these seasons return; even if, after he has procured bread for his present household, he should convert a furplus into money, and lay it up for his children.

It is true, indeed, that the bread-fruit is not always in feafon; but cocoa-nuts, bananas, plantains, and a great variety of other fruits, fupply the deficiency.

It may well be supposed, that cookery is but little studied by these people as an art; and, indeed, they have but two ways of applying fire to dress their food, broiling and baking; the operation of broiling is so simple that it requires no description, and their baking has been described already, (page 152.) in the account of an entertainment prepared for us by Tupia. Hogs, and large fish, are extremely well dressed in the same manner; and, in our opinion, were more

juicy and more equally done than by any art of cookery now practifed in Europe. Bread-fruit is also cooked in an oven of the fame kind, which renders it foft, and fomething like a boiled potatoe; not quite fo farinaceous as a good one, but more fo than those of the middling fort.

Of the bread-fruit they also make three dishes, by putting either water or the milk of the cocoa-nut to it, then beating it to a paste with a stone pestle, and afterwards mixing it with ripe plantains, bananas, or the four paste which they call Mahie.

The mahie, which has been mentioned as a fuccedaneum for ripe bread-fruit, before the feafon for gathering a fresh crop comes on, is thus made:

The fruit is gathered just before it is perfectly ripe, and being laid in heaps, is closely covered with leaves; in this flate it undergoes a fermentation, and becomes difagreeably fweet: the core is then taken out entire, which is done by gently pulling the stalk, and the rest of the fruit is thrown into a hole which is dug for that purpose, generally in the houses, and neatly lined in the bottom and sides with grafs; the whole is then covered with leaves, and heavy stones laid upon them: in this state it undergoes a second fermentation, and becomes four, after which it will fuffer no change for many months: it is taken out of the hole as it is wanted for use, and being made into balls, it is wrapped up in leaves and baked; after it is dreffed, it will keep five or fix weeks. It is eaten both cold and hot, and the natives feldom make a meal without it, though to us the tafte was as difagreeable as that of a pickled olive generally is the first time it is eaten.

As the making of this mahie depends, like brewing, upon fermentation, fo, like brewing, it fometimes fails, without

therefore, that the making it fhould be connected with fuperstitious notions and ceremonies. It generally falls to the lot of the old women, who will suffer no creature to touch any thing belonging to it, but those whom they employ as affistants, nor even to go into that part of the house where the operation is carrying on. Mr. Banks happened to spoil a large quantity of it only by inadvertently touching a leaf which lay upon it. The old woman, who then presided over these mysteries, told him, that the process would fail; and immediately uncovered the hole in a sit of vexation and despair. Mr. Banks regretted the mischief he had done, but was somewhat consoled by the opportunity which it gave him of examining the preparation, which perhaps, but for such an accident, would never have offered.

Such is their food, to which falt-water is the universal fauce, no meal being eaten without it: those who live near the fea have it fetched as it is wanted; those who live at fome diffance keep it in large bamboos, which are fet up in their houses, for use. Salt-water, however, is not their only fauce; they make another of the kernels of cocoa-nuts, which being fermented till they diffolve into a paste somewhat refembling butter, are beaten up with falt-water. The flavour of this is very strong, and was, when we first tasted it, exceedingly naufeous; a little ufe, however, reconciled fome of us to it fo much, that they preferred it to our own fauces, especially with fish. The natives seemed to consider it as a dainty, and do not use it at their common meals; posfibly, because they think it ill management to use cocoa-nuts fo lavishly, or perhaps, when we were at the island, they were fcarcely ripe enough for the purpose.

For drink, they have in general nothing but water, or the juice of the cocoa-nut; the art of producing liquors that in-

toxicate,

toxicate, by fermentation, being happily unknown among them; neither have they any narcotic which they chew, as the natives of fome other countries do opium, beetle-root, and tobacco. Some of them drank freely of our liquors, and in a few inflances became very drunk; but the perfons to whom this happened were fo far from defiring to repeat the debauch, that they would never touch any of our liquors afterwards. We were however informed, that they became drunk by drinking a juice that is expressed from the leaves of a plant which they call Ava Ava. This plant was not in feafon when we were there, fo that we faw no inflances of its effects; and as they confidered drunkenness as a difgrace, they probably would have concealed from us any inflances which might have happened during our stay. This vice is almost peculiar to the Chiefs, and confiderable persons, who vie with each other in drinking the greatest number of draughts, each draught being about a pint. They keep this intoxicating juice with great care from their women.

Table they have none; but their apparatus for eating is fet out with great neatness, though the articles are too simple and too few to allow any thing for show: and they commonly eat alone; but when a stranger happens to visit them, he sometimes makes a second in their mess. Of the meal of one of their principal people I shall give a particular description.

He fits down under the shade of the next tree, or on the shady side of his house, and a large quantity of leaves, either of the bread-fruit or banana, are neatly spread before him upon the ground as a table-cloth; a basket is then set by him that contains his provision, which, if sish or slesh, is ready dressed, and wrapped up in leaves, and two cocoa-nut shells, one full of salt water and the other of sress: his attendants, which are not few, seat themselves round him, and when all is ready, he begins by washing his hands and his mouth thoroughly

thoroughly with the fresh-water, and this he repeats almost continually throughout the whole meal; he then takes part of his provision out of the basket, which generally consists of a finall fish or two, two or three bread-fruits, fourteen or fifteen ripe bananas, or fix or feven apples: he first takes half a bread-fruit, peels off the rind, and takes out the core with his nails; of this he puts as much into his mouth as it can hold, and while he chews it, takes the fifh out of the leaves, and breaks one of them into the falt water, placing the other, and what remains of the bread-fruit, upon the leaves that have been fpread before him. When this is done. he takes up a finall piece of the fish that has been broken into the falt-water, with all the fingers of one hand, and fucks it into his mouth, fo as to get with it as much of the falt-water as possible: in the same manner he takes the rest by different morfels, and between each, at least very frequently, takes a fmall fup of the falt-water, either out of the cocoa-nut shell, or the palm of his hand: in the mean time one of his attendants has prepared a young cocoa-nut. by peeling off the outer rind with his teeth, an operation which to an European appears very furprifing; but it depends fo much upon flight, that many of us were able to do it before we left the island, and some that could scarcely crack a filbert: the mafter, when he chuses to drink, takes the cocoa-nut thus prepared, and boring a hole through the shell with his finger, or breaking it with a stone, he sucks out the liquor. When he has eaten his bread-fruit and fish. he begins with his plantains, one of which makes but a mouthful, though it be as big as a black-pudding; if inflead of plantains he has apples, he never taftes them till they have been pared; to do this a shell is picked up from the ground, where they are always-in plenty, and toffed to . him by an attendant: he immediately begins to cut or fcrape

off the rind, but so awkwardly that great part of the fruir is wasted. If, instead of fish, he has slesh, he must have some fuccedaneum for a knife to divide it; and for this purpose a piece of bamboo is toffed to him, of which he makes the neceffary implement by fplitting it transversely with his nail. While all this has been doing, fome of his attendants have been employed in bearing bread-fruit with a stone pestle upon a block of wood; by being beaten in this manner, and fprinkled from time to time with water, it is reduced to the confistence of a foft paste, and is then put into a vessel somewhat like a butcher's tray, and either made up alone, or mixed with banana or mahie, according to the tafte of the mafter, by pouring water upon it by degrees and fqueezing it often through the hand: under this operation it acquiresthe confistence of a thick custard, and a large cocoa-nut shellfull of it being fet before him, he fips it as we should do a jelly if we had no spoon to take it from the glass: the meal is then finished by again washing his hands and his mouth. After which the cocoa-nut shells are cleaned, and every thing that is left is replaced in the bafket.

The quantity of food which these people eat at a meal is prodigious: I have seen one man devour two or three sishes as big as a perch; three bread-fruits, each bigger than two sists; fourteen or sisteen plantains or bananas, each of them six or seven inches long, and sour or sive round; and near a quart of the pounded bread-fruit, which is as substantial as the thickest unbaked custard. This is so extraordinary that I scarcely expect to be believed; and I would not have related it upon my own single testimony, but Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and most of the other Gentlemen, have had ocular demonstration of its truth, and know that I mention them upon the occasion.

202

It is very wonderful, that these people, who are remarkably fond of fociety, and particularly that of their women, should exclude its pleasures from the table, where among all other nations, whether civil or favage, they have been principally enjoyed. How a meal, which every where elfe brings families and friends together, came to feparate them here, we often enquired, but could never learn. They eat alone, they faid, because it was right; but why it was right to eat alone, they never attempted to tell us: fuch, however, was the force of habit, that they expressed the strongest dislike, and even difgust, at our eating in society, especially with our women, and of the fame victuals. At first, we thought this strange singularity arose from some superstitious opinion; but they constantly affirmed the contrary. We observed also some caprices in the custom, for which we could as little account as for the custom itself. We could -never prevail with any of the women to partake of the victuals at our table when we were dining in company; yet they would go, five or fix together, into the fervants apartments, and there eat very heartily of whatever they could find, of which I have before given a particular inflance; nor were they in the least disconcerted if we came in while they were doing it. When any of us have been alone with a woman, she has sometimes eaten in our company; but then fhe has expressed the greatest unwillingness that it should be known, and always extorted the ftrongest promises of secrecy.

Among themselves, even two brothers and two sisters have each their separate baskets, with provision and the apparatus of their meal. When they first visited us at our tents, each brought his basket with him; and when we sat down to table, they would go out, sit down upon the ground, at two or three yards distance from each other, and turning their

faces different ways, take their repast without interchanging a fingle word.

The women not only abstain from eating with the men, and of the same victuals, but even have their victuals separately prepared by boys kept for that purpose, who deposit it in a separate shed, and attend them with it at their meals.

But though they would not eat with us or with each other, they have often asked us to eat with them, when we have visited those with whom we were particularly acquainted at their houses; and we have often upon such occasions eaten out of the same basket, and drunk out of the same cup. The elder women, however, always appeared to be offended at this liberty; and if we happened to touch their victuals, or even the basket that contained it, would throw it away.

Domestic life, and amusements. After meals, and in the heat of the day, the middle-aged people of the better fort generally fleep; they are indeed extremely indolent, and fleeping and eating is almost all that they do. Those that are older are less drowzy, and the boys and girls are kept awake by the natural activity and sprightliness of their age.

Their amusements have occasionally been mentioned in my account of the incidents that happened during our residence in this island, particularly music, dancing, wrestling, and shooting with the bow; they also sometimes vie with each other in throwing a lance. As shooting is not at a mark, but for distance; throwing the lance is not for distance, but at a mark: the weapon is about nine feet long, the mark is the bole of a plantain, and the distance about twenty yards.

Their only musical instruments are flutes and drums; the flutes are made of a hollow bamboo about a foot long, and, as has been observed before, have only two stops, and confequently but four notes, out of which they feem hitherto to

have formed but one tune; to these stops they apply the fore singer of the left hand and the middle singer of the right.

The drum is made of a hollow block of wood, of a cylindrical form, folid at one end, and covered at the other with shark's skin: these they beat not with sticks, but their hands; and they know how to tune two drums of different notes into concord. They have also an expedient to bring the slutes that play together into unison, which is to roll up a leaf so as to slip over the end of the shortest, like our sliding tubes for telescopes, which they move up or down till the purpose is answered, of which they seem to judge by their ear with great nicety.

To these instruments they sing; and, as I have observed before, their songs are often extempore: they call every two verses or couplet a song, Pehay; they are generally, though not always in rhime; and when pronounced by the natives, we could discover that they were metre. Mr. Banks took great pains to write down some of them which were made upon our arrival, as nearly as he could express their sounds by combinations of our letters; but when we read them, not having their accent, we could scarcely make them either metre or rhime. The Reader will easily perceive that they are of very different structure.

Tede pahai de parow-a. Ha maru no mina.

E pahah Tayo malama tai ya No Tabane tonatou whannomi ya:

E Turai eattu terara patee whennua toai. Ino o maio Pretane to whennuaia no Tute:

Of these verses our knowlege of the language is too imperfect to attempt a translation. They frequently amuse themselves by finging such couplets as these when they are alone, or with their families, especially after it is dark; for though they need no fires, they are not without the comfort of artificial light between funfet and bed-time. Their candles are made of the kernels of a kind of oily nut, which they flick one over another upon a skewer that is thrust through the middle of them; the upper one being lighted, burns down to the fecond, at the fame time confuming that part of the skewer which goes through it; the second taking fire burns in the fame manner down to the third, and fo of the reft: fome of these candles will burn a considerable time, and they give a very tolerable light. They do not often fit up above an hour after it is dark; but when they have ftrangers who fleep in the house, they generally keep a light burning all night, possibly as a check upon such of the women as they wish not to honour them with their favours.

Of their itinerary concerts I need add nothing to what has been faid already; especially as I shall have occasion, more particularly, to mention them when I relate our adventures upon another island.

In other countries, the girls and unmarried women are fupposed to be wholly ignorant of what others upon some occasions may appear to know; and their conduct and conversation are consequently restrained within narrower bounds, and kept at a more remote distance from whatever relates to a connection with the other sex: but here, it is just contrary. Among other diversions, there is a dance, called *Timorodee*, which is performed by young girls, whenever eight or ten of them can be collected together, consisting of motions and gestures beyond imagination wanton, in the practice of which

1769 ..

they are brought up from their earliest childhood, accompanied by words, which, if it were possible, would more explicitly convey the same ideas. In these dances they keep time with an exactness which is scarcely excelled by the best performers upon the stages of Europe. But the practice which is allowed to the virgin, is prohibited to the woman from the moment that she has put these hopeful lessons in practice, and realized the symbols of the dance:

It cannot be supposed that, among these people, chastity is held in much estimation. It might be expected that sisters and daughters would be offered to strangers, either as a courtesy, or for reward; and that breaches of conjugal sidelity, evenin the wise, should not be otherwise punished than by a few hard words, or perhaps a slight beating, as indeed is the case: but there is a scale in dissolute sensuality, which these people have ascended, wholly unknown to every other nation whose manners have been recorded from the beginning of the world to the present hour, and which no imagination could possibly conceive:

A very confiderable number of the principal people of Otaheite, of both fexes, have formed themselves into a society, in which every woman is common to every man; thus securing a perpetual variety as often as their inclination prompts them to seek it, which is so frequent, that the same man and woman seldom cohabit together more than two or three days.

These societies are distinguished by the name of Arreoy; and the members have meetings, at which no other is present, where the men amuse themselves by wrestling, and the women, notwithstanding their occasional connection with different men, dance the Timorodee in all its latitude, as an incitement to desires which it is said are frequently gratified

upon the fpot. This however is comparatively nothing. If any of the women happen to be with child, which in this manner of life happens less frequently than if they were to cohabit only with one man, the poor infant is fmothered the moment it is born, that it may be no incumbrance to the father, nor interrupt the mother in the pleasures of her diabolical profitution. It fometimes indeed happens, that the passion which prompts a woman to enter into this society, is furmounted when the becomes a mother, by that inftinctive affection which Nature has given to all creatures for the prefervation of their offspring; but even in this cafe, she is not permitted to spare the life of her infant, except she can find a man who will patronife it as his child: if this can be done, the murder is prevented; but both the man and woman, being deemed by this act to have appropriated each other, are ejected from the community, and forfeit all claim to the privileges and pleafures of Arreoy for the future; the woman from that time being diffinguished by the term Whannownow, "bearer of children," which is here a term of reproach; though none can be more honourable in the estimation of wifdom and humanity, of right reason, and every passion that distinguishes the man from the brute.

It is not fit that a practice fo horrid and fo strange should be imputed to human beings upon slight evidence, but I have such as abundantly justifies me in the account I have given. The people themselves are so far from concealing their connection with such a society as a disgrace, that they boast of it as a privilege; and both myself and Mr. Banks, when particular persons have been pointed out to us as members of the Arreoy, have questioned them about it, and received the account that has been here given from their own lips. They have acknowledged, that they had long been of

this accurred fociety, that they belonged to it at that time, and that feveral of their children had been put to death.

1769.

But I must not conclude my account of the domestic life of these people without mentioning their personal cleanliness. If that which leffens the good of life and increases the evil is vice, furely cleanliness is a virtue: the want of it tends to destroy both beauty and health, and mingles difgust with our best pleasures. The natives of Otaheite, both men and women, constantly wash their whole bodies in running water three times every day; once as foon as they rife in the morning, once at noon, and again before they fleep at night, whether the fea or river is near them or at a distance. I have already observed, that they wash not only the mouth, but the hands at their meals, almost between every morsel; and their clothes, as well as their persons, are kept without spot or stain; fo that in a large company of these people, nothing is fuffered but heat, which, perhaps, is more than can be faid of the politest assembly in Europe.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of the Manufactures, Boats, and Navigation of Otaheite.

F necessity is the mother of invention, it cannot be fup-A posed to have been much exerted where the liberality of Nature has rendered the diligence of Art almost superfluous; yet there are many inflances both of ingenuity and labour among these people, which, considering the want of metal for tools, do honour to both.

Manufactures.

Their principal manufacture is their cloth, in the making and dying of which I think there are fome particulars which may instruct even the artificers of Great Britain, and for that reason my description will be more minute.

Their cloth is of three kinds; and it is made of the bark of three different trees, the Chinese paper mulberry, the bread-fruit tree, and the tree which refembles the wild figtree of the West Indies.

The finest and whitest is made of the paper mulberry, Aouta; this is worn chiefly by the principal people, and when it is dyed red takes a better colour. A fecond fort, inferior in whiteness and foftness, is made of the bread-fruit tree, Ogroo, and worn chiefly by the inferior people; and a third of the tree that refembles the fig, which is coarfe and harfh, and of the colour of the darkest brown paper: this, though it is less pleasing both to the eye and the touch, is the most valuable, because it resists water, which the other two forts will not. Of this, which is the most rare as well as the most useful,

useful, the greater part is perfumed, and worn by the Chiefs as a morning drefs.

1769.

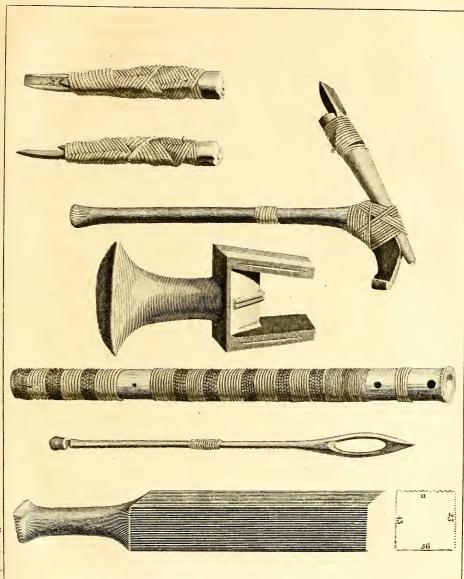
All these trees are propagated with great care, particularly the mulberry, which covers the largest part of the cultivated land, and is not fit for use after two or three year's growth, when it is about fix or eight feet high, and somewhat thicker than a man's thumb; its excellence is to be thin, strait, tall, and without branches: the lower leaves, therefore, are carefully plucked off, with their germs, as often as there is any appearance of their producing a branch.

But though the cloth made of these three trees is different, it is all manufactured in the fame manner; I shall, therefore, describe the process only in the fine fort, that is made of the mulberry. When the trees are of a proper fize, they are drawn up, and stripped of their branches, after which the roots and tops are cut off; the bark of these rods being then flit up longitudinally is eafily drawn off, and, when a proper quantity has been procured, it is carried down to fome running water, in which it is deposited to foak, and secured from floating away by heavy flones: when it is supposed to be fufficiently foftened, the women fervants go down to the brook, and stripping themselves, fit down in the water, to feparate the inner bark from the green part on the outfide; to do this they place the under fide upon a flat fmooth board, and with the shell which our dealers call Tyger's tongue, Tellina gargadia, scrape it very carefully, dipping it continually in the water till nothing remains but the fine fibres of the inner coat. Being thus prepared in the afternoon, they are spread out upon plantain leaves in the evening; and in this part of the work there appears to be fome difficulty, as the mistress of the family always superintends the doing

of it: they are placed in lengths of about eleven or twelve yards, one by the fide of another, till they are about a foot broad, and two or three layers are also laid one upon the other: care is taken that the cloth shall be in all parts of an equal thickness, so that if the bark happens to be thinner in any particular part of one layer than the rest, a piece that is somewhat thicker is picked out to be laid over it in the next. In this state it remains till the morning, when great part of the water which it contained when it was laid out, is either drained off or evaporated, and the several sibres adhere together, so as that the whole may be raised from the ground in one piece.

It is then taken away, and laid upon the smooth side of a long piece of wood, prepared for the purpose, and beaten by the women servants, with instruments about a foot long and three inches thick, made of a hard wood which they call Etoa. The shape of this instrument is not unlike a square razor strop, only that the handle is longer, and each of its four sides or faces is marked, lengthways, with small grooves, or furrows, of different degrees of sineness; those on one side being of a width and depth sufficient to receive a small packthread, and the others siner in a regular gradation, so that the last are not more than equal to sewing silk.

They beat it first with the coarsest side of this mallet, keeping time like our smiths; it spreads very fast under the strokes, chiefly however in the breadth, and the grooves in the mallet mark it with the appearance of threads; it is successively beaten with the other sides, last with the finest, and is then fit for use. Sometimes, however, it is made still thinner, by beating it with the finest side of the mallet, after it has been several times doubled: it is then called Hoboo, and is almost as thin as a muslin; it becomes very white by being



Become south



bleached in the air, but is made fill whiter and fofter by being washed and beaten again after it has been worn. 1769.

Of this cloth there are feveral forts, of different degrees of fineness, in proportion as it is more or less beaten without being doubled: the other cloth also differs in proportion as it is beaten; but they differ from each other in consequence of the different materials of which they are made. The bark of the bread-fruit is not taken till the trees are considerably longer and thicker than those of the fig; the process afterwards is the same.

When cloth is to be washed after it has been worn, it is taken down to the brook, and left to foak, being kept fast to the bottom, as at first, by a stone; it is then gently wrung or fqueezed; and fometimes feveral pieces of it are laid one upon another, and beaten together with the coarfest side of the mallet, and they are then equal in thickness to broadcloth, and much more foft and agreeable to the touch, after they have been a little while in ufe, though, when they come immediately from the mallet, they feel as if they had been flarched. This cloth fometimes breaks in the beating, but is eafily repaired by pasting on a patch with a gluten that is prepared from the root of the Pea, which is done fo nicely that it cannot be discovered. The women also employ themfelves in removing blemishes of every kind, as our ladies do in needle-work or knotting; fometimes when their work is intended to be very fine, they will paste an entire covering of hoboo over the whole. The principal excellencies of this cloth are its coolness and foftness; and its imperfections, its being pervious to water like paper, and almost as easily torn.

The colours with which they die this cloth are principally red and yellow. The red is exceedingly beautiful, and I may venture to fay, a brighter and more delicate colour than

any we have in Europe; that which approaches nearest is our full scarlet, and the best imitation which Mr. Banks's natural history painter could produce, was by a mixture of vermilion and carmine. The yellow is also a bright colour, but we have many as good.

The red colour is produced by the mixture of the juices of two vegetables, neither of which feparately has the leaft tendency to that hue. One is a species of fig, called here *Matte*, and the other the *Cordia Sebestina*, or *Etou*; of the fig the fruit is used, and of the *Cordia* the leaves.

The fruit of the fig is about as big as a rounceval pea, or very fmall goofeberry; and each of them, upon breaking off the stalk very close, produces one drop of a milky liquor, refembling the juice of our figs, of which the tree is indeed a species. This liquor the women collect into a small quantity of cocoa-nut water: to prepare a gill of cocoa-nut water will require between three and four quarts of these little figs. When a fufficient quantity is prepared, the leaves of the Etou are well wetted in it, and then laid upon a plantain leaf, where they are turned about till they become more and more flaccid, and then they are gently fqueezed, gradually increafing the preffure, but so as not to break them; as the flaccidity increases, and they become spungy, they are supplied with more of the liquor; in about five minutes the colour begins to appear upon the veins of the leaves, and in about ten or a little more, they are perfectly faturated with it: they are then fqueezed, with as much force as can be applied, and the liquor strained at the same time that it is expreffed.

For this purpose, the boys prepare a large quantity of the Moo, by drawing it between their teeth, or two little slicks, till it is freed from the green bark and the branny substance

that lies under it, and a thin web of the fibres only remains; in this the leaves of the Etou are inveloped, and through these the juice which they contain is strained as it is forced out. As the leaves are not succulent, little more juice is pressed out of them than they have imbibed: when they have been once emptied, they are filled again, and again pressed till the quality which tinctures the liquor as it passes through them is exhausted, they are then thrown away; but the Moo, being deeply stained with the colour, is preserved, as a brush to lay the dye upon the cloth.

The expressed liquor is always received into small cups made of the plantain leaf, whether from a notion that it has any quality favourable to the colour, or from the facility with which it is procured, and the convenience of small vesfels to distribute it among the artificers, I do not know.

Of the thin cloth they feldom dye more than the edges, but the thick cloth is coloured through the whole furface; the liquor is indeed used rather as a pigment than a dye, for a coat of it is laid upon one side only, with the sibres of the Moo; and though I have seen of the thin cloth that has appeared to have been soaked in the liquor, the colour has not had the same richness and lustre, as when it has been applied in the other manner.

Though the leaf of the Etou is generally used in this process, and probably produces the finest colour; yet the juice of the figs will produce a red by a mixture with the species of Tournesortia, which they call Taheinoo, the Pohuc, the Eurhe or Convolvulus Brasiliensis, and a species of Solanum called Ebooa; from the use of these different plants, or from different proportions of the materials, many varieties are obobservable in the colours of their cloth, some of which are conspicuously superior to others.

The beauty, however, of the best is not permanent; but it is probable that some method might be found to fix it, if proper experiments were made, and perhaps to search for latent qualities, which may be brought out by the mixture of one vegetable juice with another, would not be an unprositable employment: our present most valuable dyes afford sufficient encouragement to the attempt; for by the mere inspection of indico, woad, dyer's weed, and most of the leaves which are used for the like purposes, the colours which they yield could never be discovered. Of this Indian red I shall only add, that the women who have been employed in preparing or using it, carefully preserve the colour upon their singers and nails, where it appears in its utmost beauty, as a great ornament.

The yellow is made of the bark of the root of the Morinda citrifolia, called Nono, by fcraping and infufing it in water; after flanding fome time, the water is flrained and used as a dye, the cloth being dipped into it. The Morinda, of which this is a species, seems to be a good subject for examination with a view to dyeing. Brown, in his history of Jamaica, mentions three species of it, which he says are used to dye brown; and Rumphius says of the Bancuda Augustifolia, which is nearly allied to our Nono, that it is used by the inhabitants of the East-Indian islands, as a fixing drug for red colours, with which it particularly agrees.

The inhabitants of this island also dye yellow with the fruit of the Tamanu; but how the colour is extracted, we had no opportunity to discover. They have also a preparation with which they die brown and black; but these colours are so indifferent, that the method of preparing them did not excite our curiosity.

Another confiderable manufacture is matting of various kinds; fome of which is finer, and better in every respect, than any we have in Europe: the coarfer fort ferves them to fleep upon, and the finer to wear in wet weather. With the fine, of which there are also two forts, much pains is taken, especially with that made of the bark of the Poerou, the Hibiscus tiliaceus of Linnaus, some of which is as sine as a coarfe cloth: the other fort, which is still more beautiful, they call Vanne; it is white, gloffy, and flining, and is made of the leaves of their Wharrou, a species of the Pandanus, of which we had no opportunity to fee either the flowers or fruit: they have other matts, or as they call them Moeas, to fit or to fleep upon, which are formed of a great variety of rushes and grafs, and which they make, as they do every thing elfe that is plaited, with amazing facility and difpatch.

They are also very dexterous in making basket and wickerwork; their baskets are of a thousand different patterns, many of them exceedingly neat; and the making them is an art that every one practises, both men and women: they make occasional baskets and panniers of the cocoa-nut least in a few minutes, and the women who visited us early in a morning used to send, as soon as the sun was high, for a few of the leaves, of which they made little bonnets to shade their faces, at so small an expence of time and trouble, that, when the sun was again low in the evening, they used to throw them away. These bonnets, however, did not cover the head, but consisted only of a band that went round it, and a shade that projected from the forehead.

Of the bark of the Poerou they make ropes and lines, from the thickness of an inch to the fize of a small packthread:

You. II. Ff

with these they make nets for fishing: of the sibres of the cocoa-nut they make thread, for fastening together the several parts of their canoes, and belts, either round or flat, twisted or plaited; and of the bark of the Erowa, a kind of nettle which grows in the mountains, and is therefore rather scarce, they make the best sishing lines in the world: with these they hold the strongest and most active sish, such as Bonetas and Albicores, which would snap our strongest silk lines in a minute, though they are twice as thick.

They make also a kind of seine, of a coarse broad grass, the blades of which are like flags: these they twist and tie together in a loose manner, till the net, which is about as wide as a large sack, is from sixty to eighty fathom long: this they haul in shoal smooth water, and its own weight keeps it so close to the ground that scarcely a single sish can escape.

In every expedient, indeed, for taking fish, they are exceedingly ingenious; they make harpoons of cane, and point them with hard wood, which in their hands strike fish more effectually, than those which are headed with iron can do in ours, setting aside the advantage of ours being fastened to a line, so that the fish is secured if the hook takes place, though it does not mortally wound him.

Of fish-hooks they have two forts, admirably adapted in their construction as well to the purpose they are to answer, as to the materials of which they are made. One of these, which they call Wittee Wittee, is used for towing. The shank is made of mother of pearl, the most glossy that can be got: the inside, which is naturally the brightest, is put behind. To these hooks a tust of white dog's or hog's hair is fixed, so as somewhat to resemble the tail of a sish; these implements, there-

fore,

fore, are both hook and bait, and are used with a rod of bamboo, and line of Erowa. The fifther, to fecure his fuccefs, watches the flight of the birds which conflantly attend the Bonetas when they fwim in shoals, by which he directs his canoe, and when he has the advantage of these guides, he feldom returns without a prize.

The other kind of hook is also made of mother of pearl, or fome other hard shell: they cannot make them bearded like our hooks; but to effect the same purpose, they make the point turn inwards. These are made of all sizes, and used to catch various kinds of fish, with great success. The manner of making them is very fimple, and every fiftherman is his own artificer: the shell is first cut into square pieces, by the edge of another shell, and wrought into a form correfponding with the outline of the hook by pieces of coral. which are fufficiently rough to perform the office of a file: a hole is then bored in the middle, the drill being no other than the first stone they pick up that has a sharp corner: this they fix into the end of a piece of bamboo, and turn it between the hands like a chocolate mill; when the shell is perforated, and the hole fufficiently wide, a fmall file of coral is introduced, by the application of which the hook is in a short time completed, few costing the artificer more time than a quarter of an hour.

Of their masonry, carving, and architecture, the Reader has already formed fome idea from the account that has been given of the Morais, or repolitories of the dead: the other most important article of building and carving is their boats; Boats. and perhaps, to fabricate one of their principal veffels with their tools, is as great a work, as to build a British man of war with ours.

They have an adze of flone; a chiffel, or gouge, of bone, generally that of a man's arm between the wrift and elbow; a rafp of coral; and the skin of a sling-ray, with coral sand, as a file or polisher.

This is a complete catalogue of their tools, and with these they build houses, construct canoes, hew stone, and fell, cleave, carve, and polish timber.

The flone which makes the blade of their adzes is a kind of Bafaltes, of a blackish or grey colour, not very hard, but of confiderable toughness: they are formed of different fizes; some, that are intended for felling, weigh from fix to eight pounds; others, that are used for carving, not more than so many ounces; but it is necessary to sharpen both almost every minute; for which purpose, a stone and a cocoa-nut shell full of water are always at hand.

Their greatest exploit, to which these tools are less equal than to any other, is felling a tree: this requires many hands, and the constant labour of several days. When it is down, they split it, with the grain, into planks from three to four inches thick, the whole length and breadth of the tree, many of which are eight feet in the girt, and forty to the branches, and nearly of the same thickness throughout. The tree generally used is in their language called Avie, the stem of which is tall and strait; though some of the smaller boats are made of the bread-fruit tree, which is a light spongy wood, and easily wrought. They smooth the plank very expeditiously and dexterously with their adzes, and can take off a thin coat from a whole plank without missing a stroke. As they have not the art of warping a plank, every part of the canoe, whether hollow or flat, is shaped by hand.

176a.

The canoes, or boats, which are used by the inhabitants of this and the neighbouring islands, may be divided into two general classes; one of which they call *Ivahahs*, the other *Pahies*.

The Ivahah is used for short excursions to sea, and is wallfided and flat-bottomed; the Pahie for longer voyages, and is bow-fided and fharp-bottomed. The Ivahahs are all of the fame figure, but of different fizes, and used for different purposes: their length is from seventy-two feet to ten, but the breadth is by no means in proportion; for those of ten feet are about a foot wide, and those of more than seventy are fearcely two. There is the fighting Ivahah, the fifhing Ivahah, and the travelling Ivahah; for some of these go from one island to another. The fighting Ivahah is by far the longest, and the head and stern are considerably raised above the body, in a femicircular form; particularly the stern, which is fometimes feventeen or eighteen feet high, though the boat itself is scarcely three. These never go to sea single; but are fastened together, side by side, at the distance of about three feet, by firong poles of wood, which are laid across them and lashed to the gunwales. Upon these, in the forepart, a stage or platform is raised, about ten or twelve feet long, and fomewhat wider than the boats, which is supported by pillars about fix feet high: upon this stage stand the fighting men, whose missile weapons are slings and spears; for, among other fingularities in the manners of these people, their bows and arrows are used only for diversion, as we throw quoits: below these stages sit the rowers, who receive from them those that are wounded, and furnish fresh men to afcend in their room. Some of these have a platform of bamboos or other light wood, through their whole length, and confiderably broader, by means of which they will carry

a great number of men; but we faw only one fitted in this

The fishing Ivahahs vary in length from about forty feet to the smallest fize, which is about ten; all that are of the length of twenty-five feet and upwards, of whatever fort, occasionally carry fail. The travelling Ivahah is always double, and furnished with a small neat house about five or six feet broad, and six or seven feet long, which is fastened upon the fore-part for the convenience of the principal people, who sit in them by day, and sleep in them at night. The sishing Ivahahs are sometimes joined together, and have a house on board; but this is not common.

Those which are shorter than five and twenty feet, feldom or never carry fail; and, though the stern rises about four or five feet, have a flat head, and a board that projects forward about four feet.

The Pahie is also of different sizes, from fixty to thirty feet long; but, like the Ivahah, is very narrow. One that I meafured was fifty-one feet long, and only one foot and a half wide at the top. In the widest part, it was about three feet; and this is the general proportion. It does not, however, widen by a gradual fwell; but the fides being strait, and parallel, for a little way below the gunwale, it fwells abruptly, and draws to a ridge at the bottom; fo that a transverse section of it has fomewhat the appearance of the mark upon cards called a Spade, the whole being much wider in proportion to its length. These, like the largest Ivahahs, are used for fighting; but principally for long voyages. The fighting Pahie, which is the largest, is fitted with the stage or platform, which is proportionably larger than those of the Ivahah, as their form enables them to fustain a much greater weight. Those that are used for failing are generally double; and the middle

fize are faid to be the best sea-boats. They are sometimes out a month together, going from island to island; and sometimes, as we were credibly informed, they are a fortnight or twenty days at sea, and could keep it longer if they had more stowage for provisions, and conveniencies to hold fresh water.

When any of these boats carry sail single, they make use of a log of wood which is fastened to the end of two poles that lie cross the vessel, and project from six to ten seet, according to the size of the vessel, beyond its side, somewhat like what is used by the slying Proa of the Ladrone Islands, and called in the Account of Lord Anson's Voyage, an Outrigger. To this outrigger the shrouds are fastened, and it is essentially necessary in trimming the boat when it blows fresh.

Some of them have one mast, and some two; they are made of a fingle flick, and when the length of the canoe is thirty feet, that of the mast is somewhat less than five and twenty; it is fixed to a frame that is above the canoe, and receives a fail of matting about one third longer than itself: the fail is pointed at the top, fquare at the bottom, and curved at the fide; fomewhat refembling what we call a shoulder of mutton fail, and use for boats belonging to men of war: it is placed in a frame of wood, which furrounds it on: every fide, and has no contrivance either for reefing or furling; fo that, if either should become necessary, it must be cut away, which, however, in these equal climates can seldom happen. At the top of the mast are fastened ornaments of feathers, which are placed inclining obliquely forwards; the fhape and position of which will be conceived at once from the figure, in one of the cuts.

The oars or paddles that are used with these boats, have a long handle and a flat blade, not unlike a baker's peel. Of these every person in the boat has one, except those that sit under the awning; and they push her forward with them at a good rate. These boats, however, admit so much water at the seams, that one person at least is continually employed in throwing it out. The only thing in which they excel is landing, and putting off from the shore in a surf: by their great length and high sterns they land dry, when our boats could scarcely land at all; and have the same advantages in putting off by the height of the head.

The Ivahahs are the only boats that are used by the inhabitants of Otaheite; but we saw several Pahies that came from other islands. Of one of these I shall give the exact dimensions from a careful admeasurement, and then particularly describe the manner in which they are built.

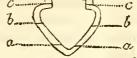
T 1 1 C 0	0				Feet.	Inches.	
Extreme length from slem to slern, not reckoning							
the bending up of eith		-	-	-	5 I	0	
Breadth in the clear of the	e top for	rward	-	-	1	2	
Breadth in the midships	-	-	-	-	I	6	
Breadth aft -	-	•	a	-	I	3	
In the bilge forward		-		-	2	8	
In the midships -	•	•	-	-	2	11	
Aft		-		-	2	9	
Depth in the midships	-	-		-	3	4	
Height from the ground	on whic	th fhe fto	bod		3	6	
Height of her head from the ground, without the							
figure	-	-	-	-	4	4	
Height of the figure	-	-	-	-	0	11	
Height of the stern from	the gro	und	-	-	8	9	
Height of the figure	2	ESA Led	=	-	2	0	

4

To

To illustrate my description of the manner in which these vessels are built, it will be necessary

to refer to the figure; in which a a is the first feam, bb the second, and cc the third.



The first stage or keel, under aa, is made of a tree hollowed out like a trough; for which the longest trees are chosen that can be got, so that there are never more than three in the whole length: the next stage, under bb, is formed of strait plank, about four feet long, sifteen inches broad, and two inches thick: the third stage, under cc, is, like the bottom made of trunks, hollowed into its bilging form; the last is also cut out of trunks, so that the moulding is of one piece with the upright. To form these parts separately, without saw, plane, chissel, or any other iron tool, may well be thought no easy task; but the great difficulty is to join them together.

When all the parts are prepared, the keel is laid upon blocks, and the planks being supported by stanchions, are sewed or clamped together with strong thongs of plaiting, which are passed several times through holes that are bored with a gouge or auger of bone, that has been described already; and the nicety with which this is done, may be inferred from their being sufficiently water-tight for use without caulking. As the plaiting soon rots in the water, it is renewed at least once a-year; in order to which, the vessel is taken entirely to pieces. The head and stern are rude with respect to the design; but very neatly sinished, and polished to the highest degree.

These Pahies are kept with great care, in a kind of house built on purpose for their reception; the houses are formed of poles set upright in the ground, the tops of which Vol. II.

Gg are

are drawn towards each other, and fastened together with their strongest cord, so as to form a kind of Gothic arch, which is completely thatched quite to the ground, being open only at the ends; they are sometimes fifty or sixty paces long.

As connected with the navigation of these people, I shall mention their wonderful sagacity in foretelling the weather, at least the quarter from which the wind shall blow at a future time; they have several ways of doing this, of which however I know but one. They say, that the Milky-way is always curved laterally; but sometimes in one direction, and sometimes in another: and that this curvature is the effect of its being already acted upon by the wind, and its hollow part therefore towards it; so that, if the same curvature continues a night, a corresponding wind certainly blows the next day. Of their rules, I shall not pretend to judge; but I know that, by whatever means, they can predict the weather, at least the wind, with much greater certainty than we can.

In their longer voyages, they steer by the sun in the day, and in the night by the stars; all of which they distinguish separately by names, and know in what part of the heavens they will appear in any of the months during which they are visible in their horizon; they also know the time of their annual appearing and disappearing with more precision than will easily be believed by an European astronomer.

CHAP. XIX.

Of the Division of Time in Otaheite; Numeration, Computation of Distance, Language, Diseases, Disposal of the Dead, Religion, War, Weapons, and Government; with some general Observations for the Use of suture Navigators.

1769. Time.

E were not able to acquire a perfect idea of their method of dividing time; but observed, that in speaking of it, either past or to come, they never used any term but Malama, which signifies Moon. Of these moons they count thirteen, and then begin again; which is a demonstration that they have a notion of the solar year: but how they compute their months so that thirteen of them shall be commensurate with the year, we could not discover; for they say that each month has twenty-nine days, including one in which the moon is not visible. They have names for them separately, and have frequently told us the fruits that would be in season, and the weather that would prevail, in each of them; and they have indeed a name for them collectively, though they use it only when they speak of the mysteries of their religion.

Every day is fubdivided into twelve parts, each of two hours, of which fix belong to the day, and fix to the night. At these divisions they guess pretty nearly by the height of the fun while he is above the horizon; but there are few of them that can guess at them, when he is below it, by the stars.

Numbers.

In numeration they proceed from one to ten, the number of fingers on both hands; and though they have for each number a different name, they generally take hold of their fingers one by one, fhifting from one hand to the other till they come to the number they want to express. And in other instances, we observed that, when they were conversing with each other, they joined signs to their words, which were so expressive that a stranger might easily apprehend their meaning.

In counting from ten they repeat the name of that number, and add the word more; ten, and one more, is eleven; ten, and two more, twelve; and fo of the reft, as we fay one and twenty, two and twenty. When they come to ten and ten more, they have a new denomination, as we fay a fcore; and by these scores they count till they get ten of them, when they have a denomination for two hundred; and we never could discover that they had any denomination to express a greater number: neither, indeed, do they seem to want any; for ten of these amount to two thousand, a greater number than they can ever apply.

In measuring distance they are much more deficient than in computing numbers, having but one term which answers to fathom; when they speak of distances from place to place, they express it, like the Asiatics, by the time that is required to pass it.

Language.

Their language is foft and melodious; it abounds with vowels, and we eafily learnt to pronounce it: but found it exceedingly difficult to teach them to pronounce a fingle word of ours; probably not only from its abounding in confonants, but from fome peculiarity in its structure; for Spanish and Italian words, if ending in a vowel, they pronounced with great facility.

Whether

Whether it is copious, we were not fufficiently acquainted with it to know; but it is certainly very imperfect, for it is almost totally without inflexion, both of nouns and verbs. Few of the nouns have more than one case, and few of the verbs more than one tense; yet we found no great difficulty in making ourselves mutually understood, however strange it may appear in speculation.

They have, however, certain affixa, which, though but few in number, are very useful to them, and puzzled us extremely. One asks another, Harre hea? "Where are you "going?" the other answers Ivakinera, "To my wives;" upon which the first repeating the answer interrogatively, "To your wives?" is answered, Ivakinereira; "Yes, I am going "to my wives." Here the suffixa era and eira save several words to both parties.

I have inferted a few of their words, from which perhaps fome idea may be formed of the language.

T.	, , ,		
Pupo,	the head.	Oporema,	the hand.
Ahewh,	the nose.	Manneow,	the fingers.
Roourou,	the hair.	Mieu,	the nails.
Outou,	the mouth.	Touhe,	the buttocks.
Niheo,	the teeth.	Hoouhah,	the thighs.
Arrero,	the tongue.	Avia,	the legs.
Meu-eumi,	the beard.	Tapoa,	the feet.
Tiarraboa,	the throat.	Booa,	a hog.
Tuamo,	the shoulders.	Moa,	a fowl.
Tuah,	the back.	Euree,	a dog.
Oama,	the breast.	Eure-eure,	iron.
Eu,	the nipples.	Ooroo,	bread-fruit.
Oboo,	the belly.	Hearee,	cocoa-nuts.
Rema _{>1}	the arm.	Mia,	bananas.
			Vaee,

	Vace,	wild plantains.	Eupca,	a net.
J	Poc,	beads.	-	the fun.
	Poe mataw			the moon.
	Ahou,	a garment.	•	a star.
	Avec,	a fruit like apples.	Whettu-euphe	
		another like chefnuts.	Erai,	the sky.
	Ewharre,	a house.	Eatta,	a cloud.
	Whennua,	a high island.	Miti,	good.
	Motu,	a low island.	Eno,	bad.
	Toto,	blood.	Α,	yes.
	Aeve,	bone.	Ima,	110.
	Aeo,	flesh.	Paree,	ugly.
	Mae,	fat.	Paroree,	bungry.
	Tuea,	lean.	Pia,	full.
	Huru-huru	hair.	Timahah,	heavy.
	Eraow,	a tree.	Mama,	light.
	Ama,	a branch.	Poto,	· Short.
	Tiale,	a flower.	Roa,	tall.
	Huero,	fruit.	Nehenne,	Sweet.
	Etummoo,	the stem.	Mala-mala,	bitter.
	Aaa,	the root.	Whanno,	to go far.
	Eiherre,	herbaceous plants.	Harre,	to go.
	Ooopa,	a pigeon.	Arrea,	to stay.
	Avigne,	a paroquet.	Enoho,	to remain.
	A-a,	another species.	Rohe rohe,	to be tired.
	Mannu,	a bird.	Maa,	to eat.
	Mora,	a duck.	Inoo,	to drink.
	Mattow,	a fish-hook.		to understand.
	Toura,	a rope.	Warrido,	to steal.
	Mow,	a Shark.		to be angry.
	Mahi-mahi	•	Teparahi,	to beat.
	Mattera,	a fishing-rod.		
				-

Among

Diseases.

Among people whose food is so simple, and who in general are feldom drunk, it is fcarcely necessary to fay, that there are but few diseases; we saw no critical disease during our stay upon the island, and but few instances of sickness, which were accidental fits of the colic. The natives, however, are afflicted with the eryfipelas, and cutaneous eruptions of the fealy kind, very nearly approaching to a leprofy. Those in whom this distemper was far advanced, lived in a flate of feclusion from all fociety, each in a small house built upon fome unfrequented fpot, where they were fupplied with provisions: but whether they had any hope of relief, or languished out the remainder of their lives in solitude and despair, we could not learn. We observed also a few who had ulcers upon different parts of their bodies, some of which had a very virulent appearance; yet they feemed not much to be regarded by those who were afflicted with them, for they were left intirely without application even to keep off the flies.

Where intemperance produces no diseases, there will be no physicians by profession; yet where there is sufferance, there will always be attempts to relieve; and where the cause of the mischief and the remedy are alike unknown, these will naturally be directed by superstition: thus it happens, that in this country, and in all others which are not further injured by luxury, or improved by knowlege, the management of the sick falls to the lot of the priest. The method of cure that is practised by the priess of Otaheite, consists chiefly of prayers and ceremonies. When he visits his patient he repeats certain sentences, which appear to be set forms contrived for the occasion, and at the same time plaits the leaves of the cocoa-nut into different sigures very neatly; some of these he fastens to the singers and toes of the sick,

and often leaves behind him a few branches of the thespecia populnea, which they call E'midho: these ceremonies are repeated till the patient recovers or dies. If he recovers, they say the remedies cured him, if he dies, they say the disease was incurable, in which perhaps they do not much differ from the custom of other countries.

If we had judged of their skill in furgery from the dreadful fears which we fometimes faw, we should have supposed it to be much superior to the art not only of their physicians, but of ours. We faw one man whose face was almost intirely destroyed, his nose, including the bone, was perfectly flat, and one cheek and one eye were fo beaten in, that the hollow would almost receive a man's fist, yet no ulcer remained; and our companion, Tupia, had been pierced quite through his body by a fpear headed with the bone of the fting-ray, the weapon having entered his back, and come out just under his breaft; but except in reducing diflocations and fractures, the best surgeon can contribute very little to the cure of a wound; the blood itself is the best vulnerary balfam, and when the juices of the body are pure, and the patient is temperate, nothing more is necessary as an aid to Nature in the cure of the worst wound, than the keeping it clean.

Their commerce with the inhabitants of Europe has, however, already entailed upon them that dreadful curse which avenged the inhumanities committed by the Spaniards in America, the venereal disease. As it is certain that no European vessel besides our own, except the Dolphin, and the two that were under the command of Mons. Bougainville, ever visited this island, it must have been brought either by one of them or by us. That it was not brought by the Dolphin, Captain Wallis has demonstrated in the account of her

voyage, [vol. I. p. 489, 490.] and nothing is more certain than that when we arrived it had made most dreadful ravages in the island. One of our people contracted it within five days after we went on shore, and by the enquiries among the natives, which this occasioned, we learnt, when we came to understand a little of their language, that it had been brought by the veffels which had been there about fifteen months before us, and had lain on the east side of the island. They distinguished it by a name of the fame import with rottenness, but of a more extensive fignification, and described, in the most pathetic terms, the fufferings of the first victims to its rage, and told us that it caused the hair and the nails to fall off, and the flesh to rot from the bones: that it spread a universal terror and consternation among them, fo that the fick were abandoned by their nearest relations, lest the calamity should fpread by contagion, and left to perish alone in such misery as till then had never been known among them. We had fome reason, however, to hope that they had found out a fpecific to cure it: during our flay upon the island we faw none in whom it had made a great progress, and one who went from us infected, returned after a short time in perfect health; and by this it appeared either that the disease had cured itself, or that they were not unacquainted with the virtues of fimples, nor implicit dupes to the fuperstitious follies of their priefts. We endeavoured to learn the medical qualities which they imputed to their plants, but our knowlege of their language was too imperfect for us to fucceed. If we could have learnt their specific for the venereal disease, if such they have, it would have been of great advantage to us, for when we left the island it had been contracted by more than half the people on board the thip.

It is impossible but that, in relating incidents, many particulars with respect to the customs, opinions, and works of Vol. II.

H h

these

Disposal of Dead.

therefore, I shall only supply deficiencies. Of the manner of disposing of their dead, much has been said already. I must more explicitly observe that there are two places in which the dead are deposited; one a kind of shed, where the sless suffered to putrefy; the other an enclosure, with erections of stone, where the bones are afterwards buried. The sheds are called Tupapow, and the enclosures Morai. The Morais are also places of worship.

As foon as a native of Otaheite is known to be dead, the house is filled with relations, who deplore their loss, some by loud lamentations, and fome by lefs clamorous, but more genuine expressions of grief. Those who are in the nearest degree of kindred, and are really affected by the event, are filent; the rest are one moment uttering passionate exclamations in a chorus, and the next laughing and talking without the least appearance of concern. In this manner the remainder of the day on which they affemble is spent, and all the fucceeding night. On the next morning the body is fhrouded in their cloth, and conveyed to the fea fide upon a bier, which the bearers support upon their shoulders, attended by the prieft, who having prayed over the body, repeats his fentences during the procession: when it arrives at the water's edge, it is fet down upon the beach; the priest renews his prayers, and taking up some of the water in his hands, fprinkles it towards the body, but not upon it. It is then carried back forty or fifty yards, and foon after brought again to the beach, where the prayers and fprinkling are repeated: it is thus removed backwards and forwards feveral times, and while these ceremonies have been performing a house has been built, and a small space of ground railed in. In the center of this house, or Tupapow, posts are set up to fupport the bier, which is at length conveyed thither, and placed



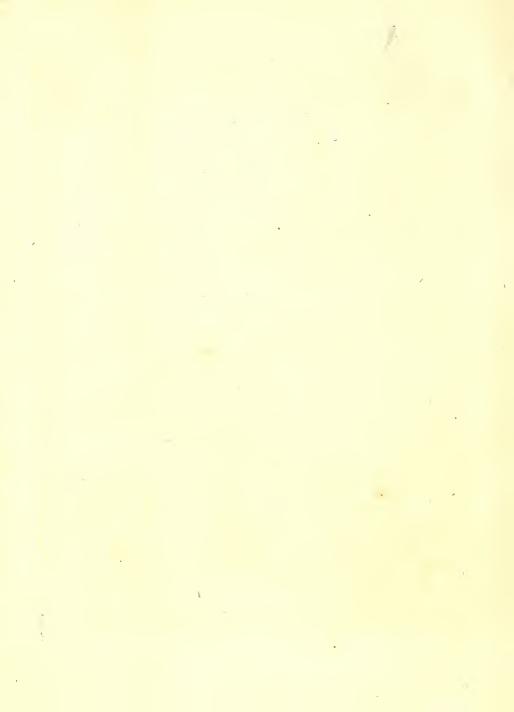
N $^\circ$ 5 .

Disposal of Dead.

therefore, I shall only supply deficiencies. Of the manner of disposing of their dead, much has been said already. I must more explicitly observe that there are two places in which the dead are deposited; one a kind of shed, where the slesh is suffered to putrefy; the other an enclosure, with erections of stone, where the bones are afterwards buried. The sheds are called Tupapow, and the enclosures Morai. The Morais are also places of worship.

As foon as a native of Otaheite is known to be dead, the house is filled with relations, who deplore their loss, some by loud lamentations, and fome by lefs clamorous, but more genuine expressions of grief. Those who are in the nearest degree of kindred, and are really affected by the event, are filent; the rest are one moment uttering passionate exclamations in a chorus, and the next laughing and talking without the least appearance of concern. In this manner the remainder of the day on which they affemble is spent, and all the fucceeding night. On the next morning the body is shrouded in their cloth, and conveyed to the fea fide upon a bier, which the bearers support upon their shoulders, attended by the prieft, who having prayed over the body, repeats his fentences during the procession: when it arrives at the water's edge, it is fet down upon the beach; the priest renews his prayers, and taking up some of the water in his hands, sprinkles it towards the body, but not upon it. It is then carried back forty or fifty yards, and foon after brought again to the beach, where the prayers and fprinkling are repeated: it is thus removed backwards and forwards feveral times, and while these ceremonies have been performing a house has been built, and a small space of ground railed in. In the center of this house, or Tupapow, posts are set up to fupport the bier, which is at length conveyed thither, and placed





placed upon it, and here the body remains to putrify till the flesh is wholly wasted from the bones.

1769.

These houses of corruption are of a fize proportioned to the rank of the person whose body they are to contain; those allotted to the lower class are just sufficient to cover the bier, and have no railing round them. The largest we ever saw was eleven yards long, and such as these are ornamented according to the abilities and inclination of the surviving kindred, who never sail to lay a prosusion of good cloth about the body, and sometimes almost cover the outside of the house. Garlands of the fruit of the palm-nut or pandanus, and cocoa leaves, twisted by the priests in mysterious knots, with a plant called by them Ethee no Morai, which is particularly consecrated to sunereal solemnities, are deposited about the place; provision and water are also left at a little distance, of which, and of other decorations, a more particular description has been given already.

As foon as the body is deposited in the Tupapow, the mourning is renewed. The women assemble, and are led to the door by the nearest relation, who strikes a shark's tooth several times into the crown of her head: the blood copiously follows, and is carefully received upon pieces of linen, which are thrown under the bier. The rest of the women follow this example, and the ceremony is repeated at the interval of two or three days, as long as the zeal and forrow of the parties hold out. The tears also which are shed upon these occasions, are received upon pieces of cloth, and offered as oblations to the dead: some of the younger people cut off their hair, and that is thrown under the bier with the other offerings. This custom is founded upon a notion that the foul of the deceased, which they believe to exist in a separate state, is hovering about the place where

1769:

the body is deposited: that it observes the actions of the furvivors, and is gratified by such testimonies of their affection and grief.

Two or three days after these ceremonies have been commenced by the women, during which the men feem to be wholly infensible of their loss, they also begin to perform their part. The nearest relations take it in turn to assume the drefs, and perform the office which have already been particularly described in the account of Tubourai Tamaide's having acted as chief mourner to an old woman, his relation, who died while we were in the island. One part of the ceremony, however, which accounts for the running away of the people as foon as this procession is in fight, has not been mentioned. The chief mourner carries in his hand a long flat flick, the edge of which is fet with fhark's teeth, and in a phrenzy, which his grief is supposed to have infpired, he runs at all he fees, and if any of them happen to be overtaken, he strikes them most unmercifully with this indented cudgel, which cannot fail to wound them in a dangerous manner.

These processions continue at certain intervals for five moons, but are less and less frequent, by a gradual diminution, as the end of that time approaches. When it is expired, what remains of the body is taken down from the bier, and the bones having been scraped and washed very clean, are buried, according to the rank of the person, either within or without a Morai: if the deceased was an Earee, or Chief, his skull is not buried with the rest of the bones, but is wrapped up in fine cloth, and put in a kind of box made for that purpose, which is also placed in the Morai. This coster is called Ewbarre no te Orometua, the house of a teacher or master. After this the mourning ceases, except some of

the women continue to be really afflicted for the lofs, and in that case they will sometimes suddenly wound themselves with the fhark's tooth wherever they happen to be: this perhaps will account for the passion of grief in which Terapo wounded herfelf at the fort; fome accidental circumstance might forcibly revive the remembrance of a friend or relation whom she had lost, with a pungency of regret and tenderness which forced a vent by tears, and prompted her toa repetition of the funereal rite.

The ceremonies, however, do not cease with the mourning: prayers are fill faid by the prieft, who is well paid by the furviving relations, and offerings made at the Morai-Some of the things, which from time to time are deposited there, are emblematical: a young plantain represents the deceafed, and the bunch of feathers the deity who is invoked. The priest places himself over-against the symbol of the God; accompanied by fome of the relations, who are furnished with a small offering, and repeats his oraison in a fet form, confifting of feparate fentences; at the fame time weaving the leaves of the cocoa-nut into different forms. which he afterwards deposits upon the ground where the bones have been interred; the deity is then addressed by a fhrill fcreech, which is used only upon that occasion. When the priest retires, the tuft of feathers is removed, and the provisions left to putrify, or be devoured by the rats.

Of the religion of these people, we were not able to ac- Religion, quire any clear and confistent knowlege: we found it like the religion of most other countries, involved in mystery, and perplexed with apparent inconfiftences. The religious language is also here, as it is in China, different from that which is used in common; fo that Tupia, who took great pains to instruct us, having no words to express his mean-

ing which we understood, gave us lectures to very little purpose: what we learnt, however, I will relate with as much perspicuity as I can.

Nothing is more obvious to a rational being, however ignorant or flupid, than that the universe and its various parts, as far as they fall under his notice, were produced by fome agent inconceivably more powerful than himfelf; and nothing is more difficult to be conceived, even by the most fagacious and knowing, than the production of them from nothing, which among us is expressed by the word Creation. It is natural therefore, as no Being apparently capable of producing the universe is to be seen, that he should be fupposed to reside in some distant part of it, or to be in his nature invisible, and that he should have originally produced all that now exists in a manner similar to that in which nature is renovated by the fuccession of one generation to another; but the idea of procreation includes in it that of two persons, and from the conjunction of two persons these people imagine every thing in the universe either originally or derivatively to proceed.

The Supreme Deity, one of these two sirst beings, they call Taroataihetoomoo, and the other, whom they suppose to have been a rock, Tepapa. A daughter of these was Tettowmatatayo, the year, or thirteen months collectively, which they never name but upon this occasion, and she, by the common father, produced the months, and the months, by conjunction with each other, the days: the stars they suppose partly to be the immediate offspring of the sirst pair, and partly to have increased among themselves; and they have the same notion with respect to the different species of plants. Among other progeny of Taroataihetoomoo and Tepapa, they suppose an inferior race of deities whom they call

EATUAS. Two of these Eatuas, they say, at some remote period of time, inhabited the earth, and were the parents of the first man. When this man, their common ancestor, was born, they say that he was round like a ball, but that his mother, with great care, drew out his limbs, and having at length moulded him into his present form, she called him Eothe, which signifies sinished. That being prompted by the universal instinct to propagate his kind, and being able to find no female but his mother, he begot upon her a daughter, and upon the daughter other daughters for several generations, before there was a son; a son, however, being at length born, he, by the assistance of his sisters, peopled the world.

Besides their daughter Tettow matatayo, the first progenitors of nature had a son whom they called Tane. Taroataihetoomoo, the Supreme Deity, they emphatically stile the causer of earthquakes; but their prayers are more generally addressed to Tane, whom they suppose to take a greater part in the affairs of mankind.

Their fubordinate deities or Eatuas, which are numerous, are of both fexes: the male are worshipped by the men, and the female by the women; and each have Morais to which the other fex is not admitted, though they have also Morais common to both. Men perform the office of priest to both fexes, but each fex has its priests, for those who officiate for one fex, do not officiate for the other.

They believe the immortality of the foul, at least its existence in a separate state, and that there are two situations of different degrees of happiness, somewhat analogous to our heaven and hell: the superior situation they call Tavirua Perai, the other Tiahoboo. They do not, however, consider them as places of reward and punishment,

but as receptacles for different classes; the first, for their Chiefs and principal people, the other for those of inferior rank, for they do not suppose that their actions here in the least influence their future state, or indeed that they come under the cognizance of their deities at all. Their religion, therefore, if it has no influence upon their morals, is at least difinterested; and their expressions of adoration and reverence, whether by words or actions, arife only from a humble sense of their own inferiority, and the inessable excellence of divine perfection.

> The character of the priest or Tahowa, is hereditary: the class is numerous, and consists of all ranks of people; the chief, however, is generally the younger brother of a good family, and is respected in a degree next to their kings. Of the little knowlege that is possessed in this country, the priefts have the greatest share; but it consists principally in an acquaintance with the names and ranks of the different Eatuas or fubordinate divinities, and the opinions concerning the origin of things, which have been traditionally preferved among the order in detached fentences, of which some will repeat an incredible number, though but very few of the words that are used in their common dialect occur in them.

> The priefts, however, are superior to the rest of the people in the knowlege of navigation and aftronomy, and indeed the name Tahowa fignifies nothing more than a man of knowlege. As there are priefts of every class, they officiate only among that class to which they belong: the priest of the inferior class is never called upon by those of superior rank, nor will the priest of the superior rank officiate for any of the inferior class.

> Marriage in this island, as appeared to us, is nothing more than an agreement between the man and woman, with which.

which the priest has no concern. Where it is contracted it appears to be pretty well kept, though sometimes the parties separate by mutual consent, and in that case a divorce takes place with as little trouble as the marriage.

But though the priesthood has laid the people under no tax for a nuptial benediction, there are two operations which it has appropriated, and from which it derives confiderable advantages. One is tattowing, and the other circumcifion, though neither of them have any connexion with religion. The tattowing has been described already. Circumcision has been adopted merely from motives of cleanliness; it cannot indeed properly be called circumcifion, because the prepuce is not mutilated by a circular wound, but only flit through the upper part to prevent its contracting over the glans. As neither of these can be performed by any but a priest, and as to be without either is the greatest difgrace, they may be considered as a claim to furplice fees like our marriages and christenings, which are cheerfully and liberally paid, not according to any fettled flipend, but the rank and abilities of the parties or their friends.

The Morai, as has already been observed, is at once a burying ground and a place of worship, and in this particular our churches too much resemble it. The Indian, however, approaches his Morai with a reverence and humility that disgraces the christian, not because he holds any thing facred that is there, but because he there worships an invisible divinity, for whom, though he neither hopes for reward, nor fears punishment, at his hand, he always expresses the profoundest homage and most humble adoration. I have already given a very particular description both of the Morais and the altars that are placed near them. When an Indian is

Vol. II.

Ιi

about

about to worship at the Morai, or brings his offering to the altar, he always uncovers his body to the waste, and his looks and attitude are such as sufficiently express a corresponding disposition of mind.

It did not appear to us that these people are, in any inflance, guilty of idolatry; at least they do not worship any thing that is the work of their hands, nor any visible part of the creation. This island indeed, and the rest that lie near it, have a particular bird, some a heron, and others a king's fisher, to which they pay a peculiar regard, and concerning which they have some superstitious notions with respect to good and bad fortune, as we have of the swallow and robin-red-breast, giving them the name of Eatua, and by no means killing or molesting them; yet they never address a petition to them, or approach them with any act of adoration.

Government.

Though I dare not affert that these people, to whom the art of writing, and consequently the recording of laws; are utterly unknown, live under a regular form of government; yet a subordination is established among them, that greatly resembles the early state of every nation in Europe under the seudal system, which secured liberty in the most licentious excess to a few, and entailed the most abject slavery upon the rest.

Their orders are, Earee rabie, which answers to king; Earee, baron; Manahouni, vassal; and Toutou, villain. The Earee rahie, of which there are two in this island, one being the sovereign of each of the peninsulas of which it consists, is treated with great respect by all ranks, but did not appear to us to be invested with so much power as was exercised by the Earees in their own districts; nor indeed did we, as I have before

before observed, once see the sovereign of Obereonoo, while we were in the island. The Earces are lords of one or more of the districts into which each of the peninsulas is divided, of which there may be about one hundred in the whole island; and they parcel out their territories to the Manahounies, who cultivate each his part which he holds under the baron. The lowest class, called Toutous, seem to be nearly under the same circumstances as the villains in feudal governments: these do all the laborious work, they cultivate the land under the Manahounies, who are only nominal cultivators for the lord, they fetch wood and water, and, under the direction of the mistress of the family, dress the victuals; they also catch the fish.

Each of the Earees keeps a kind of court, and has a great number of attendants, chiefly the younger brothers of their own tribe; and among these some hold particular offices, but of what nature exactly we could not tell. One was called the Eowa no l'Earee, and another the Whanno no l'Earee, and these were frequently dispatched to us with messages. all the courts of these Earees, that of Tootahah was the most fplendid, as indeed might reasonably be expected, because he administered the government for Outou, his nephew, who was Earee rahie of Obereonoo, and lived upon his efface. The child of the baron or Earce, as well as of the fovereign or Earee rahie, fucceeds to the title and honours of the father as foon as it is born: fo that a baron, who was yesterday called Earee, and was approached with the ceremony of lowering the garments, fo as to uncover the upper part of the body, is to-day, if his wife was last night delivered of a child, reduced to the rank of a private man, all marks of respect being transferred to the child, if it is suffered to live,

though the father still continues possessor and administrator of his estate: probably this custom has its share, among other inducements, in forming the societies called Arreoy.

War.

If a general attack happens to be made upon the island, every district under the command of an Earee, is obliged to furnish its proportion of foldiers for the common defence. The number furnished by the principal districts, which Tupia recollected, when added together, amounted, as I have obferved before, to fix thousand six hundred and eighty.

Upon fuch occasions, the united force of the whole island is commanded in chief by the Earee rahie. Private differences between two Earees, are decided by their own people, without at all disturbing the general tranquillity.

Weapons.

Their weapons are flings, which they use with great dexterity, pikes headed with the slings of sling-rays, and clubs, of about fix or seven feet long, made of a very hard heavy wood. Thus armed, they are said to sight with great obstinacy, which is the more likely to be true, as it is certain that they give no quarter to either man, woman, or child, who is so unfortunate as to fall into their hands during the battle, or for some hours afterwards, till their passion, which is always violent, though not lasting, has subsided.

The Earee rahie of Obereonoo, while we were here, was in perfect amity with the Earee rahie of Tiarreboo, the other peninfula, though he took himfelf the title of king of the whole island: this, however, produced no more jealoufy in the other fovereign, than the title of king of France, assumed by our sovereign, does in his most Christian Majesty.

In a government fo rude, it cannot be expected that distributive justice should be regularly administered, and indeed where

where there is fo little opposition of interest, in consequence of the facility with which every appetite and passion is gratified, there can be but few crimes. There is nothing like money, the common medium by which every want and every wish is supposed to be gratified by those who do not possess it; there is no apparently permanent good which either fraud or force can unlawfully obtain; and when all the crimes that are committed by the inhabitants of civilized countries, to get money, are fet out of the account, not many will remain: add to this, that where the commerce with woman is restrained by no law, men will seldom be under any temptation to commit adultery, especially as one woman is always less preferred to another, where they are less distinguished by personal decorations, and the adventitious circumstances which are produced by the varieties of art, and the refinements of fentiment. That they are thieves is true; but as among these people no man can be much injured or benefited by theft, it is not necessary to reftrain it by fuch punishments, as in other countries are absolutely necessary to the very existence of civil society. Tupia, however, tells us, that adultery is fometimes committed as well as theft. In all cases where an injury has been committed, the punishment of the offender lies with the fufferer: adultery, if the parties are caught in the fact, is fometimes punished with death in the first ardour of resentment; but without circumstances of immediate provocation, the female finner feldom fuffers more than a beating. As punishment, however, is enforced by no law, nor taken into the hand of any magistrate, it is not often inflicted, except the injured party is the strongest; though the Chiefs do fometimes punish their immediate dependents, for faults committed against each other, and even the dependents of others.

others, if they are accused of any offence committed in their district.

Having now given the best description that I can of the island in its present state, and of the people, with their customs and manners, language and arts, I shall only add a few general observations, which may be of use to future navigators, if any of the ships of Great Britain should receive orders to visit it. As it produces nothing that appears to be convertible into an article of trade, and can be useful only by affording refreshments to shipping in their passage through these seas, it might be made to answer this purpose in a much greater degree, by transporting thither sheep, goats, and horned cattle, with European garden-stuff, and other useful vegetables, which there is the greatest reason to suppose will slourish in so fine a climate, and so rich a soil.

Though this, and the neighbouring islands lie within the tropick of Capricorn, yet the heat is not troublesome, nor did the winds blow constantly from the east. We had frequently a fresh gale from the S. W. for two or three days, and sometimes, though very seldom, from the N. W. Tupia reported, that south westerly winds prevail in October, November, and December, and we have no doubt of the fact. When the winds are variable, they are always accompanied by a swell from the S. W. or W. S. W.; there is also a swell from the same points when it is calm, and the atmosphere loaded with clouds, which is a sure indication that the winds are variable, or westerly out at sea, for with the settled trade-wind the weather is clear.

The meeting with westerly winds, within the general limits of the eastern trade, has induced some navigators to suppose that they were near some large track of land, of which, however, I think they are no indication.

It has been found, both by us and the Dolphin, that the trade-wind, in these parts, does not extend farther to the south than twenty degrees, beyond which, we generally found a gale from the westward; and it is reasonable to suppose, that when these winds blow strong, they will drive back the easterly wind, and consequently incroach upon the limits within which they constantly blow, and thus necessarily produce variable winds, as either happens to prevail, and a south westerly swell. This supposition is the more probable, as it is well known that the trade-winds blow but faintly for some distance within their limits, and therefore may be more easily stopped or repelled by a wind in the contrary direction: it is also well known, that the limits of the trade-winds vary not only at different seasons of the year, but sometimes at the same season, in different years.

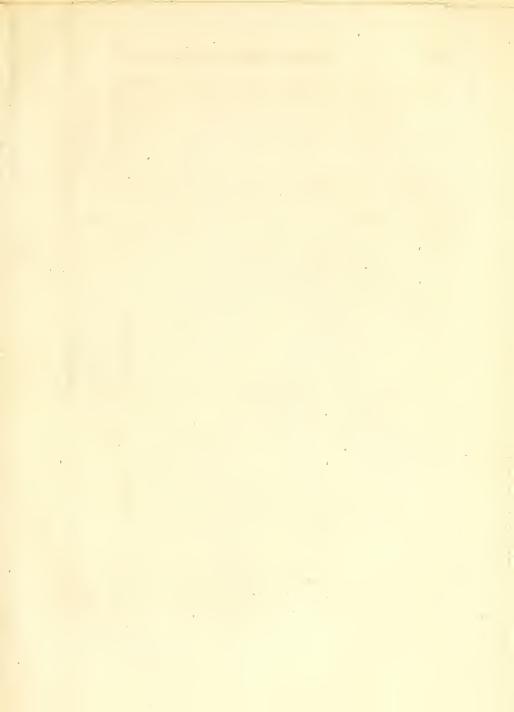
There is therefore no reason to suppose that south westerly winds, within these limits, are caused by the vicinity of large tracts of land, especially as they are always accompanied with a large swell, in the same direction in which they blow; and we find a much greater surf beating upon the shores of the south west side of the islands that are situated just within the limits of the trade-wind, than upon any other part of them.

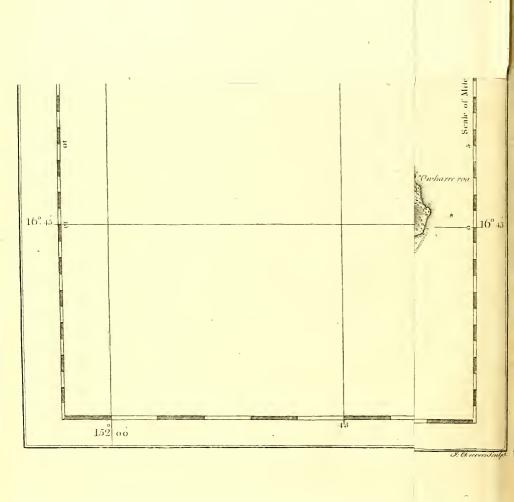
The tides about these islands, are perhaps as inconsiderable as in any part of the world. A south or S. by W. moon, makes high water in the bay of Matavai at Otaheite; but the water very seldom rises perpendicularly above ten or twelve inches.

The variation of the compass, I found to be 4° 46' Easterly, this being the result of a great number of trials made with four of Dr. Knight's needles, adapted to azimuth compasses.

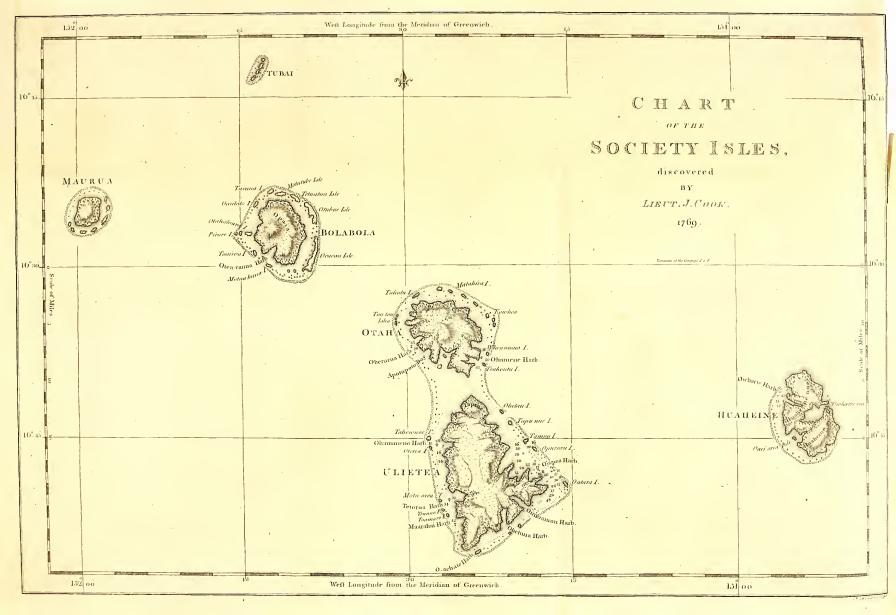
Thefe

These compasses I thought the best that could be procured, yet, when applied to the meridian line, I found them to differ not only one from another, sometimes a degree and an half, but the same needle, half a degree from itself in different trials made on the same day; and I do not remember that I have ever found two needles which exactly agreed at the same time and place, though I have often found the same needle agree with itself, in several trials made one after the other. This impersection of the needle, however, is of no consequence to navigation, as the variation can always be found to a degree of accuracy, more than sufficient for all nautical purposes.

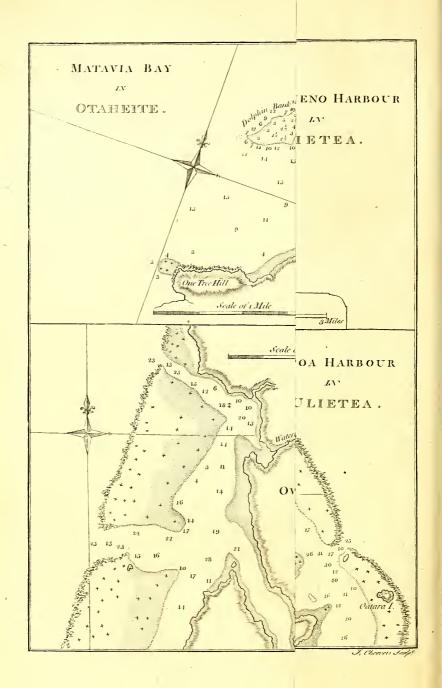




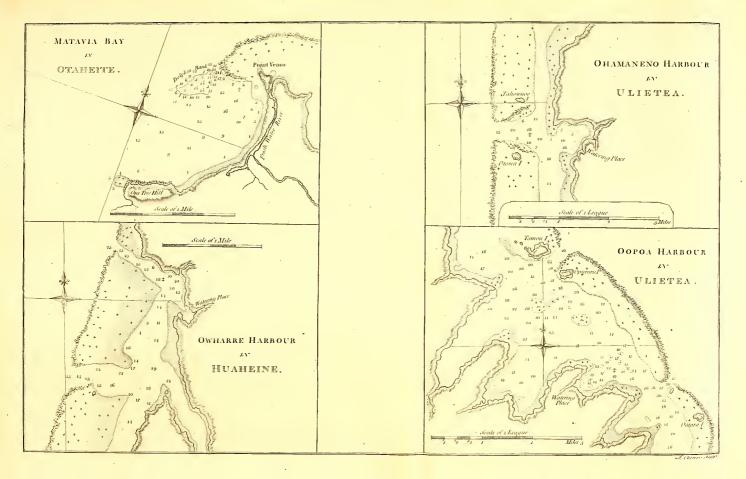




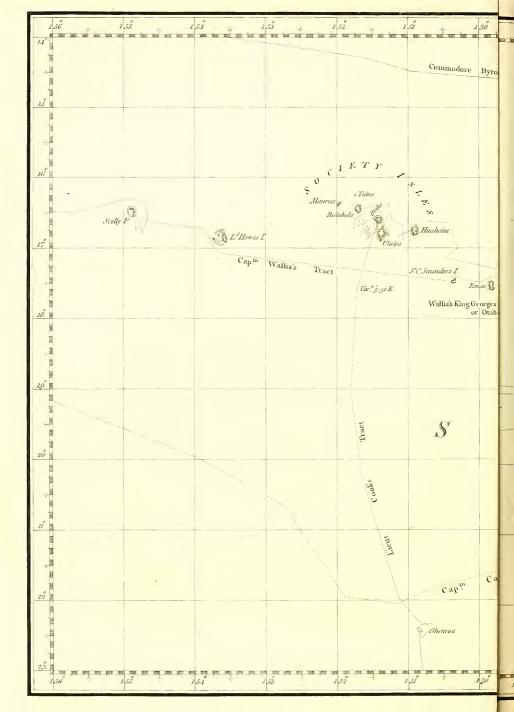












CHAP. XX.

A Description of several other Islands in the Neighbourhood of Otaheite, with various Incidents; a dramatic Entertainment; and many Particulars relative to the Customs and Manners of the Inhabitants.

A FTER parting with our friends, we made an eafy fail, with gentle breezes and clear weather, and were informed by Tupia, that four of the neighbouring islands, which he distinguished by the names of HUAHEINE ULIETEA, OTAHA, and BOLABOLA, lay at the distance of between one and two days fail from Otaheite; and that hogs, fowls, and other refreshments, with which we had of late been but fparingly fupplied, were there to be procured in great plenty; but having discovered from the hills of Otaheite, an island lying to the northward, which he called TETHUROA, I determined first to stand that way, to take a nearer view of it. It lies N. - W. distant eight leagues from the northern extremity of Otaheite, upon which we had obferved the transit, and to which we had, for that reason, given the name of Point Venus. We found it to be a small low island, and were told by Tupia, that it had no fettled inhabitants, but was occasionally visited by the inhabitants of Otaheite, who fometimes went thither for a few days to fish; we therefore determined to spend no more time in a farther examination of it, but to go in fearch of Huaheine and Ulietea, which he described to be well peopled, and as large as Otaheite.

156 155 154 155	i já	/	50 2	ů .	116 1	17'	246	45	1.11 to to to			
		Commodure	Byzon's & Cap's	Mouat's Tract	Prof Wales I. P			Byronis King Georg			-	Per Disappointment A CHART of the LSLANDS
	ETF			G	R	E	. 1	T				(inscorred in the Meighbourhood of a OTAHEITE,
Maurini , Reddo	o Tulno	S Historic'.	Tethuros									in the (ourse of several Poyages round the North) 11.10 K n v The Cap ^{to} Byron, Hallis, (arteret / 5 Cooke).
$\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$	Im. 5.50 E.	C.Saunders I Ø Em, Wallis's King Geo	8 000		Oznaburg I.		Chain Id	You 6-32 E	Bml Id	& The Two Groupes		in the Years , 1765, 1767, 1769 . Whithborth (only Phontant Houghton Jones
				Tier	S ALE		Cap	Walliss	Tract		Hom I'	Them top Licent Cooks Tract Prince Henry I In Ligence f
#1 1	Tract	. \$'	0	U	T	II		.5'	Æ	. 1	1=	Against P 2 Glauciters Quesi Charlottes I = 3 Whannahy I
1 1 1 1 1 1	s doubs						Gloucester I.					
1 1 1 2 2	Jan.	Capin	Carterets	fract								
		> Ohetwa										
156 153 154 253 153	2 15/	1	50)	W.	110 1	17	7.46	1.15	111	1.43	122	140 140 140 140 140 140 140 140 140 140

CHAP. XX.

A Description of several other Islands in the Neighbourhood of Otaheite, with various Incidents; a dramatic Entertainment; and many Particulars relative to the Customs and Manners of the Inhabitants.

FTER parting with our friends, we made an eafy fail, with gentle breezes and clear weather, and were informed by Tupia, that four of the neighbouring islands, which he distinguished by the names of HUAHEINE ULIETEA, OTAHA, and BOLABOLA, lay at the distance of between one and two days fail from Otaheite; and that hogs, fowls, and other refreshments, with which we had of late been but sparingly supplied, were there to be procured in great plenty; but having discovered from the hills of Otaheite, an island lying to the northward, which he called TETHUROA, I determined first to stand that way, to take a nearer view of it. It lies N. + W. distant eight leagues from the northern extremity of Otaheite, upon which we had obferved the transit, and to which we had, for that reason, given the name of POINT VENUS. We found it to be a small low island, and were told by Tupia, that it had no fettled inhabitants, but was occasionally visited by the inhabitants of Otaheite, who fometimes went thither for a few days to fish; we therefore determined to spend no more time in a farther examination of it, but to go in fearch of Huaheine and Ulietea, which he described to be well peopled, and as large as Otaheite.

July.
Thursday 13

July. Friday 14. At fix o'clock in the morning of the 14th, the westermost part of Eimeo, or York Island, bore S. E. ½ S. and the body of Otaheite E. ½ S. At noon, the body of York Island bore E. by S. ½ S. and Port-Royal bay, at Otaheite, S. 70° 45′ E. distant 61 miles, and an island which we took to be Saunders's Island, called by the natives Tapoamanao, bore S. S. W. We also faw land bearing N. W. ½ W. which Tupiasaid was Huaheine.

Saturday 15.

On the 15th, it was hazy, with light breezes and calms-fucceeding each other, fo that we could fee no land, and made but little way. Our Indian, Tupia, often prayed for a wind to his god Tane, and as often boafted of his fuccefs, which indeed he took a very effectual method to fecure, for he never began his address to Tane, till he saw a breeze so near that he knew it must reach the ship before his oraison was well over.

Sunday 16.

Huaheine.

On the 16th, we had a gentle breeze; and in the morning about eight o'clock, being close in with the north west part of the island Huaheine, we founded, but had no bottom with. 80 fathom. Some canoes very foon came off, but the people feemed afraid, and kept at a diffance till they discovered Tupia, and then they ventured nearer. In one of the canoes that came up to the ship's side, was the king of the island and his wife. Upon affurances of friendship, frequently and earnestly repeated, their Majesties and some others came on board. At first they were struck with assonishment, and wondered at every thing that was frewn them; yet they made no enquiries, and feeming to be fatisfied with what was offered to their notice, they made no fearch after other objects of curiofity, with which it was natural to suppose a building of fuch novelty and magnitude as the ship must abound. After fome time, they became more familiar. I

was given to understand, that the name of the king was OREE, and he proposed, as a mark of amity, that we should exchange names. To this I readily consented; and he was Cookee, for so he pronounced my name, and I was Oree, for the rest of the time we were together. We found these people to be very nearly the same with those of Otaheite, in person, dress, language, and every other circumstance, except, if Tupia might be believed, that they would not steal.

1769. July. Sunday 16.

Soon after dinner, we came to an anchor, in a small but excellent harbour on the west side of the island, which the Natives call OWHARRE, in eighteen fathom water, clear ground, and fecure from all winds. I went immediately afhore, accompanied by Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, Mr. Monkhouse, Tupia, King Cookee, and some other of the natives who had been on board ever fince the morning. The moment we landed Tupia stripped himself as low as the waist, and defired Mr. Monkhouse to do the same: he then sat down before a great number of the natives, who were collected together in a large house or shed; for here, as well as at Otaheite, a house confists only of a roof supported upon poles; the rest of us, by his desire, standing behind. He then began a fpeech or prayer which lasted about a quarter of an hour, the King who flood over against him every now and then answering in what appeared to be fet responses. In the course of this harangue he delivered at different times two handkerchiefs, a black filk neckcloth, fome beads, two fmall bunches of feathers, and fome plantains, as prefents to their Eatua, or God. In return for these, he received for our Eatua, a hog, fome young plantains, and two fmall bunches of feathers, which he ordered to be carried on board the thip. After these ceremonies, which we supposed to be the ratification of a treaty between us, every one was difmiffed

July.

to go whither he pleased; and Tupia immediately repaired to offer his oblations at one of the Morais.

Monday 17.

The next morning, we went on shore again, and walked up the hills, where the productions were exactly the fame as those of Otaheite, except that the rocks and clay appeared to be more burnt. The houses were neat, and the boathouses remarkably large; one that we measured was fifty paces long, ten broad, and twenty-four feet high; the whole formed a pointed arch, like those of our old cathedrals, which was supported on one side by twenty-six, and on the other by thirty pillars, or rather posts, about two feet high, and one thick, upon most of which were rudely carved the heads of men, and feveral fanciful devices, not altogether unlike those which we sometimes see printed from wooden blocks, at the beginning and end of old books. The plains, or flat part of the country, abounded in bread-fruit, and cocoa-nut trees; in fome places, however, there were falt fwamps and lagoons, which would produce neither.

Tuesday 18.

We went again a-shore on the 18th, and would have taken the advantage of Tupia's company, in our perambulation; but he was too much engaged with his friends: we took however his boy, whose name was Tayeto, and Mr. Banks went to take a farther view of what had much engaged his attention before; it was a kind of chest or ark, the lid of which was nicely sewed on, and thatched very neatly with palm-nut leaves: it was fixed upon two poles, and supported on little arches of wood, very neatly carved; the use of the poles seemed to be to remove it from place to place, in the manner of our sedan chairs: in one end of it was a square hole, in the middle of which was a ring touching the sides; and leaving the angles open, so as to form a round hole within a square one. The first time Mr. Banks saw this cof-



W.Woollett sculp.



to go whither he pleased; and Tupia immediately repaired to offer his oblations at one of the Morais.

Monday 17.

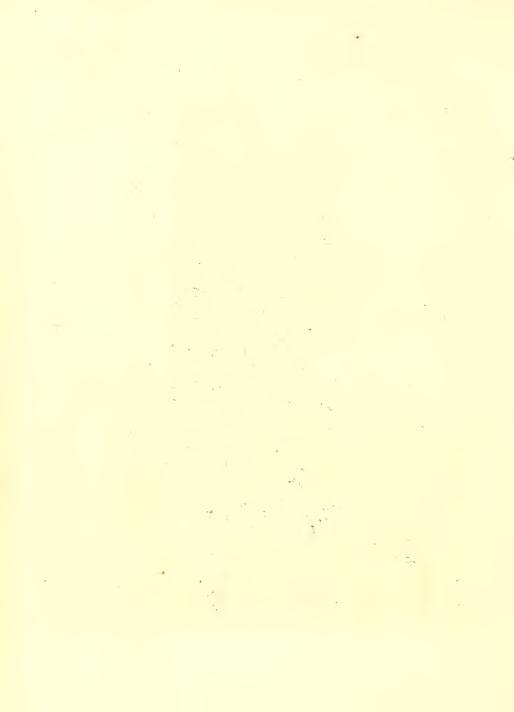
The next morning, we went on shore again, and walked up the hills, where the productions were exactly the fame as those of Otaheite, except that the rocks and clay appeared to be more burnt. The houses were neat, and the boathouses remarkably large; one that we measured was fifty paces long, ten broad, and twenty-four feet high; the whole formed a pointed arch, like those of our old cathedrals, which was supported on one side by twenty-six, and on the other by thirty pillars, or rather posts, about two feet high, and one thick, upon most of which were rudely carved the heads of men, and feveral fanciful devices, not altogether unlike those which we sometimes see printed from wooden blocks, at the beginning and end of old books. The plains, or flat part of the country, abounded in bread-fruit, and cocoa-nut trees; in fome places, however, there were falt fwamps and lagoons, which would produce neither.

Tuesday 18.

We went again a-shore on the 18th, and would have taken the advantage of Tupia's company, in our perambulation; but he was too much engaged with his friends: we took however his boy, whose name was Tayeto, and Mr. Banks went to take a farther view of what had much engaged his attention before; it was a kind of chest or ark, the lid of which was nicely sewed on, and thatched very neatly with palm-nut leaves: it was fixed upon two poles, and supported on little arches of wood, very neatly carved; the use of the poles seemed to be to remove it from place to place, in the manner of our sedan chairs: in one end of it was a square hole, in the middle of which was a ring touching the sides, and leaving the angles open, so as to form a round hole within a square one. The first time Mr. Banks saw this cof-



WWoollett sculp.



fer, the aperture at the end was stopped with a piece of cloth, which, least he should give offence, he left untouched; probably there was then fomething within, but now the cloth was taken away, and, upon looking into it, it was found empty. The general refemblance between this repolitory and the Ark of the Lord among the Jews is remarkable; but it is still more remarkable, that upon enquiring of the boy what it was called, he faid, Ewharre no Eatua, the house of the God: he could however give no account of its fignification or use. We had commenced a kind of trade with the natives. but it went on flowly; for when any thing was offered, not one of them would take it upon his own judgment, but collected the opinions of twenty or thirty people, which could not be done without great loss of time. We got, however, eleven pigs, and determined to try for more the next day.

The next day, therefore, we brought out fome hatchets, Wednes, to. for which we hoped we should have had no occasion, upon an island which no European had ever visited before. These procured us three very large hogs; and as we proposed to fail in the afternoon, King Oree and feveral others came on board to take their leave. To the King I gave a fmall plate of pewter, on which was flamped this infcription, "His Bri-" tannic Majesty's ship, Endeavour, Lieutenant Cook Com-" mander, 16th July 1769, Huaheine." I gave him alfo fome medals or counters, refembling the coin of England, ftruck in the year 1761, with fome other prefents; and he promifed that with none of these, particularly the plate, he would ever part. I thought it as lasting a testimony of our having first discovered this island, as any we could leave behind; and having difmiffed our vifitors well fatisfied, and in great good-humour, we fet fail, about half an hour after two in the afternoon.

1769. July. Wednef. 19.

The island of Huaheine, or Huahene, is situated in the latitude of 16° 43' S and longitude 150° 52' W. from Greenwich: it is distant from Otaheite about thirty-one leagues, in the direction of N. 58 W. and is about seven leagues in compass. Its surface is hilly and uneven, and it has a safe and commodious harbour. The harbour, which is called by the natives Owalle, or Owharre, lies on the west side, under the northermost high land, and within the north end of the reef, which lies along that side of the island; there are two inlets or openings, by which it may be entered, through the reef, about a mile and a half distant from each other; the southermost is the widest, and on the south side of it lies a very small fandy island.

Huaheine feems to be a month forwarder in its productions than Otaheite, as we found the cocoa-nuts full of kernel, and fome of the new bread-fruit fit to eat. Of the cocoanuts the inhabitants make a food which they call *Poe*, by mixing them with yams; they fcrape both fine, and having incorporated the powder, they put it into a wooden trough, with a number of hot flones, by which an oily kind of hafty pudding is made, that our people relified very well, especially when it was fryed. Mr. Banks found not more than eleven or twelve new plants; but he observed some insects, and a species of scorpion which he had not seen before.

The inhabitants feem to be larger made, and more flout, than those of Otaheite. Mr. Banks measured one of the men, and found him to be fix feet three inches and an half high; yet they are so lazy, that he could not persuade any of them to go up the hills with him: they said, if they were to attempt it, the fatigue would kill them. The women were very fair, more so than those of Otaheite; and in general, we thought them more handsome, though none that were equal

equal to fome individuals. Both fexes feemed to be lefs timid, and less curious: it has been observed, that they made no enquiries on board the ship; and when we fired a gun, they were frighted indeed, but they did not fall down, as our friends at Otaheite conflantly did when we first came among them. For this difference, however, we can eafily account upon other principles; the people at Huaheine had not feen the Dolphin, those at Otaheite had. In one, the report of a gun was connected with the idea of inftant deftruction; to the other, there was nothing dreadful in it but the appearance and the found, as they had never experienced its power of difpenfing death.

While we were on fhore, we found that Tupia had commended them beyond their merit, when he faid that they would not fleal; for one of them was detected in the fact. But when he was feized by the hair, the reft, instead of running away, as the people at Otaheite would have done, gathered round, and enquired what provocation had been given: but: this also may be accounted for without giving them credit for fuperior courage; they had no experience of the confequence of European refentment, which the people at Otaheite had in many inflances purchased with life. It must however be acknowledged, to their honour, that when they understood what had happened, they showed strong figns of disapprobation, and prescribed a good beating for the thief, which was immediately administered.

We now made fail for the island of ULIETEA, which lies Ulietes, S. W. by W. distant seven or eight leagues from Huaheine, and at half an hour after fix in the evening we were within three leagues of the shore, on the eastern side. We stood off and on all night, and when the day broke the next morning, Thursday 20, we flood in for the shore: we soon after discovered an open-

July.
Thurfday 20.

ing in the reef which lies before the island, within which Tupia told us there was a good harbour. I did not, however, implicitly take his word; but fent the master out in the pinnace to examine it: he foon made the signal for the ship to follow; we accordingly stood in, and anchored in two and twenty fathom with soft ground.

The natives foon came off to us in two canoes, each of which brought a woman and a pig. The woman we fupposed was a mark of confidence, and the pig was a present; we received both with proper acknowledgments, and complimented each of the ladies with a spike nail and some beads, much to their satisfaction. We were told by Tupia, who has always expressed much fear of the men of Bolabola, that they have made a conquest of this island; and that, if we remain here, they will certainly come down tomorrow, and fight us. We determined, therefore, to go on shore without delay, while the day was our own.

I landed in company with Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and the other Gentlemen, Tupia being also of the party. He introduced us by repeating the ceremonies which he had performed at Huaheine, after which I hoisted an English jack, and took possession of this and the three neighbouring islands, Huaheine, Otaha, and Bolabola, which were all in fight, in the name of his Britannic Majesty. After this, we took a walk to a great Morai, called TAPODEBOATEA. We found it very different from those of Otaheite; for it confisled only of four walls, about eight feet high, of coral stones, some of which were of an immense fize, inclosing an area of about five and twenty yards fquare, which was filled up with fmaller flones: upon the top of it many planks were fet up an end, which were carved in their whole length: at a little diffance we found an altar, or Ewhatta, upon which lay the laft

257

Thursday 25.

last oblation or facrifice, a hog of about eighty pounds weight, which had been offered whole, and very nicely roafted. Here were also four or five Ewharre-no-Eatua, or houses of God, to which carriage poles were fitted, like that which we had feen at Huaheine. One of these Mr. Banks examined by putting his hand into it, and found a parcel about five feet long and one thick, wrapped up in matts: he broke a way through feveral of these matts with his fingers, but at length came to one which was made of the fibres of the cocoa-nut, fo firmly plaited together that he found it imposfible to tear it, and therefore was forced to defift; especially as he perceived, that what he had done already gave great offence to our new friends. From hence we went to a long house, not far distant, where among rolls of cloth, and scveral other things, we faw the model of a canoe, about three feet long, to which were tied eight human jaw-bones: we had already learnt that thefe, like fcalps among the Indians of North America, were trophies of war. Tupia affirmed that they were the jaw-bones of the natives of this island; if fo, they might have been hung up, with the model of a canoe, as a fymbol of invasion, by the warriors of Bolabola, as a memorial of their conquest.

Night now came on apace, but Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander continued their walk along the shore, and at a little distance faw another Ewharre-no-Eatua, and a tree of the fig kind, the fame as that which Mr. Green had feen at Otaheite. in great perfection, the trunk, or rather congeries of the roots of which was forty-two paces in circumference.

On the 21st, having dispatched the Master in the long-boat Friday 21. to examine the coast of the fouth part of the island, and one of the Mates in the yawl, to found the harbour where the fhip lay, I went myfelf in the pinnace, to furvey that part VOL. II. Ll of

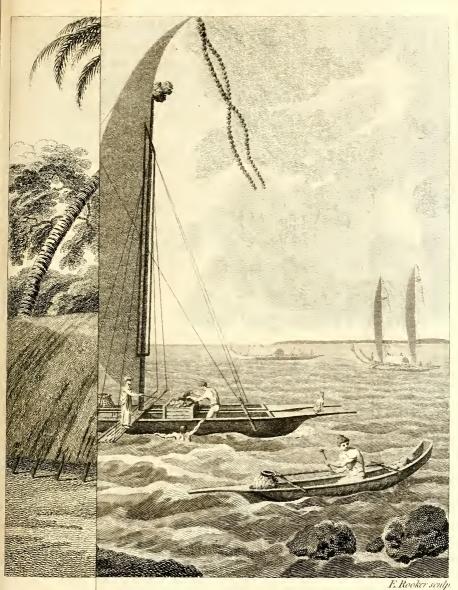
July. Friday 21. of the island which lies to the north. Mr. Banks and the Gentlemen were again on shore, trading with the natives, and examining the products and curiosities of the country; they faw nothing, however, worthy notice, but some more jawbones, of which they made no doubt but that the account they had heard was true.

Saturday 22. Sunday 23. Monday 24. On the 22d and 23d, having strong gales and hazey weather, I did not think it safe to put to sea; but on the 24th, though the wind was still variable, I got under sail, and plyed to the northward within the reef, with a view to go out at a wider opening than that by which I had entered; in doing this, however, I was unexpectedly in the most imminent danger of striking on the rock: the Master, whom I had ordered to keep continually sounding in the chains, suddenly called out, "two fathom." This alarmed me, for though I knew the ship drew at least fourteen feet, and that therefore it was impossible such a shoal should be under her keel; yet the Master was either mistaken, or she went along the edge of a coral rock, many of which, in the neighbourhood of these islands, are as steep as a wall.

This harbour or bay is called by the natives OOPOA, and taken in its greatest extent, it is capable of holding any number of shipping. It extends almost the whole length of the east side of the island, and is defended from the sea by a reef of coral rocks: the southermost opening in this reef, or channel into the harbour, by which we entered, is little more than a cable's length wide; it lies off the eastermost point of the island, and may be known by another small woody island, which lies a little to the south east of it, called by the people here OATARA. Between three and four miles north west from this island lie two other islets, in the same direction as the reef, of which they are a part, called Opururu

Catara:

Opururu.



E.Rooker sculp. Nº. 5.

July. Friday z1. of the island which lies to the north. Mr. Banks and the Gentlemen were again on shore, trading with the natives, and examining the products and curiosities of the country; they faw nothing, however, worthy notice, but some more jawbones, of which they made no doubt but that the account they had heard was true.

Saturday 22. Sunday 23. Monday 24.

On the 22d and 23d, having strong gales and hazey weather, I did not think it safe to put to sea; but on the 24th, though the wind was still variable, I got under sail, and plyed to the northward within the reef, with a view to go out at a wider opening than that by which I had entered; in doing this, however, I was unexpectedly in the most imminent danger of striking on the rock: the Master, whom I had ordered to keep continually sounding in the chains, suddenly called out, "two fathom." This alarmed me, for though I knew the ship drew at least fourteen feet, and that therefore it was impossible such a shoal should be under her keel; yet the Master was either mistaken, or she went along the edge of a coral rock, many of which, in the neighbourhood of these islands, are as steep as a wall.

This harbour or bay is called by the natives Oopoa, and taken in its greatest extent, it is capable of holding any number of shipping. It extends almost the whole length of the east side of the island, and is defended from the sea by a reef of coral rocks: the southermost opening in this reef, or channel into the harbour, by which we entered, is little more than a cable's length wide; it lies off the eastermost point of the island, and may be known by another small woody island, which lies a little to the south east of it, called by the people here OATARA. Between three and four miles north west from this island lie two other islets, in the same direction as the reef, of which they are a part, called Opururu

Catara;

Opururu.

and.





and Tamou; between these lies the other channel into the harbour, through which I went out, and which is a full quarter of a mile wide. Still farther to the north west are some Tamou. other fmall islands, near which I am told there is another fmall channel into the harbour; but this I know only by report.

The principal refreshments that are to be procured at this part of the island are, plantains, cocoa-nuts, yams, hogs, and fowls; the hogs and fowls, however, are fcarce; and the country, where we faw it, is neither fo populous, nor fo rich in produce as Otaheite, or even Huaheine. Wood and water may also be procured here; but the water cannot conveniently be got at.

We were now again at fea, without having received any interruption from the hostile inhabitants of Bolabola, whom, notwithstanding the fears of Tupia, we intended to visit. At four o'clock in the afternoon of the 25th, we were within a Tuefday 25. league of Otaha, which bore N. 77 W. To the northward of the fouth end of that island, on the east side of it, and something more than a mile from the shore, lie two small islands, called Toahoutu and Whennuaia; between which, Tupia Toahoutu. fays, there is a channel into a very good harbour, which lies within the reef, and appearances confirmed his report.

As I discovered a broad channel between Otaha and Bolabola, I determined rather to go through it, than run to the northward of all; but the wind being right a-head, I got no ground.

Between five and fix in the evening of the 26th, as I was Wedner, 26. flanding to the northward, I discovered a small low island, lying N. by W. or N. N. W. distant four or five leagues from Bolabola. We were told by Tupia that the name of this

July.
Tubai.

is inhabited only by three families; though it is visited by the inhabitants of the neighbouring islands, who refort thither to catch fish, with which the coast abounds.

Thursday 27.

Friday 28.

On the 27th, about noon, the peak of Bolabola bore N. 25 W. and the north end of Otaha, N. 80 W. diftant three The wind continued contrary all this day and the night following. On the 28th, at fix in the morning, we were near the entrance of the harbour on the east fide of Otaha, which has been just mentioned; and finding that it might be examined without losing time, I fent away the Master in the long-boat, with orders to found it; and, if the wind did not shift in our favour, to land upon the island, and traffic with the natives for fuch refreshments as were to be had. In this boat went Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, who landed upon the island, and before night purchased three hogs, twentyone fowls, and as many yams and plantains as the boat would hold. Plantains we thought a more ufeful refreshment even than pork; for they were boiled and served to the ship's company as bread, and were now the more acceptable as our bread was fo full of vermin, that notwithflanding all possible care, we had fometimes twenty of them in our mouths at a time, every one of which tafted as hot as mustard. The island seemed to be more barren than Ulietea, but the produce was of the fame kind. The people also exactly refembled those that we had seen at the other islands; they were not numerous, but they flocked about the boat whereever she went from all quarters, bringing with them whatever they had to fell. They paid the strangers, of whom they had received an account from Tupia, the fame compliment which they used towards their own Kings, uncovering their shoulders, and wrapping their garments round their breasts;

and were fo folicitous to prevent its being neglected by any of their people, that a man was fent with them, who called out to every one they met, telling him what they were, and what he was to do.

1769. July. Friday 28.

In the mean time, I kept plying off and on, waiting for the boat's return; at half an hour after five, not feeing any thing of her, I fired a gun, and after it was dark hoisted a light; at half an hour after eight, we heard the report of a musquet, which we answered with a gun, and soon after the boat came on board. The Master reported, that the harbour was fafe and commodious, with good anchorage from twenty-five to fixteen fathom water, clear ground.

As foon as the boat was hoifted in, I made fail to the northward, and at eight o'clock in the morning of the 29th, we Saturday 293 were close under the Peak of Bolabola, which was high. rude, and eraggy. As the island was altogether inaccessible in this part, and we found it impossible to weather it, we tacked and flood off, then tacked again, and after many trips did not weather the fouth end of it till twelve o'clock at night. At eight o'clock the next morning, we discovered an Sunday 10. island, which bore from us N. 63° W. distant about eight leagues; at the same time the Peak of Bolabola bore N. 1 E. distant three or four leagues. This island Tupia called MAU- Maurua. RUA, and faid that it was fmall, wholly furrounded by a reef. and without any harbour for shipping; but inhabited, and bearing the same produce as the neighbouring islands: the middle of it rifes in a high round hill, that may be feen at the distance of ten leagues.

When we were off Bolabola, we faw but few people on the shore, and were told by Tupia that many of the inhabitants were gone to Ulietea. In the afternoon we found ourselves nearly the length of the south end of Ulietea, and to

wind-

1769. July. Sunday 30.

Tuesday 1.

windward of fome harbours that lay on the west side of this island. Into one of these harbours, though we had before been ashore on the other side of the island, I intended to put. in order to ftop a leak which we had fprung in the powder room, and to take in more ballast, as I found the ship too light to carry fail upon a wind. As the wind was right against us, we plied off one of the harbours, and about three o'clock in the afternoon on the 1st of August, we came to an anchor in the entrance of the channel leading into it in fourteen fathom water, being prevented from working in, by a tide which fet very ftrong out. We then carried out the kedge-anchor, in order to warp into the harbour; but when this was done, we could not trip the bower-anchor with all the purchase we could make; we were therefore obliged to lie still all night, and in the morning, when the tide turned, the ship going over the anchor, it tripped of itself, and we warped the ship into a proper birth with ease, and moored in twenty-eight fathom, with a fandy bottom. While this was doing many of the natives came off to us with hogs, fowls, and plantains, which they parted with at an easy rate.

Wednes. 2.

When the ship was secured, I went on shore to look for a proper place to get ballast and water, both which I found in a very convenient situation.

This day Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander spent on shore very much to their fatisfaction; every body seemed to fear and respect them, placing in them at the same time the utmost considence, behaving as if conscious that they possessed the power of doing them mischief, without any propensity to make use of it. Men, women and children crowded round them, and followed them wherever they went; but none of them were guilty of the least incivility: on the contrary, whenever there happened to be dirt or water in the way, the

263

Wednes. 2.

men vied with each other to carry them over on their backs. They were conducted to the houses of the principal people, and were received in a manner altogether new: the people, who followed them while they were in their way, rushed forward as foon as they came to a house, and went hastily in before them, leaving however a lane fufficiently wide for them to pass. When they entered, they found those who had preceded them ranged on each fide of a long matt, which was fpread upon the ground, and at the farther end of which fat the family: in the first house they entered they found fome very young women or children, dreffed with the utmost neatness, who kept their station, expecting the strangers to come up to them and make them presents, which they did with the greatest pleasure; for prettier children or better dressed they had never seen. One of them was a girl about fix years old; her gown, or upper garment, was red; a large quantity of plaited hair was wound round her head, the ornament to which they give the name of Tamou, and which they value more than any thing they possess. She fat at the upper end of a matt thirty feet long, upon which none of the spectators presumed to set a foot, notwithstanding the crowd: and she leaned upon the arm of a well-looking woman about thirty, who was probably her nurfe. Our Gentlemen walked up to her, and as foon as they approached, she stretched out her hand to receive the beads which they offered her, and no Princess in Europe could have done it with a better grace.

The people were formuch gratified by the prefents which were made to these girls, that when Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander returned they seemed attentive to nothing but how to oblige them; and in one of the houses they were, by order of the master, entertained with a dance, different from any that they had seen. It was performed by one man, who put

August. Wednes. 2. upon his head a large cylindrical piece of wicker-work, or basket, about four feet long and eight inches in diameter, which was faced with feathers, placed perpendicularly, with the tops bending forwards, and edged round with shark's teeth, and the tail feathers of Tropic birds: when he had put on this head-dress, which is called a Whow, he began to dance, moving slowly, and often turning his head so as that the top of his high wicker-cap described a circle, and sometimes throwing it so near the faces of the spectators as to make them start back: this was held among them as a very good joke, and never failed to produce a peal of laughter, especially when it was played off upon one of the strangers.

Thurfday 3.

On the 3d, we went along the shore to the northward, which was in a direction opposite to that of the route Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander had taken the day before, with a defign to purchase stock, which we always found the people more ready to part with, and at a more easy price, at their houses than at the market. In the course of our walk we met with a company of dancers, who detained us two hours, and during all that time afforded us great entertainment. The company confifted of two women dancers, and fix men, with three drums; we were informed by Tupia, that they were fome of the most considerable people of the island, and that though they were continually going from place to place, they did not, like the little strolling companies of Otaheite, take any gratuity from the spectators. The women had upon their heads a confiderable quantity of Tamou, or plaited hair, which was brought feveral times round the head, and adorned in many parts with the flowers of the cape-jessamine, which were fluck in with much tafte, and made a head-drefs truly elegant. Their necks, shoulders, and arms were naked; fo were the breasts also as low as the parting of

the





J.B Coprano del

J'Barteloz

the arm; below that, they were covered with black cloth, which fet close to the body; at the side of each breast, next the arm, was placed a small plume of black feathers, much in the same manner as our ladies now wear their nosegays or Bouquets; upon their hips rested a quantity of cloth plaited very full, which reached up to the breast, and fell down below into long petticoats, which quite concealed their feet, and which they managed with as much dexterity as our opera dancers could have done: the plaits above the waist were brown and white alternately, the petticoats below were all white.

In this drefs they advanced fideways in a measured step, keeping excellent time to the drums, which beat briskly and loud; soon after they began to shake their hips, giving the folds of cloth that lay upon them a very quick motion, which was in some degree continued through the whole dance, though the body was thrown into various postures; sometimes standing, sometimes sitting, and sometimes resting on their knees and elbows, the singers also being moved at the same time with a quickness scarcely to be imagined. Much of the dexterity of the dancers, however, and the entertainment of the spectators, consisted in the wantonness of their attitudes and gestures, which was, indeed, such as exceeds all description.

One of these girls had in her ear three pearls; one of them was very large, but so foul that it was of little value; the other two were as big as a middling pea; these were clear, and of a good colour and shape, though spoiled by the drilling. Mr. Banks would fain have purchased them, and offered the owner any thing she would ask for them, but she could not be persuaded to part with them at any price: he tempted her with the value of four hogs, and whatever else



265

the arm; below that, they were covered with black cloth, which fet close to the body; at the side of each breast, next the arm, was placed a small plume of black feathers, much in the same manner as our ladies now wear their nosegays or Bouquets; upon their hips rested a quantity of cloth plaited very full, which reached up to the breast, and fell down below into long petticoats, which quite concealed their feet, and which they managed with as much dexterity as our opera dancers could have done: the plaits above the waist were brown and white alternately, the petticoats below were all white.

In this drefs they advanced fideways in a measured step, keeping excellent time to the drums, which beat briskly and loud; soon after they began to shake their hips, giving the folds of cloth that lay upon them a very quick motion, which was in some degree continued through the whole dance, though the body was thrown into various postures, sometimes standing, sometimes sitting, and sometimes resting on their knees and elbows, the singers also being moved at the same time with a quickness scarcely to be imagined. Much of the dexterity of the dancers, however, and the entertainment of the spectators, consisted in the wantonness of their attitudes and gestures, which was, indeed, such as exceeds all description.

One of these girls had in her ear three pearls; one of them was very large, but so foul that it was of little value; the other two were as big as a middling pea; these were clear, and of a good colour and shape, though spoiled by the drilling. Mr. Banks would fain have purchased them, and offered the owner any thing she would ask for them, but she could not be persuaded to part with them at any price: he tempted her with the value of four hogs, and whatever else

August.
Thursday 3.

fhe should chuse, but without success; and indeed they set a value upon their pearls very nearly equal to what they would fetch among us, except they could be procured before they are drilled.

Between the dances of the women, the men performed a kind of dramatic interlude, in which there was dialogue as well as dancing; but we were not fufficiently acquainted with their language to understand the subject.

Friday 4.

On the 4th, fome of our gentlemen faw a much more regular entertainment of the dramatic kind, which was divided into four acts.

Tupia had often told us that he had large possessions in this island, which had been taken away from him by the inhabitants of Bolabola, and he now pointed them out in the very bay where the ship was at anchor. Upon our going on shore, this was confirmed by the inhabitants, who shewed us feveral districts or Whennuas, which they acknowledged to be his right.

Saturday 5.

On the 5th, I received a prefent of three hogs, fome fowls, feveral pieces of cloth, the largest we had seen, being sifty yards long, which they unfolded and displayed so as to make the greatest show possible; and a considerable quantity of plantains, cocoa nuts, and other refreshments, from Opoony, the formidable king, or, in the language of the country, Earee rahie, of Bolabola, with a message that he was at this time upon the island, and that the next day he intended to pay me a visit.

In the mean time Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went upon the hills, accompanied by feveral of the Indians, who conducted them by excellent paths, to fuch a height, that they plainly faw the other fide of the island, and the passage through which the ship had passed the reef between the little islands of Opururu and Tamou, when we landed upon it the

first time. As they were returning, they faw the Indians exercifing themselves at what they call Erowbaw, which is nothing more than pitching a kind of light lance, headed with hard wood, at a mark: in this amusement, though they feem very fond of it, they do not excel, for not above one in twelve struck the mark, which was the bole of a plantain

tree, at about twenty yards distance.

Saturday 5.

On the 6th, we all staid at home, expecting the vifit of the Sunday 6. great king, but we were disappointed; we had, however, much more agreeable company, for he fent three very pretty girls to demand fomething in return for his present: perhaps he was unwilling to trust himself on board the ship, or perhaps he thought his messengers would procure a more valuable return for his hogs and poultry than he could himfelf; be that as it may, we did not regret his absence, nor his messengers their visit.

In the afternoon, as the great king would not come to us. we determined to go to the great king. As he was lord of the Bolabola men, the conquerors of this, and the terror of all the other islands, we expected to fee a Chief young and vigorous, with an intelligent countenance, and an enterprifing spirit: we found, however, a poor feeble wretch, withered and decrepit, half blind with age, and fo fluggish and flupid that he appeared fcarcely to have understanding enough left to know that it was probable we should be gratified either by hogs or women. He did not receive us fitting, or with any state or formality as the other Chiefs had done: we made him our prefent, which he accepted, and gave a hog in return. We had learnt that his principal residence was at Otaha'; and upon our telling him that we intended to go thither in our boats the next morning, and that

M m 2

we

1769. August. we should be glad to have him along with us, he promised to be of the party.

Monday 7.

Early in the morning, therefore, I fet out both with the pinnace and long-boat for Otaha, having fome of the gentlemen with me; and in our way we called upon Opoony, who was in his canoe, ready to join us. As foon as we landed at Otaha, I made him a present of an ax, which I thought might induce him to encourage his fubjects to bring us fuch provision as we wanted; but in this we found ourselves fadly disappointed, for after staying with him till noon, we left him without being able to procure a fingle article. I then proceeded to the north point of the island, in the pinnace, having fent the long-boat another way. As I went along I picked up half a dozen hogs, as many fowls, and some plantains and yams. Having viewed and fketched the harbour on this fide of the island, I made the best of my way back, with the long-boat, which joined me foon after it was dark; and about ten o'clock at night we got on board the ship.

In this excursion Mr. Banks was not with us; he spent the morning on board the ship, trading with the natives, who came off in their canoes, for provisions and curiofities; and in the afternoon he went on shore with his draughtsman, to sketch the dresses of the dancers which he had seen a day or two before. He found the company exactly the same, except that another woman had been added to it: the dancing also of the women was the same, but the interludes of the men were somewhat varied; he saw sive or six performed, which were different from each other, and very much resembled the drama of our stage dances. The next day, he went ashore again, with Dr. Solander, and they directed their course towards the dancing company, which, from the

Tuesday 8.

260

time of our fecond landing, had gradually moved about two leagues in their course round the island. They faw more dancing and more interludes, the interludes still varying from each other: in one of them the performers, who were all men, were divided into two parties, which were distinguished from each other by the colour of their cloaths. one being brown, and the other white. The brown party represented a master and servants, and the white party a company of thieves: the mafter gave a basket of meat to the rest of his party, with a charge to take care of it: the dance of the white party confifted of several expedients to steal it, and that of the brown party in preventing their fuccess. After some time, those who had charge of the basket placed themselves round it, upon the ground, and leaning upon it. appeared to go to fleep; the others, improving this opportunity, came gently upon them, and lifting them up from the basket, carried off their prize: the sleepers soon after awaking, miffed their basket, but presently fell a dancing, without any farther regarding their lofs; fo that the dramatic action of this dance was, according to the feverest laws of criticism, one, and our lovers of fimplicity would here have been gratified with an entertainment perfectly fuited to the chaftity of their tafte.

On the 9th, having spent the morning in trading with the Wedness 9x. canoes, we took the opportunity of a breeze, which fprung up at East, and having slopped our leak, and got the fresh flock which we had purchased on board, we failed out of the harbour. When we were failing away, Tupia strongly urged me to fire a fhot towards Bolabola, possibly as a mark of his refentment, and to fhew the power of his new allies: in this I thought proper to gratify him, though we were: feven leagues distant.

August. Wedness. 9. While we were about these islands, we expended very little of the ship's provisions, and were very plentifully supplied with hogs, fowls, plantains and yams, which we hoped would have been of great use to us in our course to the southward; but the hogs would not eat European grain of any kind, pulse, or bread-dust, so that we could not preserve them alive; and the sowls were all very soon seized with a disease that affected the head so, that they continued to hold it down between their legs till they died: much dependence therefore must not be placed in live stock taken on board at these places, at least not till a discovery is made of some food that the hogs will eat, and some remedy for the disease of the poultry.

Having been necessarily detained at Ulietea so long, by the carpenters in stopping our leak, we determined to give up our design of going on shore at Bolabola, especially as it appeared to be difficult of access.

To these fix islands, Ulietea, Otaha, Bolabola, Huaheine, Tubai, and Maurua, as they lie contiguous to each other, I gave the names of Society Islands, but did not think it proper to distinguish them separately by any other names than those by which they were known to the natives.

Society Islands

They are fituated between the latitude of 16° 10' and 16° 55' S. and between the longitude of 150° 57' and 152° W. from the meridian of Greenwich. Ulietea and Otaha lie within about two miles of each other, and are both inclosed within one reef of coral rocks, fo that there is no passage for shipping between them. This reef forms several excellent harbours; the entrances into them, indeed, are but narrow, yet when a ship is once in, nothing can hurt her. The harbours on the east side have been described already; and on the west side of Ulietea, which is the largest of the two, there

are three. The northermost, in which we lay, is called OHAMANENO: the channel leading into it is about a quarter of a mile wide, and lies between two low fandy islands, which are the northermost on this side; between, or just within the two islands, there is good anchorage in twentyeight fathom, foft ground. This harbour, though small, is preferable to the others, because it is situated in the most fertile part of the island, and where fresh water is easily to be got. The other two harbours lie to the fouthward of this, and not far from the fouth end of the island: in both of them there is good anchorage, with ten, twelve, and fourteen fathom. They are eafily known by three small woody islands at their entrance. The fouthermost of these two harbours lies within, and to the fouthward of the fouthermost of these islands, and the other, lies between the two porthermost. I was told that there were more harbours at the fouth end of this island, but I did not examine whether the report was true.

Otaha affords two very good harbours, one on the east fide, and the other on the west. That on the east fide is called Ohamene, and has been mentioned already; the other is called Oherrura, and lies about the middle of the south west fide of the island; it is pretty large, and affords good anchorage in twenty and twenty-five fathom, nor is there any want of fresh water. The breach in the reef, that forms a channel into this harbour, is about a quarter of a mile broad, and like all the rest is very steep on both sides; in general there is no danger here but what is visible.

The island of Bolabola lies N. W. and by W. from Otaha, distant about four leagues; it is surrounded by a reef of rocks, and several small islands, in compass together about eight leagues. I was told, that on the south west side of

August. Wednes. 9. the island there is a channel through the reef into a very good harbour, but I did not think it worth while to examine it, for the reasons that have been just assigned. This island is rendered very remarkable by a high craggy hill, which appears to be almost perpendicular, and terminates at the top in two peaks, one higher than the other.

The land of Ulietea and Otaha is hilly, broken, and irregular, except on the fea coaft, yet the hills look green and pleafant, and are in many places clothed with wood. The feveral particulars in which these islands and their inhabitants differ from what we had observed at Otaheite, have been mentioned in the course of the narrative.

Sunday 13. Oheteroa.

Monday 14.

We purfued our course without any event worthy of note till the 13th, about noon, when we saw land bearing S.E. which Tupia told us was an island called Oheteraa. About six in the evening, we were within two or three leagues of it, upon which I shortened sail, and stood off and on all night: the next morning stood in for the land. We ran to leeward of the island, keeping close in shore, and saw several of the natives, though in no great numbers, upon the beach. At nine o'clock I sent Mr. Gore, one of my Lieutenants, in the pinnace, to endeavour to land upon the island, and learn from the natives whether there was anchorage in a bay then in sight, and what land lay farther to the southward. Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander accompanied Mr. Gore in this expedition, and as they thought Tupia might be useful, they took him with them.

As the boat approached the shore, those on board perceived the natives to be armed with long lances; as they did not intend to land till they got round a point which run out at a little distance, they slood along the coast, and the natives therefore very probably thought they were afraid of them.

They

They had now got together to the number of about fixty, and all of them fat down upon the shore, except two, who were dispatched forward to observe the motions of those in the boat. These men, after walking a-breast of her some time, at length leaped into the water, and swam towards her, but were soon lest behind; two more then appeared, and attempted to board her in the same manner, but they also were soon lest behind; a fifth man then ran forward alone, and having got a good way a-head of the boat before he took to the water, easily reached her. Mr. Banks urged the officer to take him in, thinking it a good opportunity to get the considence and good-will of a people, who then certainly looked upon them as enemies, but he obstinately refused: this man therefore was lest behind like the others, and so was a fixth, who followed him.

When the boat had got round the point, she perceived that all her followers had defisted from the pursuit: the now opened a large bay, at the bottom of which appeared another body of men, armed with long lances like the first. Here our people prepared to land, and pushed towards the shore, a canoe at the fame time putting off to meet them. As foon as it came near them, they lay upon their oars, and calling out to them, told them that they were friends, and that if they would come up they would give them nails, which were held up for them to fee: after fome helitation they came up to the boat's flern, and took fome nails that were offered them with great feeming fatisfaction; but in lefs than a minute they appeared to have formed a defign of boarding the boat, and making her their prize: three of them fuddenly leaped into it, and the others brought up the canoe, which the motion in quitting her had thrown off a little, manifefly with a defign to follow their affociates, and support them in Vol. II. Nn their

August. Monday 14.

their attempt. The first that boarded the boat, entered close to Mr. Banks, and inflantly fnatched his powder-horn out of his pocket: Mr. Banks feized it, and with fome difficulty wrenched it out of his hand, at the fame time preffing against his breaft in order to force him over-board, but he was too flrong for him, and kept his place: the officer then fnapped his piece, but it missed fire, upon which he ordered some of the people to fire over their heads; two pieces were accordingly discharged, upon which they all instantly leaped into the water: one of the people, either from cowardice or cruelty, or both, levelled a third piece at one of them as he was fwimming away, and the ball grazed his forehead; happily, however, the wound was very flight, for he recovered the canoe, and flood up in her as active and vigorous as the reft. The canoe immediately flood in for the shore, where a great number of people, not lefs than two hundred, were now affembled. The boat also pushed in, but found the land guarded all round with a fhoal, upon which the fea broke with a confiderable furf; it was therefore thought advisable by the officer to proceed along shore in fearch of a more convenient landing-place: in the mean time the people on board faw the canoe go on shore, and the natives gather eagerly round her to enquire the particulars of what had happened. Soon after, a fingle man ran along the shore, armed with his lance, and when he came a-breast of the boat he began to dance, brandish his weapon, and call out in a very shrill tone, which Tupia faid was a defiance from the people. The boat continued to row along the shore, and the champion followed it, repeating his defiance by his voice and his gestures; but no better landing-place being found than that where the canoe had put the natives on fhore, the officer turned back with a view to attempt it there, hoping, that if it should not be practicable, the people would come to a conference either on the shoals or in their canoes, and that a treaty of peace might be concluded with them.

August.

Monday 14.

As the boat rowed flowly along the shore back again, another champion came down, shouting defiance, and brandifhing his lance: his appearance was more formidable than that of the other, for he wore a large cap made of the tail feathers of the tropic bird, and his body was covered with ftripes of different coloured cloth, yellow, red, and brown-This gentleman also danced, but with much more nimbleness and dexterity than the first; our people therefore, confidering his agility and his drefs, diffinguished him by the name of Harlequin. Soon after a more grave and elderly man came down to the beach, and hailing the people in the boat, enquired who they were, and from whence they came; Tupia answered in their own language, from Otaheite: the three natives then walked peaceably along the shore till they came to a shoal, upon which a few people were collected; here they stopped, and after a short conference, they all began to pray very loud: Tupia made his responses, but continued to tell us that they were not our friends. When their prayer, or as they call it, their Poorah, was over, our people entered into a parley with them, telling them, that if they would lay by their lances and clubs, for fome had one and fome the other, they would come on shore, and trade with them for whatever they would bring: they agreed, but it was only upon condition that we would leave behind us our musquets: this was a condition which, however equitable it might appear, could not be complied with, nor indeed would it have put the two parties upon an equality, except their numbers had been equal. Here then the negociation feemed to be at an end; but in a little time they ventured to come nearer to the boat, and at last came near enough to trade,

1769. August. Monday 14. which they did very fairly, for a small quantity of their cloth and some of their weapons; but as they gave our people no hope of provisions, nor indeed any thing else except they would venture through a narrow channel to the shore, which, all circumstances considered, they did not think it prudent to do, they put off the boat and left them.

With the ship and the boat we had now made the circuit of the island, and finding that there was neither harbour nor anchorage about it, and that the hostile disposition of the people would render landing impracticable, without bloodshed, I determined not to attempt it, having no motive that could justify the risk of life.

The bay which the boat entered lies on the west side of the island, the bottom was foul and rocky, but the water so clear that it could plainly be seen at the depth of sive and twenty fathom, which is one hundred and sifty seet.

This island is situated in the latitude of 22° 27'S, and in the longitude of 150° 47'W. from the meridian of Greenwich. It is thirteen miles in circuit, and rather high than low, but neither populous nor fertile in proportion to the other islands that we had seen in these seas. The chief produce seems to be the tree of which they make their weapons, called in their language Etoa; many plantations of it were seen along the shore, which is not surrounded, like the neighbouring islands, by a reef.

The people feemed to be lufty and well-made, rather browner than those we had left: under their arm-pits they had black marks about as broad as the hand, the edges of which formed not a strait but an indented line; they had also circles of the same colour, but not so broad, round their arms and legs, but were not marked on any other part of the body.

Their

277.

Their dress was very different from any that we had seen before, as well as the cloth of which it was made. The cloth was of the fame materials as that which is worn in the other islands, and most of that which was seen by our people was dyed of a bright but deep yellow, and covered on the outfide with a composition like varnish, which was either red, or of a dark lead-colour; over this ground it was again painted in ftripes of many different patterns, with wonderful regularity, in the manner of our ftriped filks in England; the cloth that was painted red was striped with black, and that which was painted lead-colour with white. Their habit was a fhort jacket of this cloth, which reached about as low as their knees; it was of one piece, and had no other making than a hole in the middle of it, stitched round with long stitches, in which it differed from all that we had feen before: through this hole the head was put, and what hung down was confined to their bodies by a piece of yellow cloth or fash, which passing round the neck behind, was crossed upon the breaft, and then collected round the waist like a belt, which paffed over another belt of red cloth, fo that they made a very gay and warlike appearance; fome had caps of the feathers of the tropic bird, which have been before described, and some had a piece of white or lead-coloured cloth wound about the head like a fmall turban, which our people thought more becoming.

Their arms were long lances, made of the Etoa, the wood of which is very hard; they were well polifhed and fharpened at one end: fome were near twenty feet long, though not more than three fingers thick: they had also a weapon which was both club and pike, made of the fame wood, about feven feet long; this also was well polifhed, and sharpened at one end into a broad point. As a guard against

August.
Monday 14.

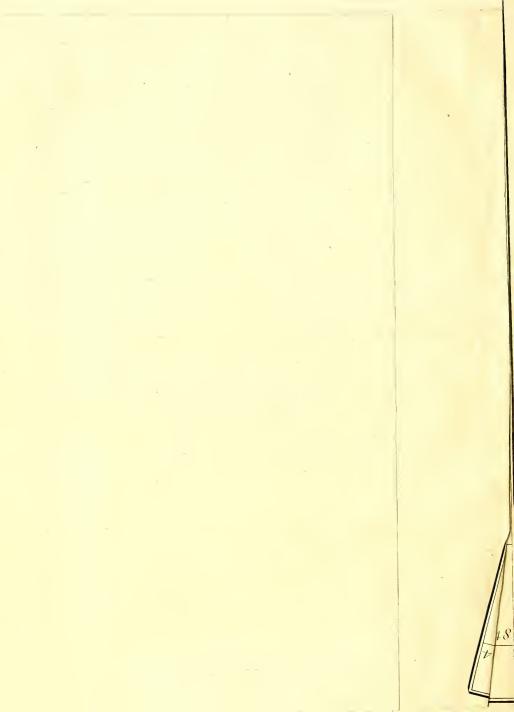
against these weapons, when they attack each other, they have matts folded up many times, which they place under their clothes from the neck to the waift: the weapons themfelves indeed are capable of much less mischief than those of the fame kind which we faw at the other islands, for the lances were there pointed with the sharp bone of the stingray that is called the fling, and the pikes were of much greater weight. The other things that we faw here were all fuperior in their kind to any we had feen before; the cloth was of a better colour in the dye, and painted with greater neatness and taste; the clubs were better cut and polished, and the canoe, though a fmall one, was very rich in ornament, and the carving was executed in a better manner: among other decorations peculiar to this canoe, was a line of fmall white feathers, which hung from the head and flern on the outfide, and which, when we faw them, were thoroughly wetted by the fpray.

Tupia told us, that there were feveral islands lying at different distances and in different directions from this, between the fouth and the north west; and that at the distance of three days fail to the north east, there was an island called Manua, bird-island: he feemed, however, most desirous that we should fail to the westward, and described several islands in that direction which he said he had visited: he told us that he had been ten or twelve days in going thither, and thirty in coming back, and that the Pabie in which he had made the voyage, sailed much faster than the ship: reckoning his Pahie therefore to go at the rate of forty leagues a day, which from my own observation I have great reason to think these boats will do, it would make four hundred leagues in ten days, which I compute to be the distance of Boscawen and Keppel's Islands, discovered by Captain Wallis,

westward of Ulietea, and therefore think it very probable that they were the islands he had visited. The farthest island that he knew any thing of to the southward, he said, lay at the distance of about two days sail from Oteroah, and was called Mourou; but he said that his father had told him there were islands to the southward of that: upon the whole, I was determined to stand southward in search of a continent, but to spend no time in searching for islands, if we did not happen to fall in with them during our course.







C = OU

OFA

VOYAGE round the WORLD.

BOOK II.

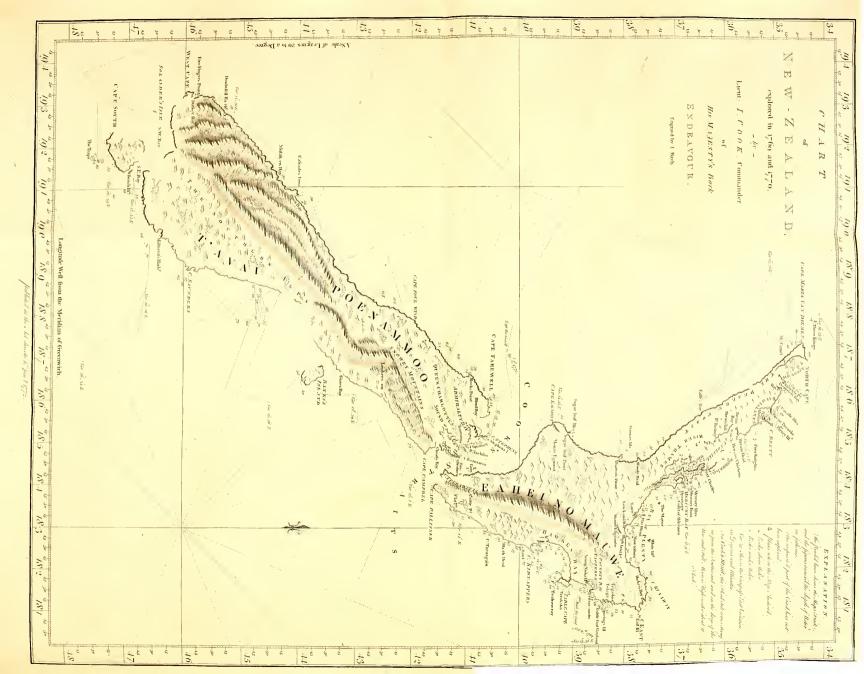
CHAP. I.

The Passage from Oteroah to New Zealand; Incidents which happened on going a-shore there, and while the Ship lay in Poverty Bay.

E failed from Oteroah on the 15th of August, and on Friday the 25th we celebrated the anniversary of our leaving England, by taking a Cheshire cheese from a locker, Tuesday 15. Friday 25. where it had been carefully treasured up for this occasion and tapping a cask of porter, which proved to be very good and in excellent order. On the 29th, one of the failors got fo drunk, that the next morning he died: we thought at first that he could not have come honeftly by the liquor, but we afterwards learnt that the boatswain, whose mate he was, had in mere good-nature given him part of a bottle of rum.

1769.

On the 30th we faw the comet; at one o'clock in the morn- Wednes, 30. ing it was a little above the horizon in the eastern part of the heavens; at about half an hour after four it passed the meridian, and its tail subtended an angle of forty-two de-VOL. II. 00 grees.



C

OFA

VOYAGE round the WORLD.

BOOK II.

CHAP. I.

The Passage from Oteroah to New Zealand; Incidents which happened on going a-shore there, and while the Ship lay in Poverty Bay.

IX) E failed from Oteroah on the 15th of August, and on Friday the 25th we celebrated the anniversary of our leaving England, by taking a Cheshire cheese from a locker, Friday 25, Friday 25, where it had been carefully treasured up for this occasion and tapping a cask of porter, which proved to be very good and in excellent order. On the 29th, one of the failors got fo drunk, that the next morning he died: we thought at first that he could not have come honeftly by the liquor, but we afterwards learnt that the boatfwain, whose mate he was, had in mere good-nature given him part of a bottle of rum.

1769.

On the 30th we faw the comet; at one o'clock in the morn- Wednes, 30. ing it was a little above the horizon in the eastern part of the heavens; at about half an hour after four it passed the meridian, and its tail subtended an angle of forty-two de-VOL. II. 0 0 grees.

grees. Our latitude was 38° 20'S. our longitude, by log. 147° 6' W. and the variation of the needle, by the azimuth. 7° 9' E. Among others that observed the comet, was Tupia, who inflantly cried out, that as foon as it should be feen by the people of Bolabola, they would kill the inhabitants of Ulietea, who would with the utmost precipitation fly to the mountains.

September. Friday 1.

On the 1st of September, being in the latitude of 40° 22'S. and longitude 174° 29' W. and there not being any figns of land, with a heavy fea from the westward, and strong gales, I wore, and flood back to the northward, fearing that we might receive fuch damage in our fails and rigging, as would hinder the profecution of the voyage.

Saturday 2.

On the next day, there being strong gales to the westward, I brought to, with the ship's head to the northward; but in the morning of the 3d, the wind being more moderate, we loofened the reef of the main-fail, fet the top-fails, and plied to the westward.

Tuesday 19.

Sunday 24.

Sunday 3.

We continued our course till the 19th, when our latitude being 20° and our longitude 159° 29', we observed the variation to be 8° 32' E. On the 24th, being in latitude 33° 18', longitude 162° 51', we observed a small piece of sea weed, and a piece of wood covered with barnacles: the variation here was 10° 48' E.

Wednes. 27.

On the 27th, being in latitude 28° 59', longitude 169° 5', we faw a feal afleep upon the water, and feveral bunches of fea Thursday 28. weed. The next day we saw more sea weed in bunches, and on the 29th, a bird, which we thought a land bird; it somewhat refembled a fnipe, but had a fhort bill. On the 1st of October, we faw birds innumerable, and another feal afleep upon the water; it is a general opinion that feals never go out of foundings, or far from land, but those that we faw in thefe

Friday 29.

October. Sunday 1.

these feas prove the contrary. Rock-weed is, however, a certain indication that land is not far distant. The next day, it being calm, we hoisted out the boat, to try whether there was a current, but found none. Our latitude was 37° 10', longitude 172° 54' W. On the 3d, being in latitude 36° 56', Tuefday : longitude 173° 27', we took up more fea-weed, and another piece of wood covered with barnacles. The next day we Wednes, s. faw two more feals, and a brown bird, about as big as a raven, with fome white feathers under the wing. Mr. Gore told us, that birds of this kind were feen in great numbers about Falkland's Islands, and our people gave them the name of Port-Egmont hens.

1769. October. Monday 2.

On the 5th, we thought the water changed colour, but Thursday 5. upon casting the lead, had no ground with 180 fathom. In the evening of this day, the variation was 12° 50' E. and while we were going nine leagues it encreased to 14° 2'.

On the next day, Friday, October the 6th, we faw land from Friday 6. the mast-head, bearing W. by N. and stood directly for it; in the evening it could just be discerned from the deck, and appeared large. The variation this day was, by azimuth and amplitude, 15° 4' E. and by observation made of the fun and moon, the longitude of the ship appeared to be 180° 55' W. and by the medium of this and fubsequent obfervations, there appeared to be an error in the ship's account of longitude during her run from Otaheite of 3° 16', she being fo much to the westward of the longitude resulting from the log. At midnight, I brought to and founded, but had no ground with one hundred and feventy fathom.

On the 7th, it fell calm, we therefore approached the land Saturday 7. flowly, and in the afternoon, when a breeze fprung up, we were still distant feven or eight leagues. It appeared still larger as it was more distinctly seen, with four or five ranges

October. Saturday 7.

Sunday 8.

of hills, rifing one over the other, and a chain of mountains above all, which appeared to be of an enormous height. This land became the fubject of much eager conversation: but the general opinion feemed to be that we had found the Terra australis incognita. About five o'clock we faw the opening of a bay, which feemed to run pretty far inland, upon which we hauled our wind and flood in for it; we also faw fmoke afcending from different places on shore. When night came on, however, we kept plying off and on till day-light, when we found ourselves to the leeward of the bay, the wind being at north: we could now perceive that the hills were cloathed with wood, and that fome of the trees in the valleys were very large. By noon we fetched in with the fouth west point; but not being able to weather it, tacked and flood off: at this time we faw feveral canoes flanding cross the bay, which in a little time made to shore, without feeming to take the least notice of the ship; we also saw some houses, which appeared to be small, but neat; and near one of them a confiderable number of the people collected together, who were fitting upon the beach, and who, we thought, were the fame that we had feen in the canoes. Upon a fmall peninfula, at the north east head, we could plainly perceive a pretty high and regular paling, which inclosed the whole top of a hill; this was also the subject of much speculation, fome supposing it to be a park of deer, others an inclofure for oxen and sheep. About four o'clock in the afternoon, we anchored on the north west side of the bay, before the entrance of a fmall river, in ten fathom water, with a fine fandy bottom, and at about half a league from the shore. The fides of the bay are white cliffs of a great height; the middle is low land, with hills gradually rifing behind, one towering above another, and terminating in the chain of mountains which appeared to be far inland.

Sunday 8.

In the evening I went on shore, accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, with the pinnace and yawl, and a party of men. We landed abreast of the ship, on the east side of the river, which was here about forty yards broad; but feeing fome natives on the west side whom I wished to speak with, and finding the river not fordable, I ordered the yawl in to carry us over, and left the pinnace at the entrance. When we came near the place where the people were affembled, they all ran away; however, we landed, and leaving four boys to take care of the yawl, we walked up to fome huts which were about two or three hundred yards from the water-fide. When we had got fome diffance from the boat, four men, armed with long lances, rushed out of the woods, and running up to attack the boat, would certainly have cut her off, if the people in the pinnace had not discovered them, and called to the boys to drop down the ftream: the boys inflantly obeyed; but being closely purfued by the Indians, the Cockfwain of the pinnace, who had the charge of the boats, fired a musquet over their heads; at this they stopped and looked round them, but in a few minutes renewed the purfuit, brandishing their lances in a threatening manner: the Cockfwain then fired a fecond musquet over their heads, but of this they took no notice; and one of them lifting up his fpear to dart it at the boat, another piece was fired, which fhot him dead. When he fell, the other three flood motionless for some minutes, as if petrified with astonishment; as foon as they recovered, they went back, dragging after themthe dead body, which however they foon left, that it might not incumber their flight. At the report of the first musquet we drew together, having straggled to a little distance from each other, and made the best of our way back to the boat; and croffing the river, we foon faw the Indian lying dead upon the ground. Upon examining the body, we found

October. Sunday 8. that he had been shot through the heart: he was a man of the middle size and stature; his complexion was brown, but not very dark; and one side of his face was tattowed in spiral lines of a very regular sigure: he was covered with a sine cloth, of a manufacture altogether new to us, and it was tied on exactly according to the representation in Valentyn's Account of Abel Tasman's Voyage, vol. iii. part 2. page 50. his hair also was tied in a knot on the top of his head, but had no feather in it. We returned immediately to the ship, where we could hear the people on shore talking with great earnessness, and in a very loud tone, probably about what had happened, and what should be done.

Monday 9.

In the morning, we faw feveral of the natives where they had been feen the night before, and fome walking with a quick pace towards the place where we had landed, most of them unarmed; but three or four with long pikes in their hands. As I was defirous to establish an intercourse with them, I ordered three boats to be manned with feamen and marines, and proceeded towards the shore, accompanied by Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, the other Gentlemen, and Tupia; about fifty of them feemed to wait for our landing, on the opposite side of the river, which we thought a sign of fear, and feated themselves upon the ground: at first, therefore, myfelf, with only Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and Tupia, landed from the little boat, and advanced towards them; but we had not proceeded many paces before they all flarted up, and every man produced either a long pike, or a fniall weapon of green Tale, extremely well polished, about a foot long, and thick enough to weigh four or five pounds: Tupia called to them in the language of Otaheite; but they answered only by flourishing their weapons, and making figns to us to depart; a musquet was then fired wide of them, and the ball ftruck the water, the river being ftill between us:

287

Monday 9.

they faw the effect, and defisted from their threats; but we thought it prudent to retreat till the marines could be landed. This was foon done; and they marched, with a jack carried before them, to a little bank, about fifty yards from the water-fide; here they were drawn up, and I again advanced, with Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander; Tupia, Mr. Green, and Mr. Monkhouse, being with us. Tupia was again directed to fpeak to them, and it was with great pleasure that we perceived he was perfectly understood, he and the natives fpeaking only different dialects of the same language. He told them that we wanted provision and water, and would give them iron in exchange, the properties of which he explained as well as he was able. They were willing to trade, and defired that we would come over to them for that purpose: to this we confented, provided they would lay by their arms; which, however, they could by no means be perfuaded to do. During this conversation, Tupia warned us to be upon our guard, for that they were not our friends: we then pressed them in our turn to come over to us; and at last one of them stripped himself, and swam over without his arms: he was almost immediately followed by two more, and foon after by most of the rest, to the number of twenty or thirty; but these brought their arms with them. We made them all prefents of iron and beads; but they feemed to fet little value upon either, particularly the iron, not having the least idea of its use; so that we got nothing in return but a few feathers: they offered indeed to exchange their arms for ours, and, when we refused, made many attempts to fnatch them out of our hands. As foon as they came over, Tupia repeated his declaration, that they were not our friends, and again warned us to be upon our guard; their attempts to fnatch our weapons, therefore, did not fucceed; and we gave them to understand by Tupia, that we should

October.
Monday 9.

be obliged to kill them if they offered any farther violence. In a few minutes, however, Mr. Green happening to turn about, one of them fnatched away his hanger, and retiring to a little distance, waved it round his head, with a shout of exultation: the rest now began to be extremely insolent, and we faw more coming to join them from the opposite side of the river. It was therefore become necessary to repress them, and Mr. Banks fired at the man who had taken the hanger with small shot, at the distance of about fifteen yards: when the flot flruck him, he ceased his cry; but instead of returning the hanger, continued to flourish it over his head, at the fame time flowly retreating to a greater diffance. Mr. Monkhouse seeing this, fired at him with ball, and he instantly dropped. Upon this the main body, who had retired to a rock in the middle of the river upon the first discharge, began to return; two that were near to the man who had been killed, ran up to the body, one feized his weapon of green Tale, and the other endeavoured to fecure the hanger, which Mr. Monkhouse had but just time to prevent. As all that had retired to the rock were now advancing, three of us difcharged our pieces, loaded only with small shot, upon which they fwam back for the shore; and we perceived, upon their landing, that two or three of them were wounded. They retired flowly up the country, and we reimbarked in our boats.

As we had unhappily experienced that nothing was to be done with these people at this place, and finding the water in the river to be salt, I proceeded in the boats round the head of the bay in search of fresh water, and with a design, if possible, to surprise some of the natives, and take them on board, where by kind treatment and presents I might obtain their friendship, and by their means establish an amicable correspondence with their countrymen.

To my great regret, I found no place where I could land, a dangerous furf every where beating upon the shore; but I faw two canoes coming in from the fea, one under fail, and the other worked with paddles. I thought this a favourable opportunity to get fome of the people into my possession without mischief, as those in the canoe were probably fishermen and without arms, and I had three boats full of men. I therefore disposed the boats so as most effectually to intercept them in their way to the shore; the people in the canoe that was paddled perceived us fo foon, that by making to the nearest land with their utmost strength, they escaped us; the other failed on till she was in the midst of us, without difcerning what we were; but the moment fhe difcovered us, the people on board ftruck their fail, and took to their paddles, which they plied fo brifkly that she out-ran the boat. They were however within hearing, and Tupia called out to them to come along fide, and promifed for us that they should come to no hurt: they chose, however, rather to trust to their paddles than our promifes, and continued to make from us with all their power. I then ordered a musquet to be fired over their heads, as the least exceptionable expedient to accomplish my defign, hoping it would either make them furrender or leap into the water. Upon the discharge of the piece, they ceased paddling; and all of them, being seven in number, began to ftrip, as we imagined to jump overboard; but it happened otherwife. They immediately formed a refolution not to fly, but to fight; and when the boat came up, they began the attack with their paddles, and with stones and other offensive weapons that were in the boat, fo vigoroufly, that we were obliged to fire upon them in our own defence: four were unhappily killed, and the other three who were boys, the eldest about nineteen, and the youngest about eleven, instantly leaped into the water;

October. Monday 9.

the eldest swam with great vigour, and refisted the attempts of our people to take him into the boat by every effort that he could make: he was however at last overpowered, and the other two were taken up with lefs difficulty. I am confcious that the feeling of every reader of humanity will cenfure me for having fired upon these unhappy people, and it is impossible that, upon a calm review, I should approve it myfelf. They certainly did not deferve death for not chufing to confide in my promifes; or not confenting to come on board my boat, even if they had apprehended no danger; but the nature of my fervice required me to obtain a knowlege of their country, which I could no otherwise effect than by forcing my way into it in a hoftile manner, or gaining admission through the confidence and good-will of the people. I had already tried the power of prefents without effect; and I was now prompted, by my defire to avoid further hoftilities, to get fome of them on board, as the only method left of convincing them that we intended them no harm, and had it in our power to contribute to their gratification and convenience. Thus far my intentions certainly were not criminal; and though in the contest, which I had not the least reason to expect, our victory might have been complete without fo great an expence of life; yet in fuch fituations, when the command to fire has been given, no man can restrain its excess, or prescribe its effect.

As foon as the poor wretches whom we had taken out of the water were in the boat, they fquatted down, expecting no doubt infantly to be put to death: we made hafte to convince them of the contrary, by every method in our power; we furnished them with clothes, and gave them every other testimony of kindness that could remove their fears and engage their good-will. Those who are acquainted with human nature will not wonder, that the sudden joy of these

291

young favages at being unexpectedly delivered from the fear of death, and kindly treated by those whom they supposed would have been their inflant executioners, furmounted their concern for the friends they had loft, and was strongly expressed in their countenances and behaviour. Before we reached the ship, their suspicions and fears being wholly removed, they appeared to be not only reconciled to their fituation but in high fpirits, and upon being offered fome bread when they came on board, they devoured it with a voracious appetite. They answered and asked many queftions, with great appearance of pleasure and curiofity; and when our dinner came, they expressed an inclination to taste every thing that they faw: they feemed best pleased with the falt pork, though we had other provisions upon the table. At fun-fet, they eat another meal with great eagerness, each devouring a large quantity of bread, and drinking above a quart of water. We then made them beds upon the lockers, and they went to fleep with great feeming content. In the night, however, the tumult of their minds having fubfided, and given way to reflection, they fighed often and loud. Tupia, who was always upon the watch to comfort them, got up, and by foothing and encouragement made them not only easy but cheerful; their cheerfulness was encouraged fo that they fung a fong with a degree of taste that surprised us: the tune was folemn and flow, like those of our Pfalms, containing many notes and femitones. Their countenances were intelligent and expressive, and the middlemost, who feemed to be about fifteen, had an openness in his aspect, and an ease in his deportment which were very striking: we found that the two eldest were brothers, and that their names were Taahourange and Koikerange; the name of the youngest was MARAGOVETE. As we were returning to the ship, after having taken these boys into the boat, we

1769: October. picked up a large piece of pummice stone floating upon the water; a fure sign that there either is, or has been a volcano in this neighbourhood.

Tuesday 10.

In the morning, they all feemed to be cheerful, and eat another enormous meal; after this we dreffed them, and adorned them with bracelets, anclets, and necklaces, after their own fashion, and the boat being hoisted out, they were told that we were going to fet them ashore: this produced a transport of joy; but upon perceiving that we made towards our first landing-place near the river, their countenances changed, and they entreated with great earnestness that they might not be fet ashore at that place, because they faid, it was inhabited by their enemies, who would kill them and eat them. This was a great disappointment to me; because I hoped the report and appearance of the boys would procure a favourable reception for ourfelves. I had already fent an officer on shore with the marines and a party of men to cut wood, and I was determined to land near the place: not however to abandon the boys, if, when we got ashore, they should be unwilling to leave us; but to fend a boat with them in the evening to that part of the bay to which they pointed, and which they called their home. Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander and Tupia were with me, and upon our landing with the boys, and croffing the river, they feemed at first to be unwilling to leave us; but at length they fuddenly changed their mind, and, though not without a manifest flruggle, and fome tears, they took their leave: when they were gone, we proceeded along a fwamp, with a defign to fhoot fome ducks, of which we faw great plenty, and four of the marines attended us, walking abreaft of us upon a bank that overlooked the country. After we had advanced about a mile, these men called out to us and told us, that a large body of the Indians was in fight, and advancing at a

Tuesday 10.

great rate. Upon receiving this intelligence, we drew together, and resolved to make the best of our way to the boats; we had fearcely begun to put this into execution, when the three Indian boys flarted fuddenly from fome bushes, where they had concealed themselves, and again. claimed our protection: we readily received them, and repairing to the beach as the clearest place, we walked briskly towards the boats. The Indians were in two bodies; one ran along the bank which had been quitted by the marines, the other fetched a compass by the swamp so that we could not see them: when they perceived that we had formed into one body, they flackened their pace; but still followed us in a gentle walk: that they flackened their pace, was for us, as well as for them, a fortunate circumstance; for when we came to the side of the river, where we expected to find the boats that were to carry us over to the wooders, we found the pinnace at least a mile from her station, having been fent to pick up a bird which had been shot by the officer on shore, and the little boat was obliged to make three trips before we could all get over to the rest of the party. As soon as we were drawn up on the other fide, the Indians came down, not in a body as we expected, but by two or three at a time, all armed, and in a fhort time their number increased to about two hundred: as we now despaired of making peace with them, seeing that the dread of our fmall arms did not keep them at a distance. and that the ship was too far off to reach the place with a thot, we resolved to re-imbark, left our stay should imbroil us in another quarrel, and cost more of the Indians their lives. We therefore advanced towards the pinnace which was now returning, when one of the boys fuddenly cried. out, that his uncle was among the people who had marched down to us, and defired us to flay and talk with them: wecomplied, and a parley immediately commenced between

1769. October. Tuesday 10.

them and Tupia; during which the boys held up every thing we had given them as tokens of our kindness and liberality; but neither would either of the boys fwim over to them, or any of them to the boys. The body of the man who had been killed the day before, still lay exposed upon the beach; the boys feeing it lie very near us, went up to it, and covered it with some of the clothes that we had given them; and foon after a fingle man, unarmed, who proved to be the uncle of Maragovete, the youngest of the boys, fwam over to us, bringing in his hand a green branch, which we fupposed, as well here as at Otaheite, to be an emblem of peace. We received his branch by the hands of Tupia, to whom he gave it, and made him many prefents; we also invited him to go on board the ship, but he declined it; we therefore left him, and expected that his nephew, and the two other young Indians would have flaid with him, but to our great furprize, they chose rather to go with us. As foon as we had retired, he went and gathered another green branch, and with this in his hand, he approached the dead body which the youth had covered with part of his clothes, walking fideways, with many ceremonies, and then throwing it towards him. When this was done, he returned to his companions, who had fat down upon the fand to observe the issue of his negotiation: they immediately gathered round him, and continued in a body above an hour, without feeming to take any farther notice of us. We were more curious than they, and observing them with our glasses from on board the ship, we saw some of them cross the river upon a kind of raft, or catamarine, and four of them carry off the dead body which had been covered by the boy, and over which his uncle had performed the ceremony of the branch, upon a kind of bier, between four men: the other body was fill fuffered to remain where it had been first left.

295

After dinner, I directed Tupia to ask the boys, if they had now any objection to going ashore, where we had left their uncle, the body having been carried off, which we underflood was a ratification of peace: they faid, they had not; and the boat being ordered, they went into it with great alacrity: when the boat, in which I had fent two midshipmen, came to land, they went willingly ashore; but soon after she put off, they returned to the rocks, and wading into the water, earneftly entreated to be taken on board again; but the people in the boat, having politive orders to leave them, could not comply. We were very attentive to what happened one fhore, and keeping a conflant watch with our glaffes, we faw a man pass the river upon another rast, and setch them to a place where forty or fifty of the natives were assembled, who closed round them, and continued in the same place till funfet: upon looking again, when we faw them in motion, we could plainly diffinguish our three prisoners, who separated themselves from the rest, came down to the beach, and having waved their hands three times towards the ship, rannimbly back and joined their companions, who walked leifurely away towards that part which the boys had pointed to as their dwelling-place; we had therefore the greatest reason to believe that no mischief would happen to them, especially as we perceived that they went off in the clotheswe had given them.

After it was dark, loud voices were heard on fhore in the bottom of the bay as usual, of which we could never learn the meaning.

CHAP. II.

A Description of Poverty Bay, and the Face of the adjacent Country. The Range from thence to Cape Turnagain, and back to Tolaga; with some Account of the People and the Country, and several Incidents that happened on that Part of the Coast.

1769. October. Wednes. 11.

THE next morning, at fix o'clock, we weighed, and flood away from this unformation. away from this unfortunate and inhospitable place, to which I gave the name of Poverty BAY, and which by the natives is called TAONEROA or Long Sand, as it did not afford us a fingle article that we wanted except a little wood. It lies in latitude 38° 42'S. and longitude 181° 36' W.; it is in the form of an horse-shoe, and is known by an island lying close under the north east point: the two points which form the entrance are high, with fleep white cliffs, and lie a league and a half or two leagues from each other, N.E. by E. and S. W. by W.: the depth of water in the bay is from twelve to five fathom, with a fandy bottom and good anchorage; but the fituation is open to the wind between the fouth and east: boats can go in and out of the river at any time of the tide in fine weather; but as there is a bar at the entrance, no boat can go either in or out when the fea runs high: the best place to attempt it, is on the north cast side, and it is there practicable when it is not fo in any other part. The shore of the bay, a little within its entrance, is a low flat fand; behind which, at a small distance, the face of the country is finely diversified by hills and valleys, all clothed with wood, and covered with verdure. The country also appears to be well inhabited, especially in the valleys leading up from the bay, where we daily saw smoke rising in clouds one behind another to a great distance, till the view terminated in mountains of a stupendous height.

The fouth west point of the bay I named Young Nick's Head, after Nicholas Young, the boy who first saw the land; at noon, it bore N.W. by W. distant about three or four leagues, and we were then about three miles from the shore. The main land extended from N.E. by N. to south, and I proposed to follow the direction of the coast to the southward as far as the latitude of 40 or 41; and then, if I met with no encouragement to proceed farther, to return to the northward.

In the afternoon we lay becalmed, which the people on fhore perceiving, feveral canoes put off, and came within less than a quarter of a mile of the vessel; but could not be perfuaded to come nearer, though Tupia exerted all the powers of his lungs and his eloquence upon the occasion, thouting, and promifing that they should not be hurt. Another canoe was now feen coming from Poverty Bay, with only four people on board, one of whom we well rementbered to have feen in our first interview upon the rock. This canoe, without flopping or taking the least notice of the others, came directly alongfide of the fhip, and with very little perfuasion, we got the Indians on board. Their example was foon followed by the rest, and we had about us seven canoes, and about fifty men. We made them all prefents with a liberal hand; notwithstanding which, they were so defirous to have more of our commodities, that they fold us every thing they had, even the clothes from their backs, and the paddles from their boats. There were but two weapons VOL. II. Qq among

1769. October. Wednes. 11. among them, these were the instruments of green tale, which were shaped somewhat like a pointed battledore, with a short handle and sharp edges; they were called *Patoo-Patoo*, and were well contrived for close-fighting, as they would certainly split the thickest scull at a single blow.

When these people had recovered from the first impressions of fear, which notwithstanding their resolution in coming on board, had manifestly thrown them into some confusion, we enquired after our poor boys. The man who first came on board immediately answered, that they were undurt and at home; adding, that he had been induced to venture on board by the account which they had given him of the kindness with which they had been treated, and the wonders that were contained in the ship.

While they were on board they shewed every fign of friendship, and invited us very cordially to go back to our old bay, or to a small cove which they pointed out, that was not quite so far off; but I chose rather to prosecute my discoveries than go back, having reason to hope that I should find a better harbour than any I had yet seen.

About an hour before fun-fet, the canoes put off from the ship with the few paddles they had referved, which were scarcely sufficient to set them on shore; but by some means or other three of their people were left behind: as soon as we discovered it, we hailed them; but not one of them would return to take them on board: this greatly surprised us; but we were surprised still more to observe that the deserted Indians did not seem at all uneasy at their situation, but entertained us with dancing and singing after their manner, eat their suppers, and went quietly to bed.

A light breeze fpringing up foon after it was dark, we fleered along the shore under an easy fail till midnight, and then brought to, foon after which it fell calm; we were now fome leagues distant from the place where the canoes had left us, and at day-break, when the Indians perceived it, they were feized with confernation and terror, and lamented their fituation in loud complaints, with gestures of despair and many tears. Tupia, with great difficulty, pacified them; and about feven o'clock in the morning, a light breeze Thursday 12. fpringing up, we continued to stand fouth west along the shore. Fortunately for our poor Indians, two canoes came off about this time, and made towards the flip: they flopped. however, at a little distance, and seemed unwilling to trust themselves nearer. Our Indians were greatly agitated in this flate of uncertainty, and urged their fellows to come alongfide of the ship, both by their voice and gestures, with the utmost eagerness and impatience. Tupia interpreted what they faid, and we were much furprifed to find, that, among other arguments, they affured the people in the canoes, we did not eat men. We now began feriously to believe that this horrid custom prevailed among them; for what the boys had faid, we confidered as a mere hyperbolical expression of their fear. One of the canoes, at length, ventured to come under the ship's side; and an old man came on board, who feemed to be a Chief from the finery of his garment, and the fuperiority of his weapon, which was a Patoo-Patoo, made of bone, that, as he faid, had belonged to a whale. He staid on board but a short time, and when he went away, he took with him our guefts, very much to the fatisfaction both of them and us.

At the time when we failed, we were abreast of a point, from which the land trends S.S.W. and which, on account 1769. Chober. I hursday 12.

of its figure, I called GAPE TABLE. This point lies fever leagues to the fouthward of Poverty Bay, in latitude 39° 7′S. and longitude 181° 36′ W.: it is of a confiderable height, makes in a fharp angle, and appears to be quite flat at the top.

In steering along the shore to the southward of the Cape, at the distance of two or three miles, our soundings were from twenty to thirty fathom, having a chain of rocks between us and the shore, which appeared at different heights above the water.

At noon, Cape Table bore N. 20 E. distant about four

leagues, and a fmall island, which was the fouthermost land in fight, bore S. 70 W. at the distance of about three miles. This island, which the natives call Teahowray, I named the Island of Portland, from its very great resemblance to Portland in the English Channel: it lies about a mile from a point on the main; but there appears to be a ridge of rocks, extending nearly, if not quite, from one to the other. N. 57 E. two miles from the south point of Portland, lies a

funken rock, upon which the fea breaks with great violence. We paffed between this rock and the land, having from

Island of Portland.

In failing along the shore, we saw the natives assembled in great numbers as well upon Portland Island as the main: we could also distinguish several spots of ground that were cultivated; some seemed to be fresh turned up, and lay in surrows like ploughed land, and some had plants upon them in different stages of their growth. We saw also in two places, high rails upon the ridges of hills, like what we had seen upon the peninsula at the north east head of Poverty bay: as they were ranged in lines only, and not so as to en-

feventeen to twenty fathom.

close an area, we could not guess at their use, and therefore supposed they might be the work of superstition.

October.
Thursday 12.

About noon another canoe appeared, in which were four men; fhe came within about a quarter of a mile of us, where the people on board feemed to perform divers ceremonies: one of them, who was in the bow, fometimes feemed to afk and to offer peace, and fometimes to threaten war, by brandishing a weapon that he held in his hand: fometimes also he danced, and fometimes he fung. Tupia talked much to him, but could not perfuade him to come to the ship.

Between one and two o'clock we discovered land to the westward of Portland, extending to the southward as far as we could see; and as the ship was hauling round the south end of the island, she suddenly fell into shoal water and broken ground: we had indeed always seven fathom or more, but the soundings were never twice the same, jumping at once from seven fathom to cleven; in a short time, however, we got clear of all danger, and had again deep water under us.

At this time the island lay within a mile of us, making in white cliffs, and a long spit of low land running from it towards the main. On the sides of these cliffs fat vast numbers of people, looking at us with a fixed attention, and it is probable that they perceived some appearance of hurry and confusion on board, and some irregularity in the working of the ship, while we were getting clear of the shallow water and broken ground, from which they might infer that we were alarmed or in distress; we thought that they wished to take advantage of our situation, for sive canoes were put off with the utmost expedition, full of men, and well armed: they came so near, and shewed so hostile a disposition by shouting, brandishing their lances, and using threatening gestures,



geflures, that we were in some pain for our small boat, which was still employed in sounding: a musket was therefore fired over them, but finding it did them no harm, they seemed rather to be provoked than intimidated, and I therefore fired a four pounder, charged with grape-shot, wide of them: this had a better effect; upon the report of the piece they all rose up and shouted, but instead of continuing the chace, drew altogether, and after a short consultation, went quietly away.

Having got round Portland, we hauled in for the land N. W. having a gentle breeze at N. E. which about five o'clock died away, and obliged us to anchor; we had one and twenty fathom, with a fine fandy bottom: the fouth point of Portland bore S. E. ½ S. diftant about two leagues, and a low point on the main bore N. ½ E.: in the fame direction with this low point, there runs a deep bay, behind the land of which Cape Table is the extremity, fo as to make this land a peninfula, leaving only a low narrow neck between that and the main. Of this peninfula, which the natives call Terakaco, Cape Table is the north point, and Portland the fouth.

While we lay at anchor, two more canoes came off to us, one armed, and the other a fmall fishing-boat, with only four men in her; they came so near that they entered into conversation with Tupia; they answered all the questions that he asked them with great civility, but could not be perfuaded to come on board; they came near enough, however, to receive several presents that were thrown to them from the ship, with which they seemed much pleased, and went away. During the night many fires were kept upon shore, probably to shew us that the inhabitants were too much upon their guard to be surprized.

About five o'clock in the morning of the 13th, a breeze fpringing up northerly, we weighed, and fleered in for the land. The shore here forms a large bay, of which Portland is the north east point, and the bay that runs behind Cape Table an arm. This arm I had a great inclination to examine, because there appeared to be fafe anchorage in it, but not being fure of that, and the wind being right an end, I was unwilling to fpare the time. Four and twenty fathom was the greatest depth within Portland, but the ground was every where clear. The land near the shore is of a moderate height, with white cliffs and fandy beaches; within, it rifes into mountains, and upon the whole the furface is hilly, for the most part covered with wood, and to appearance pleasant and fertile. In the morning nine canoes came after the ship, but whether with peaceable or hostile intentions we could not tell, for we foon left them behind us.

In the evening we flood in for a place that had the appearance of an opening, but found no harbour; we therefore flood out again, and were foon followed by a large canoe, with eighteen or twenty men, all armed, who, though they could not reach us, shouted defiance, and brandished their weapons, with many gestures of menace and insult.

In the morning we had a view of the mountains inland, Saturday 14. upon which the fnow was fill lying: the country near the shore was low and unfit for culture, but in one place we perceived a patch of fomewhat yellow, which had greatly the appearance of a corn field, yet was probably nothing more than fome dead flaggs, which are not uncommon in fwampy places: at fome distance we faw groves of trees, which appeared high and tapering, and being not above two leagues from the fouth west cod of the great bay, in which we had been coasting for the two last days, I hoisted out the pinnace

4

October. Saturday 14.

and long-boat to fearch for fresh water; but just as they were about to put off, we faw feveral boats full of people coming from the fhore, and therefore I did not think it fafe for them to leave the ship. About ten o'clock, five of these boats having drawn together, as if to hold a confultation, made towards the ship, having on board between eighty and ninety men, and four more followed at fome distance, as if to fustain the attack: when the first five came within about a hundred yards of the ship, they began to sing their war fong, and brandishing their pikes, prepared for an engagement. We had now no time to lose, for if we could not prevent the attack, we should come under the unhappy necessity of using our fire-arms against them, which we were very defirous to avoid. Tupia was therefore ordered to acquaint them that we had weapons which, like thunder, would destroy them in a moment; that we would immediately convince them of their power by directing their effect fo that they should not be hurt; but that if they persisted in any hostile attempt, we should be obliged to use them for our defence: a four pounder, loaded with grape-shot, was then discharged wide of them, which produced the desired effect; the report, the flash, and above all, the shot, which spread very far in the water, fo intimidated them, that they began to paddle away with all their might: Tupia, however, calling after them, and affuring them that if they would come unarmed, they should be kindly received; the people in one of the boats put their arms on board of another, and came under the ship's stern; we made them several presents, and fhould certainly have prevailed upon them to come on board, if the other canoes had not come up, and again threatened us, by fhonting and brandishing their weapons: at this the people who had come to the ship unarmed, expressed great displeasure, and soon after they all went away.

In the afternoon we flood over to the fouth point of the bay, but not reaching it before it was dark, we flood off and on all night. At eight the next morning, being a-breast of Sunday 15. the point, feveral fishing boats came off to us, and fold us fome flinking fish: it was the best they had, and we were willing to trade with them upon any terms: these people behaved very well, and we should have parted good friends if it had not been for a large canoe, with two and twenty armed men on board, which came boldly up along fide of the ship. We foon faw that this boat had nothing for traffick, yet we gave them two or three pieces of cloth, an article which they feemed very fond of. I observed that one man had a black skin thrown over him, somewhat resembling that of a bear, and being defirous to know what animal was its first owner, I offered him for it a piece of red baize, and he feemed greatly pleafed with the bargain, immediately pulling off the fkin, and holding it up in the boat; he would not, however, part with it till he had the cloth in his possession, and as there could be no transfer of property, if with equal caution I had infifted upon the fame condition, I ordered the cloth to be handed down to him, upon which, with amazing coolness, instead of sending up the skin, he began to pack up both that and the baize, which he had received as the purchase of it, in a basket, without paying the least regard to my demand or remonstrances, and foon after, with the fishing boats, put off from the ship; when they were at fome distance, they drew together, and after a short confultation returned; the sishermen offered more fish, which, though good for nothing, was purchased, and trade was again renewed. Among others who were placed over the ship's side to hand up what we bought, was little Tayeto, Tupia's boy; and one of the Indians, watching his opportunity, fuddenly feized him, and dragged him VOL. II. Rr down

1769. Ostober. Sunday 15.

down into the canoe; two of them held him down in the fore part of it, and the others, with great activity, paddled her off, the rest of the canoes following as fast as they could: upon this the marines, who were under arms upon deck, were ordered to fire. The shot was directed to that part of the canoe which was farthest from the boy, and rather wide of her, being willing rather to mifs the rowers than to hurt him: it happened, however, that one man dropped, upon which the others quitted their hold of the boy, who instantly leaped into the water, and fwam towards the ship; the large canoe immediately pulled round and followed him, but fome musquets, and a great gun being fired at her, she defifted from the pursuit. The ship being brought to, a boat was lowered, and the poor boy taken up unhurt, though for terrified that for a time he feemed to be deprived of his fenses. Some of the gentlemen who traced the canoes to shore with their glasses, faid, that they saw three men carried up. the beach, who appeared to be either dead or wholly difabled by their wounds.

To the cape off which this unhappy transaction happened, I gave the name of CAPE KIDNAPPERS. It lies in latitude 39° 43', and longitude 182° 24' W. and is rendered remarkable by two white rocks like hay flacks, and the high white cliffs on each fide. It lies S. W. by W. distant thirteen leagues from the ifle of Portland; and between them is the bay of which it is the fouth point, and which, in honour of Sir Edward Hawke, then First Lord of the Admiralty, I called HAWKE'S Hawke's Bay. BAY. We found in it from twenty-four to feven fathom, and good anchorage. From Cape Kidnappers the land trends S. S. W. and in this direction we made our run along the shore, keeping at about a league distance, with a steady breeze and clear weather.

¥769.

As foon as Tayeto recovered from his fright, he brought a fish to Tupia, and told him, that he intended it as an offering to his Eatua, or god, in gratitude for his escape; Tupia commended his piety, and ordered him to throw the fifh into the fea, which was accordingly done.

About two o'clock in the afternoon, we passed a small but high white island, lying close to the shore, upon which we faw many houses, boats, and people. The people we concluded to be fishers, because the island was totally barren; we faw feveral people also on shore, in a small bay upon the main, within the island. At eleven, we brought to till Monday 16. day-light, and then made fail to the fouthward, along the shore. About seven o'clock we past a high point of land, which lies S. S. W. twelve leagues from Cape Kidnappers: from this point the land trends three-fourths of a point more to the westward; at ten, we saw more land open to the southward, and at noon, the fouthermost land that was in fight, bore S. 39 W. distant eight or ten leagues, and a high bluff head, with yellowish cliffs, bore W. distant about two miles: the depth of water was thirty-two fathom.

In the afternoon we had a fresh breeze at west, and during the night variable light airs and calms: in the morning a Tuefday 17. gentle breeze fprung up between the N. W. and N. E. and having till now flood to the fouthward, without feeing any probability of meeting with a harbour, and the country manifefly altering for the worfe, I thought that flanding farther in that direction would be attended with no advantage, but on the contrary would be a loss of time that might be employed with a better prospect of fuccess in examining the coast to the northward; about one, therefore, in the afternoon, I tacked, and flood north, with a fresh breeze at west. The high bluff head, with vellowish cliffs, which we were

Rr 2

a-breaft

1769. October. Tuesday 17.

a-breast of at noon, I called Cape Turnagain, because here we turned back. It lies in latitude 40° 34' S. longitude 182° 55' W. distant eighteen leagues S. S. W. and S. S. W. ½ W. from Cape Kidnappers. The land between them is of a very unequal height; in fome places it is lofty next the fea with white cliffs, in others low, with fandy beaches: the face of the country is not fo well clothed with wood as it is about Hawke's bay, but looks more like our high downs in England: it is, however, to all appearance, well inhabited, for as we flood along the fliore, we faw feveral villages, not only in the vallies, but on the tops and fides of the hills, and fmoke in many other places. The ridge of mountains which has been mentioned before, extends to the fouthward farther than we could fee, and was then every where chequered with fnow. At night we faw two fires inland, fo very large, that we concluded they must have been made to clear the land for tillage; but however that be, they are a demonstration that the part of the country where they appeared is inhabited.

Wednef. 18.

On the 18th, at four o'clock in the morning, Cape Kidnappers bore N. 32 W. distant two leagues: in this situation we had sixty-two fathom, and when the Cape bore W. by N. distant three or four leagues, we had forty-sive fathom: in the mid-way between the isle of Portland and the Cape we had sixty-sive fathom. In the evening, being a-breast of the peninfula within Portland island, called Terakako, a canoe came off from that shore, and with much difficulty overtook the ship; there were on board sive people, two of whom appeared to be Chiefs, and the other three servants: the Chiefs, with very little invitation came on board, and ordered the rest to remain in their canoe. We treated them with great kindness, and they were not backward in expressing

Terakako.

309

their fatisfaction; they went down into the cabbin, and after a fhort time told us that they had determined not to go on shore till the next morning. As the sleeping on board was an honour which we neither expected nor defired. I remonstrated strongly against it, and told them, that on their account it would not be proper, as the ship would probably be at a great distance from where she was then, the next morning: they perfifted, however, in their refolution, and as I found it impossible to get rid of them without turning them by force out of the ship, I complied: as a proper precaution, however, I proposed to take their fervants also on board, and hoist their canoe into the ship; they made no objection, and this was accordingly done. The countenance of one of these Chiefs was the most open and ingenuous of all I have ever feen, and I very foon gave up every fuspicion of his having any finisher defign: they both examined every thing they faw with great curiofity and attention, and received very thankfully fuch little presents as we made them; neither of them, however, could be perfuaded either to eat or drink, but their fervants devoured every thing they could get with great voracity. We found that these men had heard of our kindness and liberality to the natives who had been on board before, yet we thought the confidence they placed in us, an extraordinary instance of their fortitude. At night I brought to till day-light, and then made fail; at feven in Thursday 19. the morning, I brought to again under Cape Table, and fent away our guests with their canoe, who expressed some furprife at feeing themselves so far from home, but landed a-breaft of the ship. At this time I saw other canoes putting off from the shore, but I stood away to the northward without waiting for their coming up.

About three, I passed a remarkable head land, which I called GABLE-END-FORELAND, from the very great likeness October.
Thursday 19.

of the white cliff at the point, to the gable-end of a house: it is not more remarkable for its figure, than for a rock which rises like a spire at a little distance. It lies from Cape Table N. 24 E. distant about twelve leagues. The shore between them forms a bay, within which lies Poverty bay, at the distance of four leagues from the head land, and eight from the Cape. At this place three canoes came off to us, and one man came on board; we gave him some trisles, and he soon returned to his boat, which, with all the rest, dropped a-stern.

Friday 20.

In the morning I made fail in shore, in order to look into two bays, which appeared about two leagues to the northward of the Foreland; the southermost I could not fetch, but I anchored in the other about eleven o'clock.

Into this bay we were invited by the people on board many canoes, who pointed to a place where they faid there was plenty of fresh water: I did not find so good a shelter from the sea as I expected, but the natives who came about us, appearing to be of a friendly disposition, I was determined to try whether I could not get some knowlege of the country here before I proceeded farther to the northward.

In one of the canoes that came about us as foon as we anchored, we faw two men, who by their habits appeared to be Chiefs: one of them was dreffed in a jacket, which was ornamented, after their manner, with dog's fkin; the jacket of the other was almost covered with small tusts of red feathers. These men I invited on board, and they entered the ship with very little hesitation: I gave each of them about four yards of linen, and a spike nail; with the linen they were much pleased, but seemed to set no value upon the nail. We perceived that they knew what had happened in Poverty bay, and we had therefore no reason to doubt but that they would

behave peaceably; however, for further fecurity, Tupia was ordered to tell them for what purpose we came thither, and to affure them that we would offer them no injury, if they offered none to us. In the mean time those who remained in the canoes traded with our people very fairly for what they happened to have with them: the Chiefs, who were old men, flaid with us till we had dined, and about two o'clock I put off with the boats, manned and armed, in order to go on shore in fearch of water, and the two Chiefs went into the boat with me. The afternoon was tempelluous, with much rain, and the furf every where ran fo high, that although we rowed almost round the bay, we found no place where we could land: I determined therefore to return to the ship, which being intimated to the Chiefs, they called to the people on fhore, and ordered a canoe to be fent off for themselves; this was accordingly done, and they left us. promifing to come on board again in the morning, and bring us some fish and sweet potatoes.

In the evening, the weather having become fair and moderate, the boats were again ordered out, and I landed, accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander. We were received with great expressions of friendship by the natives, who behaved with a scrupulous attention not to give offence. In particular, they took care not to appear in great bodies: one family, or the inhabitants of two or three houses only, were generally placed together, to the number of sisteen or twenty, consisting of men, women, and children. These little companies fat upon the ground, not advancing towards us, but inviting us to them, by a kind of beckon, moving one hand towards the breast. We made them several little presents; and in our walk round the bay found two small streams of fresh water. This convenience, and the friendly behaviour of the people, determined me to stay at least a

1769. October. day, that I might fill fome of my empty cafks, and give Mr. Banks an opportunity of examining the natural produce of the country.

Saturday 21.

In the morning of the 21st, I fent Lieutenant Gore on shore, to superintend the watering, with a strong party of men; and they were soon followed by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, with Tupia, Tayeto, and sour others.

The natives fat by our people, and feemed pleafed to obferve them; but did not intermix with them: they traded however, chiefly for cloth, and after a fhort time applied to their ordinary occupations, as if no stranger had been among them. In the forenoon, feveral of their boats went out a fishing, and at dinner time every one repaired to his respective dwelling; from which, after a certain time, he returned. These fair appearances encouraged Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander to range the bay with very little precaution, where they found many plants, and shot some birds of exquifite beauty. In their walk, they vifited feveral houses of the natives, and faw fomething of their manner of life; for they showed, without any referve, every thing which the Gentlemen defired to fee. They were fometimes found at their meals, which the approach of the strangers never interrupted. Their food at this feafon confifted of fish, with which, instead of bread, they eat the root of a kind of fern, very like that which grows upon our commons in England. These roots they scorch over the fire, and then beat with a flick, till the bark and dry outfide fall off; what remains is a foft fubflance, fomewhat clammy and fweet, not unpleafing to the tafte, but mixed with three or four times its quantity of strings and fibres, which are very difagreeable; these were fwallowed by fome, but fpit out by the far greater number, who had baskets under them to receive the rejected

- part of what had been chewed, which had an appearance very like that of tobacco in the fame flate. In other feafons they have certainly plenty of excellent vegetables; but no tame animals were feen among them except dogs, which were very fmall and ugly. Mr. Banks faw fome of their plantations, where the ground was as well broken down and tilled as even in the gardens of the most curious people among us: in these spots were sweet potatoes, coccos or eddas, which are well known and much esteemed both in the East and West Indies, and some gourds: the sweet potatoes were planted in fmall hills, fome ranged in rows, and others in quincunx, all laid by a line with the greatest regularity: the coccos were planted upon flat land, but none of them yet appeared above ground; and the gourds were fet in fmall hollows, or dishes, much as in England. These plantations were of different extent, from one or two acres to ten: taken together, there appeared to be from 150 to 200 acres in cultivation in the whole bay, though we never faw an hundred people. Each district was fenced in, generally with reeds, which were placed fo close together that there was scarcely room for a mouse to creep between.

The women were plain, and made themselves more so by painting their faces with red ocre and oil, which being generally fresh and wet upon their cheeks and foreheads, was easily transferred to the noses of those who thought sit to falute them; and that they were not wholly averse to such familiarity, the noses of several of our people strongly testified: they were, however, as great coquets as any of the most fashionable ladies in Europe, and the young ones as skittish as an unbroken silly: each of them wore a petticoat, under which there was a girdle, made of the blades of grass highly perfumed, and to the girdle was fastened a small bunch of the leaves of some fragrant plant, which served

October.
Saturday 21.

their modelly as its innermost veil. The faces of the men were not fo generally painted, yet we faw one whose whole body, and even his garments, were rubbed over with dry ocre, of which he kept a piece constantly in his hand, and was every minute renewing the decoration in one part or another, where he supposed it was become deficient. In perfonal delicacy they were not equal to our friends at Otaheite, for the coldness of the climate did not invite them so often to bathe; but we faw among them one inflance of cleanliness in which they exceeded them, and of which perhaps there is no example in any other Indian nation. Every house, or every little cluster of three or four houses, was furnished with a privy, fo that the ground was every where clean. The offals of their food, and other litter, were also piled up in regular dunghills, which probably they made use of at a proper time for manure.

In this decent article of civil economy they were beforehand with one of the most considerable nations of Europe, for I am credibly informed, that, till the year 1760, there was no fuch thing as a privy in Madrid, the metropolis of Spain, though it is plentifully fupplied with water. Before that time it was the univerfal practice to throw the ordure out of the windows, during the night, into the ftreet, where numbers of men were employed to remove it, with shovels, from the upper parts of the city to the lower, where it lay till it was dry, and was then carried away in carts, and deposited without the gates. His prefent Catholic Majesty, having determined to free his capital from so gross a nuisance, ordered, by proclamation, that the proprietor of every house should build a privy, and that finks, drains, and common-fewers should be made at the public expence. The Spaniards, though long accustomed to an arbitrary government, refented this proclamation with great spirit, as an infringe-

315

ment of the common rights of mankind, and made a vigorous flruggle against its being carried into execution. Every class devised some objection against it, but the physicians bid the fairest to interest the king in the preservation of the ancient privileges of his people; for they remonstrated that if the filth was not, as usual, thrown into the streets, a fatal fickness would probably ensue, because the putrescent particles of the air, which fuch filth attracted, would then be imbibed by the human body. But this expedient, with every other that could be thought of, proved unfuccefsful, and the popular difcontent then ran fo high that it was very near producing an infurrection; his majefty, however, at length prevailed, and Madrid is now as clear as most of the considerable cities in Europe. But many of the citizens, probably upon the principles advanced by their physicians, that heaps of filth prevent deleterious particles of air from fixing upon neighbouring fubstances, have, to keep their food wholefome, conftructed their privies by the kitchen fire.

In the evening, all our boats being employed in carrying the water on board, and Mr. Banks and his company finding it probable that they should be left on shore after it was dark, by which much time would be lost, which they were impatient to employ in putting the plants they had gathered in order, they applied to the Indians for a passage in one of their canoes: they immediately consented, and a canoe was launched for their use. They went all on board, being eight in number, but not being used to a vessel that required so even a balance, they unfortunately overfet her in the surf: no life however was lost, but it was thought advisable that half of them should wait for another turn. Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, Tupia, and Tayeto embarked again, and without any farther accident arrived safely at the ship, well pleased with the good-nature of their Indian friends, who cheer-

October.
Saturday 21.

fully undertook to carry them a fecond time, after having experienced how unfit a freight they were for fuch a veffel.

While these gentlemen were on shore, several of the natives went off to the ship, and trafficked, by exchanging their cloth for that of Otaheite: of this barter they were for sometime very fond, preferring the Indian cloth to that of Europe; but before night it decreased in its value sive hundred per cent. Many of these Indians I took on board, and shewed them the ship and her apparatus, at which they expressed equal satisfaction and assonishment.

Sunday 22.

As I found it exceedingly difficult to get water on board on account of the furf, I determined to flay no longer at this place; on the next morning therefore, about five o'clock, I weighed anchor and put to fea.

This bay, which is called by the natives Tegadoo, lies in the latitude of 38° 10′ S., but as it has nothing to recommend it, a description of it is unnecessary.

From this bay I intended to fland on to the northward, but the wind being right against me, I could make no way. While I was beating about to windward, fome of the natives came on board, and told me, that in a bay which lay a little to the fouthward, being the same that I could not fetch the day I put into Tegadoo, there was excellent water, where the boats might land without a furf. I thought it better therefore to put into this bay, where I might complete my water, and form farther connexions with the Indians, than to keep the fea. With this view I bore up for it, and fent in two boats, manned and armed, to examine the wateringplace, who confirming the report of the Indians at their return, I came to an anchor about one o'clock, in eleven fathom water, with a fine fandy bottom, the north point of the bay N. by E. and the fouth point S. E. The watering-place, which

which was in a fmall cove a little within the fouth point of the bay, bore S. by E. diftant about a mile. Many canoes came immediately off from the shore, and all traded very honeftly for Otaheite cloth and glass bottles, of which they were immoderately fond.

1769. October. Sunday 22.

In the afternoon of the 23d, as foon as the ship was moored, Monday 23. I went on shore to examine the watering-place, accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander: the boat landed in the cove. without the least furf; the water was excellent, and conveniently fituated; there was plenty of wood close to highwater mark, and the disposition of the people was in every respect such as we could wish.

Having, with Mr. Green, taken feveral observations of the fun and moon, the mean refult of them gave 180° 47' W. longitude; but, as all the observations made before exceeded thefe, I have laid down the coast from the mean of the whole. At noon, I took the fun's meridian altitude with an aftronomical quadrant, which was fet up at the wateringplace, and found the latitude to be 38° 22' 24".

On the 24th, early in the morning, I fent Lieutenant Gore Tueflay 24, on shore, to superintend the cutting of wood and filling of water, with a fufficient number of men for both purposes, and all the marines as a guard. After breakfast, I went on fhore myfelf, and continued there the whole day.

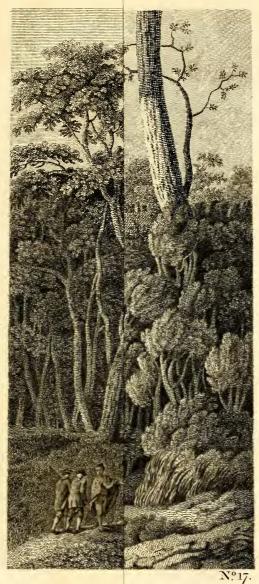
Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander also went on shore to gather plants, and in their walks faw feveral things worthy of notice. They met with many houses in the vallies that seemed to be wholly deferted, the people living on the ridges of the hills in a kind of fheds very flightly built. As they were advancing in one of these vallies, the hills on each side of which were very fleep, they were fuddenly flruck with the fight of a very extraordinary natural curiofity. It was a rock,

perforated

1769. Cctober. Tuefday 24. perforated through its whole fubflance, fo as to form a rude but flupendous arch or cavern, opening directly to the fea; this aperture was feventy-five feet long, twenty-feven broad, and five and forty high, commanding a view of the bay and the hills on the other fide, which were feen through it, and, opening at once upon the view, produced an effect far fuperior to any of the contrivances of art.

As they were returning to the watering-place in the evening, they met an old man, who detained them fome time by showing them the military exercises of the country with the lance and Patoo-Patoo, which are all the weapons in usc. The lance is from ten to fourteen feet long, made of a very hard wood, and fharp at both ends: the Patoo-Patoo has been described already, it is about a foot long, made of Talc or bone, with fharp edges, and used as a battle-axe. A post or flake was fet up as his enemy, to which he advanced with a most furious aspect, brandishing his lance, which he grasped with great firmness; when it was supposed to have been pierced by his lance, he ran at it with his Patoo-Patoo, and falling upon the upper end of it, which was to reprefent his adverfary's head, he laid on with great vehemence, flriking many blows, any one of which would probably have fplit the fcull of an ox. From our champion's falling upon his mock enemy with the Patoo-Patoo, after he was supposed to have been pierced with the lance, our Gentlemen inferred, that in the battles of this country there is no quarter.

This afternoon, we fet up the armourer's forge, to repair the braces of the tiller which had been broken, and went on getting our wood and water, without fuffering the leaft moleftation from the natives; who came down with different forts of fifh, which we purchased with cloth, beads, and glass bottles, as usual.



1769. Cctober. Tuefday 24. perforated through its whole fubflance, so as to form a rude but stupendous arch or cavern, opening directly to the sea; this aperture was seventy-sive feet long, twenty-seven broad, and sive and forty high, commanding a view of the bay and the hills on the other side, which were seen through it, and, opening at once upon the view, produced an effect far superior to any of the contrivances of art.

As they were returning to the watering-place in the evening, they met an old man, who detained them fome time by flowing them the military exercises of the country with the lance and Patoo-Patoo, which are all the weapons in use. The lance is from ten to fourteen feet long, made of a very hard wood, and fharp at both ends: the Patoo-Patoo has been described already, it is about a foot long, made of Talc or bone, with fharp edges, and used as a battle-axe. A post or flake was fet up as his enemy, to which he advanced with a most furious aspect, brandishing his lance, which he grasped with great firmness; when it was supposed to have been pierced by his lance, he ran at it with his Patoo-Patoo, and falling upon the upper end of it, which was to represent his adverfary's head, he laid on with great vehemence, striking many blows, any one of which would probably have fplit the fcull of an ox. From our champion's falling upon his mock enemy with the Patoo-Patoo, after he was supposed to have been pierced with the lance, our Gentlemen inferred, that in the battles of this country there is no quarter.

This afternoon, we fet up the armourer's forge, to repair the braces of the tiller which had been broken, and went on getting our wood and water, without fuffering the leaft moleftation from the natives; who came down with different forts of fifth, which we purchased with cloth, beads, and glass bottles, as usual.





On the 25th, Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went again on shore; and while they were fearching for plants, Tupia staid with the waterers: among other Indians who came down to them, was a prieft, with whom Tupia entered into a very learned conversation. In their notions of religion they feemed to agree very well, which is not often the cafe between learned divines on our fide of the ocean: Tupia, however, feemed to have the most knowlege, and he was listened to with great deference and attention by the other. In the course of this conversation, after the important points of divinity had been fettled, Tupia enquired if it was their practice to cat men, to which they answered in the affirmative; but faid that they eat only their enemies who were flain in battle.

On the 26th, it rained all day, fo that none of us could go Thursday 26, ashore; and very few of the Indians came either to the watering-place or the ship.

On the 27th, I went with Dr. Solander to examine the bot- Friday 27. tom of the bay; but though we went ashore at two places. we met with little worth notice. The people behaved very civilly, shewing us every thing that we expressed a desire to fee. Among other trifling curiofities which Dr. Solander purchased of them, was a boy's top, shaped exactly like those which children play with in England; and they made figns, that to make it spin it was to be whipped. Mr. Banks in the mean time went ashore at the watering-place, and climbed a hill which flood at a little diffance to fee a fence of poles, which we had observed from the ship, and which had been much the fubject of speculation. The hill was extremely fleep, and rendered almost inaccessible by wood; yet he reached the place, near which he found many houses that for fome reason had been deserted by their inhabitants.

October. Friday 27. The poles appeared to be about fixteen feet high; they were placed in two rows, with a fpace of about fix feet between them, and the poles in each row were about ten feet distant from each other. The lane between them was covered by slicks, that were fet up sloping towards each other from the top of the poles on each side, like the roof of a house. This rail-work, with a ditch that was parallel to it, was carried about a hundred yards down the hill in a kind of curve; but for what purpose we could not guess.

The Indians, at the watering-place, at our request, entertained us with their war-fong, in which the women joined, with the most horrid distortions of countenance, rolling their eyes, thrusting out their tongues, and often heaving loud and deep fighs; though all was done in very good time.

Saturday 23.

On the 28th, we went ashore upon an island that lies to the left hand of the entrance of the bay, where we faw the largest canoe that we had yet met with: she was fixty-eight feet and a half long, five broad, and three feet fix high; she had a sharp bottom, consisting of three trunks of trees hollowed, of which that in the middle was the longest: the fide planks were fixty-two feet long in one piece, and were not despicably carved in bas relief; the head also was adorned with carving still more richly. Upon this island there was a larger house than any we had yet feen; but it feemed unfinished and was full of chips. The wood work was squared fo even and fmooth, that we made no doubt of their having among them very sharp tools. The sides of the posts were carved in a mafterly stile, though after their whimsical taste, which feems to prefer fpiral lines and difforted faces: as these carved posts appeared to have been brought from some other place, fuch work is probably of great value among them.

At four o'clock in the morning of the 29th, having got on board our wood and water, and a large fupply of excellent celery, with which the country abounds, and which proved a powerful antifcorbutic, I unmoored and put to fea.

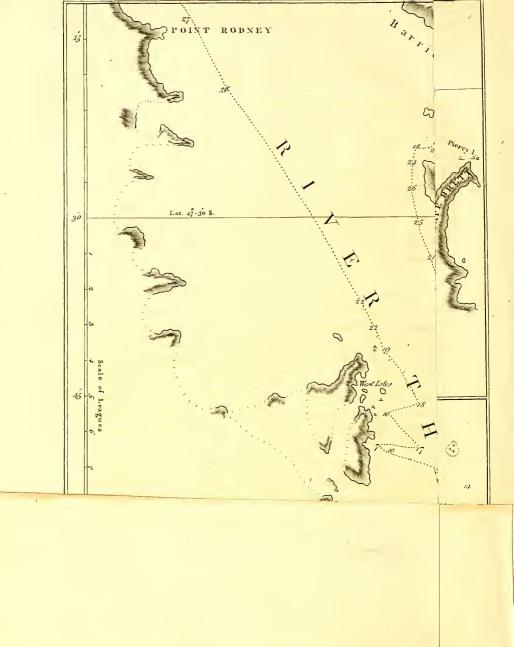
October. Sunday 29.

This bay is called by the natives Tolaga; it is moderately large, and has from feven to thirteen fathom, with a clean fandy bottom and good anchorage; and is sheltered from all winds except the north east. It lies in latitude 38° 22'S. and four leagues and an half to the north of Gable-end Foreland. On the fouth point lies a small but high island, so near the main as not to be distinguished from it. Close to the north end of the island, at the entrance into the bay, are two high rocks; one is round like a corn-flack, but the other is long, and perforated in feveral places fo that the openings appear like the arches of a bridge. Within these rocks is the cove where we cut wood, and filled our water-casks. Off the north point of the bay is a pretty high rocky island; and about a mile without it, are fome rocks and breakers. The variation of the compass here is 14° 31'E. and the tide flows at the full and change of the moon, about fix o'clock, and rifes and falls perpendicularly from five to fix feet: whether the flood comes from the fouthward or the northward I have not been able to determine.

We got nothing here by traffic but a few fish, and some sweet potatoes, except a few trisles, which we considered merely as curiosities. We saw no four-footed animals, nor the appearance of any, either tame or wild, except dogs and rats, and these were very scarce: the people cat the dogs, like our friends at Ctaheite; and adorn their garments with the skins, as we do ours with fur and ermine. I climbed many of the hills, hoping to get a view of the country, but I could see nothing from the top except higher Vol. II.

October. Sunday 29. hills, in a boundless fuccession. The ridges of these hills produce little besides fern; but the sides are most luxuriantly clothed with wood, and verdure of various kinds, with littleplantations intermixed. In the woods, we found trees of above twenty different forts, and carried specimens of each on board; but there was no body among us to whom they were not altogether unknown. The tree which we cut for firing was fomewhat like our maple, and yielded a whitifli gum. We found another fort of it of a deep yellow, which we thought might be useful in dying. We found also one cabbage tree, which we cut down for the cabbages. The country abounds with plants, and the woods with birds, in an endless variety, exquisitely beautiful, and of which none of us had the leaft knowlege. The foil both of the hills and valleys is light and fandy, and very fit for the production of all kinds of roots; though we faw none except fweet potatoes and yams.

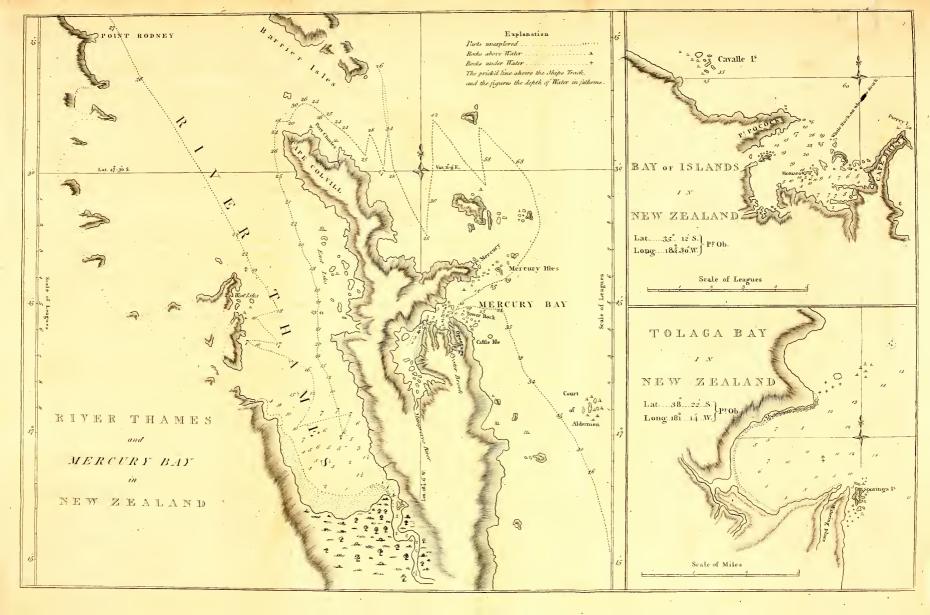




CHAP. III.

The Range from Tolaga to Mercury Bay, with an Account of many Incidents that happened both on board and ashore: A Description of several Views exhibited by the Country, and of the Heppahs, or fortified Villages of the Inhabitants.

N Monday the 30th, about half an hour after one o'clock, having made fail again to the northward for about ten hours, with a light breeze, I hauled round a fmall ifland Monday 30. which lay east one mile from the north east point of the land: from this place I found the land trend away N.W. by W. and W. N. W. as far as I could fee, this point being the eastermost land on the whole coast. I gave it the name of East CAPE, and I called the island that lies off it East Island; it is of a fmall circuit, high and round, and appears white and barren: the Cape is high, with white cliffs, and lies in latitude 37° 42′ 30″ S. and longitude 181° W. The land from Tolaga Bay to East Cape is of a moderate, but unequal height, forming feveral fmall bays, in which are fandy beaches: of the inland country we could not fee much, the weather being cloudy and hazey. The foundings were from twenty to thirty fathom at the distance of about a league from the shore. After we had rounded the Cape, we saw in our run along the shore a great number of villages, and much cultivated land; the country in general appeared more fertile than before, and was low near the fea, but hilly within. At fix in the evening, being four leagues to the westward of East Cape, we passed a bay which was first dif-



CHAP. III.

The Range from Tolaga to Mercury Bay, with an Account of many Incidents that happened both on board and ashore: A Description of several Views exhibited by the Country, and of the Heppahs, or fortified Villages of the Inhabitants.

N Monday the 30th, about half an hour after one o'clock, having made fail again to the northward for about ten hours, with a light breeze, I hauled round a fmall island Monday 30. which lay east one mile from the north cast point of the land: from this place I found the land trend away N.W. by W. and W. N. W. as far as I could fee, this point being the eastermost land on the whole coast. I gave it the name of East CAPE, and I called the island that lies off it East Island; it is of a fmall circuit, high and round, and appears white and barren: the Cape is high, with white cliffs, and lies in latitude 37° 42′ 30″ S. and longitude 181° W. The land from Tolaga Bay to East Cape is of a moderate, but unequal height, forming feveral fmall bays, in which are fandy beaches: of the inland country we could not fee much, the weather being cloudy and hazey. The foundings were from twenty to thirty fathom at the distance of about a league from the shore. After we had rounded the Cape, we faw in our run along the shore a great number of villages, and much cultivated land; the country in general appeared more fertile than before, and was low near the fea, but hilly within. At fix in the evening, being four leagues to the westward of East Cape, we passed a bay which was first dif-

October. Monday 30.

Tuefday 31.

covered by Lieutenant Hicks, and which therefore I called HICKS'S BAY. At eight in the evening, being eight leagues to the westward of the Cape, and three or four miles from the fhore, I shortened fail and brought to for the night, having at this time a fresh gale at S.S.E. and squally; but it soon became moderate, and at two in the morning, we made fail again to the S. W. as the land now trended; and at eight o'clock in the morning, faw land, which made like an island, bearing west, the south westermost part of the main bearing fouth west; and about nine no less than five canoes came off, in which were more than forty men, all armed with their country pikes and battle-axes, shouting, and threatening an attack: this gave us great uneafiness, and was indeed what we did not expect; for we hoped, that the report both of our power and clemency had fpread to a greater extent. When one of these canoes had almost reached the ship, another, of an immense size, the largest we had yet feen, crowded with people who were also armed, put off from the shore, and came up at a great rate; as it approached it received fignals from the canoe that was nearest to the ship, and we could see that it had fixteen paddles on a side, befide people that fat, and others that flood in a row from ftem to stern, being in all about fixty men: as they made directly to the ship, we were desirous of preventing an attack, by showing what we could do; and therefore fired a gun, loaded with grape-shot, ahead of them: this made them stop, but not retreat; a round shot was then fired over them, and upon feeing it fall, they feized their paddles and made towards the shore with fuch precipitation that they seemed fcarcely to allow themselves time to breathe. In the evening, three or four more canoes came off unarmed; but they would not venture within a musquet shot of the vessel. The cape, off which we had been threatened with hostilities, I called, called, from the hasty retreat of the enemy, Cape Runaway. It lies in latitude 37° 32′; longitude 181° 48′. In this day's run, we found that the land, which made like an island in the morning, bearing west, was so; and we gave it the name of White Island.

November. Wednes. 1.

At day-break, on the first of November, we counted no less than five and forty canoes that were coming from the shore towards the ship: seven of them came up with us, and after fome conversation with Tupia, fold us some lobsters and muscles, and two conger eels. These people traded pretty fairly: but when they were gone, some others came off from another place, who began also to trade fairly; but after some time they took what was handed down to them, without making any return; one of them who had done fo, upon being threatened, began to laugh, and with many marks of derision fet us at desiance, at the same time putting off the canoe from the ship: a musquet was then fired over his head, which brought him back in a more ferious mood, and trade went on with great regularity. At length, when the cabbin and gun-room had got as much as they wanted, the menwere allowed to come to the gang-way, and trade for themfelves. Unhappily the fame care was not taken to prevent frauds as had been taken before, fo that the Indians, finding that they could cheat with impunity, grew infolent again, and proceeded to take greater liberties. One of the canoes, having fold every thing on board, pulled forward, and the people that were in her feeing fome linen hang over the fhip's fide to dry, one of them, without any ceremony, untied it, and put it up in his bundle: he was immediately called to, and required to return it; instead of which, he let his canoe drop a stern, and laughed at us: a musquet was fired over his head, which did not put a ftop to his mirth; another was then fired at him with fmall fhot, which ftruck

November. Wednes. 1.

him upon the back; he shrunk a little when the shot hit him, but did not regard it more than one of our men would have done the stroke of a rattan: he continued with great composure to pack up the linen that he had stolen. All the canoes now dropped aftern about a hundred yards, and all fet up their fong of defiance, which they continued till the fhip was distant from them about four hundred yards. As they feemed to have no defign to attack us, I was not willing to do them any hurt; yet I thought their going off in a bravado might have a bad effect when it should be reported ashore. To show them therefore that they were still in our power, though very much beyond the reach of any missile weapon with which they were acquainted, I gave the ship a yaw, and fired a four pounder fo as to pass near them. The fhot happened to strike the water, and rife feveral times at a great distance beyond the canoes: this struck them with terror, and they paddled away without once looking behind them.

About two in the afternoon, we faw a pretty high island-bearing west from us; and at five, saw more islands and rocks to the westward of that. We hauled our wind in order to go without them, but could not weather them before it was dark. I therefore bore up, and ran between them and the main. At seven, I was close under the first, from which a large double canoe, or rather two canoes lashed together at the distance of about a foot, and covered with boards so as make a deck, put off, and made fail for the ship: this was the first vessel of the kind that we had seen since we left the South Sea islands. When she came near, the people on board entered very freely into conversation with Tupia, and we thought showed a friendly disposition; but when it was just dark, they ran their canoe close to the ship's side, and threw in a volley of stones, after which they paddled ashore.

We learnt from Tupia, that the people in the canoe called the island which we were under Mowtohora; it is but of a finall circuit, though high, and lies fix miles from the main; on the fouth fide is anchorage in fourteen fathom water. Upon the main land S. W. by W. of this island, and apparently at no great diflance from the fea, is a high round mountain, which I called Mount Edge compe: it flands in the middle of a large plain, and is therefore the more confpicuous; latitude 37° 59', longitude 193° 7'.

In flanding westward, we fuddenly shoaled our water from feventeen to ten fathom; and knowing that we were not far from the small islands and rocks which we had seen before dark, and which I intended to have paffed before I brought to for the night, I thought it more prudent to tack, and fpend the night under Mowtohora, where I knew there was no danger. It was indeed happy for us that we did fo; for inthe morning, after we had made fail to the westward, we Thursday zdifcovered, ahead of us, feveral rocks, fome of which were level with the furface of the water, and fome below it: they lay N. N. E. from Mount Edgecombe, one league and a half diftant from the island Mowtohora, and about nine miles from the main. We passed between these rocks and the main, having from ten to feven fathom water.

This morning, many canoes and much people were feen along the shore; several of the canoes followed us, but none of them could reach us, except one with a fail, which proved. to be the fame that had pelted us the night before. The people on board again entered into conversation with Tupia; but we expected another volley of their ammunition, which was not indeed dangerous to any thing but the cabbin windows. They continued abreast of the ship about an hour, and behaved very peaceably; but at last the salute which we expected.

November. Thursday z. expected was given; we returned it by firing a musquet over them, and they immediately dropped a-stern and left us, perhaps rather satisfied with having given a test of their courage by twice insulting a vessel so much superior to their own, than intimidated by the shot.

At half an hour after ten, we passed between a low flat island and the main: the diffance from one to the other was about four miles, and the depth of water from ten to twelve fathom. The main land between this flat island and Mowtohora is of a moderate height, but level, pretty clear of wood, and full of plantations and villages. The villages, which were larger than any we had yet feen, were built upon eminences near the fea, and fortified on the land fide by a bank and ditch, with a high paling within it, which was carried all round: beside a bank, ditch, and pallisadoes, some of them appeared to have out-works. Tupia had a notion that the fmall inclosures of pallifadoes, and a ditch that we had feen before, were Morais or places of worship; but we were of opinion that they were forts, and concluded that these people had neighbouring enemies, and were always exposed to hostile attacks.

At two o'clock we passed a small high island, lying four miles from a high round head upon the main. From this head the land trends N. W. as far as can be seen, and has a rugged and hilly appearance. As the weather was hazy, and the wind blew fresh on the shore, we hauled off for the weathermost island in sight, which bore from us N. N. E. distant about six or seven leagues.

Friday 3.

Under this island, which I have called the MAYOR, we spent the night. At seven in the morning it bore S. 47 E. distant six leagues, and a cluster of small islands and rocks bore N. ½ E. distant one league, to which I gave the name of

Friday 3.

the Court of Aldermen. They lie in the compass of about half a league every way, and five leagues from the main, between which and them lie other islands, most of them barren rocks, of which there is great variety: fome of them are as fmall in compass as the Monument of London, but rife to a much greater height, and fome of them are inhabited. They lie in latitude 36° 57', and at noon bore S. 60 E. distant three or four leagues; and a rock like a castle, lying not far from the main, bore N. 40 W. at the distance of one league. The country that we paffed the night before, appeared to be well inhabited, many towns were in fight, and fome hundreds of large canoes lay under them upon the beach; but this day, after having failed about fifteen leagues, it appeared to be barren and desolate. As far as we had yet coasted this country from Cape Turnagain, the people acknowledged one Chief, whom they called TERATU, and to whose residence they pointed, in a direction that we thought to be very far inland, but afterwards found to be otherwise.

About one o'clock three canoes came off to us from the main, with one and twenty men on board. The confiruction of these vessels appeared to be more simple than that of any we had feen, they being nothing more than trunks of a fingle tree hollowed by fire, without any convenience or ornament. The people on board were almost naked, and appeared to be of a browner complexion; yet naked and despicable as they were, they sung their song of desiance, and seemed to denounce against us inevitable destruction: they remained, however, some time out of stones throw, and then venturing nearer, with lefs appearance of hostility. one of our men went to the ship side, and was about to hand them a rope; this courtefy, however, they thought fit to return by throwing a lance at him, which having miffed him, Vol. II. Uu they

329

November. Friday 3. they immediately threw another into the ship: upon this a musquet was fired over them, which at once sent them away.

About two, we faw a large opening, or inlet, for which we bore up; we had now forty-one fathom water, which gradually decreased to nine, at which time we were one mile and an half distant from a high towered rock which lay near the south point of the inlet: this rock, and the northermost of the Court of Aldermen being in one, bearing S. 61 E.

About feven in the evening we anchored in feven fathom, a little within the fouth entrance of the bay: to this place we were accompanied by feveral canoes and people like those we had seen last, and for some time they behaved very civilly. While they were hovering about us, a bird was fhot from the ship, as it was swimming upon the water: at this they shewed less surprize than we expected, and taking up the bird, they tied it to a fishing line that was towing aftern; as an acknowledgment for this favour we gave them a piece of cloth: but notwithstanding this effect of our firearms, and this interchange of civilities, as foon as it grew dark they fung their war fong, and attempted to tow away the buoy of the anchor. Two or three muskets were then fired over them, but this feemed rather to make them angry than afraid, and they went away, threatening that to-morrow they would return with more force, and be the death of us all; at the fame time fending off a boat, which they told us was going to another part of the bay for affiftance.

There was fome appearance of generofity, as well as courage, in acquainting us with the time when they intended to make their attack, but they forfeited all credit which this procured them, by coming fecretly upon us in the night, when

when they certainly hoped to find us afleep: upon approaching the ship they found themselves mistaken, and therefore retired without speaking a word, supposing that they were too early; after fome time they came a fecond time, and being again disappointed, they retired as filently as before.

In the morning, at day-break, they prepared to effect by Saturday 4. force what they had in vain attempted by stealth and artifice: no less than twelve canoes came against us, with about a hundred and fifty men, all armed with pikes, lances, and flones. As they could do nothing till they came very near the ship, Tupia was ordered to expostulate with them, and if possible divert them from their purpose: during the converfation they appeared to be fometimes friendly and fometimes otherwife; at length, however, they began to trade, and we offered to purchase their weapons, which some of them confented to fell: they fold two very fairly, but having received what had been agreed upon for the purchase of a third, they refused to send it up, but offered it for a second price; a fecond was fent down, but the weapon was fill detained, and a demand made of a third; this being refused with fome expressions of displeasure and resentment, the offender, with many ludicrous tokens of contempt and defiance, paddled his canoe off a few yards from the ship. As I intended to continue in this place five or fix days, in order to make an observation of the transit of Mercury, it was absolutely neceffary, in order to prevent future mischief, to shew these people that we were not to be treated ill with impunity; fome fmall fhot were therefore fired at the thief, and a musket ball through the bottom of his boat: upon this it was paddled to about a hundred yards distance, and to our great furprize the people in the other canoes took not the least notice of their wounded companion, though he bled very much but returned to the ship, and continued to trade with the

November. Saturday 4. most perfect indifference and unconcern. They fold us many more of their weapons without making any other attempt to defraud us, for a considerable time; at last, however, one of them thought fit to paddle away with two different pieces of cloth which had been given for the same weapon: when he had got about an hundred yards distance, and thought himself secure of his prize, a musket was fired after him, which fortunately struck the boat just at the water's edge, and made two holes in her side; this only incited them to ply their paddles with greater activity, and the rest of the canoes also made off with the utmost expedition. As the last proof of our superiority therefore, we fired a round shot over them, and not a boat stopped till they got on shore.

About ten o'clock, I went with two boats to found the bay, and look out for a more convenient anchoring-place, the Master being in one boat and myself in the other. We pulled first over to the north shore, from which some canoes came out to meet us; as we advanced, however, they retired, inviting us to follow them: but, seeing them all armed, I did not think it proper to comply, but went towards the head of the bay, where I observed a village upon a very high point, fortissed in the manner that has been already described, and having fixed upon an anchoring-place not far from where the ship lay, I returned on board.

At three o'clock in the afternoon, I weighed, run in nearer to the shore, and anchored in four fathom and an half water, with a soft sandy bottom, the south point of the bay bearing E. distant one mile, and a river which the boats can enter at low water S. S. E. distant a mile and an half.

Sunday 5.

In the morning, the natives came off again to the ship, and we had the satisfaction to observe that their behaviour was very different from what it had been yesterday: among

333

Sunday 5. .

them was an old man, whom we had before remarked for his prudence and honefty: his name was Tolava, and he feemed to be a person of a superior rank; in the transactions of yesterday morning he had behaved with great propriety and good fenfe, lying in a fmall canoe, always near the fhip, and treating those on board as if he neither intended a fraud nor fuspected an injury: with some persuasion this man and another came on board, and ventured into the cabin, where I presented each of them with a piece of English cloth and fome fpike nails. They told us that the Indians were now very much afraid of us, and on our part we promifed friendship if they would behave peaceably, defiring only to purchase what they had to fell upon their own terms.

After the natives had left us, I went with the pinnace and long-boat into the river with a defign to haul the feine, and fent the Master in the yawl to found the bay and dredge for fish. The Indians who were on one side of the river, expresfed their friendship by all the figns they could devise, beckoning us to land among them; but we chose to go ashore on the other fide, as the fituation was more convenient for hauling the feine and fhooting birds, of which we faw great numbers of various kinds: the Indians with much perfuafion, about noon, ventured over to us. With the feine we had very little fuccefs, catching only a few mullets, neither did we get any thing by the trawl or the dredge, except a few shells; but we shot several birds, most of them resembling fea-pies, except that they had black plumage, and red bills and feet. While we were abfent with our guns, the people who flaid by the boats faw two of the Indians quarreland fight: they began the battle with their lances, but fome old men interpofed and took them away, leaving them to decide the difference, like Englishmen, with their fists: they boxed with great vigour and obstinacy for some time, but by

degrees

1769. November. degrees all retired behind a little hill, fo that our people could not fee the event of the combat.

Monday 6.

In the morning the long-boat was fent again to traul in the bay, and an officer, with the marines, and a party of men. to cut wood and haul the feine. The Indians on shore appeared very peaceable and fubmiffive, and we had reason to believe that their habitations were at a confiderable diffance, for we faw no houses, and found that they flept under the bushes: the bay is probably a place to which they frequently refort in parties to gather shell-fish, of which it affords incredible plenty, for wherever we went, whether upon the hills or in the vallies, the woods or the plains, we faw vast heaps of shells, often many waggon loads together, some appearing to be very old, and others recent. We faw no cultivation in this place, which had a defolate and barren appearance; the tops of the hills were green, but nothing grew there except a large kind of fern, the roots of which the natives had got together in large quantities, in order to carry away with them. In the evening Mr. Banks walked up the river, which at the mouth looked fine and broad, but at the diffance of about two miles was not deep enough to cover the foot; and the country inland was fill more barren than at the fea-fide. The feine and dredge were not more fuccessful to-day than yesterday, but the Indians in some measure compensated for the disappointment by bringing us feveral baskets of fish, some dry, and some fresh dressed; it was not indeed of the best, but I ordered it all to be bought for the encouragement of trade.

Tuefday 7.

On the 7th, the weather was so bad that none of us left the ship, nor did any of the Indians come on board.

Wednes. 8.

On the 8th, I fent a party of men on shore to wood and water; and in the mean time many canoes came off, in one

November. Wednef. 8.

of which was our friend Toiava; foon after he was alongfide of the ship, he saw two canoes coming from the opposite side of the bay, upon which he hasted back again to the shore with all his canoes, telling us that he was afraid of the people who were coming: this was a farther proof that the people of this country were perpetually committing hostilities against each other. In a short time, however, he returned, having discovered that the people who had alarmed him were not the same that he had supposed. The natives that came to the ship this morning sold us, for a few pieces of cloth, as much sish of the mackrel kind as served the whole ship's company, and they were as good as ever were eaten. At noon, this day, I observed the sun's meridional zenith distance by an astronomical quadrant, which gave the latitude 36° 47′ 43″ within the south entrance of the bay.

Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went on fhore and collected a great variety of plants, altogether unknown, and not returning till the evening, had an opportunity of observing in what manner the Indians disposed themselves to pass the night. They had no shelter but a few shrubs: the women and the children were ranged innermost, or farthest from the sea; the men lay in a kind of half circle round them, and their arms were fet up against the trees close by them, in a manner which showed that they were afraid of an attack by some enemy not far diftant. It was also discovered that they acknowledged neither Teratu, nor any other person as their king: as in this particular they differed from all the people that we had feen upon other parts of the coast, we thought it possible that they might be a set of outlaws, in a state of rebellion against Teratu, and in that case they might have no fettled habitations, or cultivated land in any part of the country.

November. Thursday 9. On the 9th, at day-break, a great number of canoes came on board, loaded with mackrel of two forts, one exactly the fame with those caught in England, and the other somewhat different: we imagined the people had taken a large shoal, and brought us an overplus which they could not consume; for they sold them at a very low rate. They were, however, very welcome to us; at eight o'clock, the ship had more fish on board than all her people could eat in three days; and before night, the quantity was so much increased, that every man who could get falt, cured as many as would last him a month.

After an early breakfast, I went ashore, with Mr. Green and proper instruments, to observe the transit of Mercury, Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander being of the party; the weather had for some time been very thick, with much rain, but this day was fo favourable that not a cloud intervened during the whole transit. The observation of the ingress was made by Mr. Green alone, while I was employed in taking the fun's altitude to afcertain the time. It came on at 7^h 20′ 58″ apparent time: according to Mr. Green's observation, the internal contact was at 12h 8' 58", the external at 12h 9' 55" P.M. And according to mine, the internal contact was at 12h8' 54', and the external 12h 9' 48'; the latitude of the place of obfervation was 30° 48′ 5. The latitude observed at noon was 36° 48′ 28". The mean of this and yesterday's observation gives 36° 48′ 5½″ S. the latitude of the place of observation; the variation of the compass was 11° 9' E.

About noon, we were alarmed by the firing of a great gun from the ship,; Mr. Gore, my Second Lieutenant, was at this time commanding officer on board, and the account that he gave was this. While some small canoes were trading with the people, two very large ones came up, full of men, one

337

of them having on board forty-feven, all armed with pikes, darts, and flones, and apparently with a hostile intention: they appeared to be firangers, and to be rather conscious of Thursday o. fuperiority over us by their numbers, than afraid of any weapons which could give us the fuperiority over them: no attack however was made; probably because they learnt from the people in the other canoes, with whom they immediately entered into conference, what kind of an enemy they had to deal with: after a little time, they began to trade, fome of them offering their arms, and one of them a fquare piece of cloth, which makes a part of their drefs, called a Haahow; feveral of the weapons were purchased, and Mr. Gore having agreed for a Haahow, fent down the price, which was a piece of British cloth, and expected his purchase: but the Indian, as soon as he had got Mr. Gore's cloth in his possession, refused to part with his own, and put off the canoe: upon being threatened for this fraud, he and his companions began to fing their war fong in defiance, and shook their paddles: still however they began no attack, only defying Mr. Gore to take any remedy in his power, which fo provoked him that he levelled a mufguet loaded with ball at the offender, while he was holding the cloth in his hand, and fhot him dead. It would have been happy, if the effect of a few fmall fhot had been tried upon this occasion, which upon fome others had been fuccefsful.

When the Indian dropped, all the canoes put off to fome distance; but as they did not go away, it was thought they might still meditate an attack. To fecure therefore a fafe passage for the boat, which it was necessary to fend on shore, a round fhot was fired over their heads, which effectually answered the purpose, and put them all to flight. When an account of what had happened was brought ashore, our InNovember. Thursday 9. dians were alarmed, and drawing all together, retreated in a body. After a fhort time, however, they returned, having heard a more particular account of the affair; and intimated that they thought the man who had been killed deferved his fate.

A little before funfet the Indians retired to eat their fupper, and we went with them to be fpectators of the repaft; it confifted of fish of different kinds, among which were lob-flers, and some birds, of a species unknown to us: these were either roafted or baked; to roaft them, they fastened them upon a small flick, which was sluck up in the ground, inclining towards their fire; and to bake them, they put them into a hole in the ground with hot slones, in the same manner as the people of Otaheite.

Among the natives that were affembled upon this occasion, we faw a woman, who, after their manner, was mourning for the death of her relation: fhe fat upon the ground near the rest, who, one only excepted, seemed not at all to regard her: the tears confantly trickled down her cheeks, and she repeated in a low, but very mournful voice, words, which even Tupia did not at all understand: at the end of every fentence she cut her arms, her face, or her breast with a shell that she held in her hand, so that she was almost covered with blood, and was indeed one of the most affecting spectacles that can be conceived. The cuts, however, did not appear to be fo deep as are fometimes made upon fimilar occasions, if we may judge by the scars which we saw upon the arms, thighs, breafts, and cheeks of many of them, which we were told were the remains of wounds which they had inflicted upon themselves as testimonies of their affection and forrow.

Friday 10.

The next day, I went with two boats, accompanied by Mr. Banks and the other Gentlemen, to examine a large river

339

that empties itself into the head of the bay. We rowed about four or five miles up, and could have gone much farther if the weather had been favourable. It was here wider than at the mouth, and divided into many streams by small flat islands, which are covered with mangroves, and overflowed at high water. From these trees exudes a viscous substance which very much refembles refin: we found it first in small lumps upon the fea beach, and now faw it sticking to the trees, by which we knew whence it came. We landed on the east fide of the river, where we faw a tree upon which feveral shags had built their nests, and here therefore we determined to dine; twenty of the shags were soon killed, and being broiled upon the fpot, afforded us an excellent meal. We then went upon the hills from whence I thought I faw the head of the river. The shore on each side, as well as the islands in the middle, were covered with mangroves; and the fand-banks abounded in cockles and clams: in many places there were rock oysters, and every where plenty of wild fowl, principally fhags, ducks, curlieus, and the feapie, that has been described before. We also faw fish in the river, but of what kind we could not discover: the country on the east fide of this river is for the most part barren, and destitute of wood; but on the west it has a better aspect, and in fome places is adorned with trees, but has in no part the appearance of cultivation. In the entrance of the river, and for two or three miles up, there is good anchoring in four and five fathom water, and places very convenient for laying a veffel on fhore, where the tide rifes and falls feven feet at the full and change of the moon. We could not determine, whether any confiderable stream of fresh water came into this river out of the country; but we faw a number of fmall rivulets iffue from the adjacent hills. Near the mouth of this river, on the east side, we found a little Indian village,

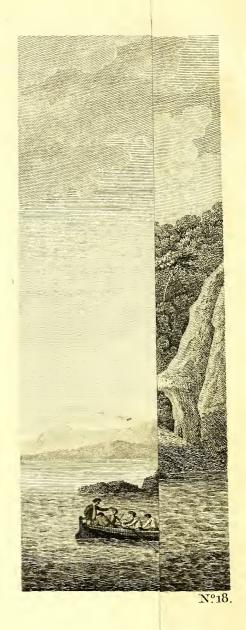
November. Friday 10.

confisting of small temporary sheds, where we landed, and were received by the people with the utmost kindness and hospitality: they treated us with a flat shell-fish of a most delicious taste, somewhat like a cockle, which we eat hot from the coals. Near this place is a high point or peninfula, projecting into the river, and upon it are the remains of a fort, which they call Eppah or Heppah. The best engineer in Europe could not have chosen a fituation better adapted to enable a fmall number to defend themselves against a greater. The fleepness of the cliffs renders it wholly inaccessible from the water which incloses it on three fides; and, to the land, it is fortified by a ditch, and a bank raifed on the infide: from the top of the bank to the bottom of the ditch, is two and twenty feet; the ditch on the outfide is fourteen feet deep, and its breadth is in proportion. The whole feemed to have been executed with great judgment; and there had been a row of pickets or pallifadoes, both on the top of the bank and along the brink of the ditch on the outfide; those on the outfide had been driven very deep into the ground, and were inclined towards the ditch, fo as to project over it; but of these the thickest posts only were left, and upon them there were evident marks of fire, fo that the place had probably been taken and destroyed by an enemy. If any occasion should make it necessary for a ship to winter here, orflay any time, tents might be built in this place, which is fufficiently fpacious, with great convenience, and might eafily be made impregnable to the whole country.

Saturday 11.

On the eleventh, there was fo much wind and rain that no canoe came off; but the long-boat was fent to fetch oyfters from one of the beds which had been difcovered the day before: the boat foon returned, deeply laden, and the oyfters, which were as good as ever came from Colchefter, and about the fame fize, were laid down under the booms, and the





thip's company did nothing but eat them from the time they November. came on board till night, when, as may reasonably be supposed, great part of them were expended; this, however, gave us no concern, as we knew that not the boat only, but the ship, might have been loaded, almost in one tide, as the beds are dry at half ebb.

In the morning of Sunday the 12th, two canoes came off Sunday 121 full of people whom we had never feen before, but who appeared to have heard of us by the caution which they used in approaching us. As we invited them to come alongfide with all the tokens of friendship that we could shew, they ventured up, and two of them came on board; the rest traded very fairly for what they had: a fmall canoe also eame from the other fide of the bay, and fold us fome very large fish, which they gave us to understand they would have brought yesterday, having caught them the day before. but that the wind was fo high they could not venture to fea.

After breakfast, I went with the pinnace and yawl, accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, over to the north fide of the bay, to take a view of the country, and two fortified villages which we had difcovered at a diffance. We landed near the fmallest of them, the situation of which was the most beautifully romantic that can be imagined; it was built upon a fmall rock, detached from the main, and furrounded at high water. The whole body of this rock was perforated by an hollow or arch, which possessed much the largest part of it; the top of the arch was above fixty feet perpendicular above the fea, which at high water flowed through the bottom of it: the whole fummit of the rock above the arch wasfenced round after their manner; but the area was not large enough to contain more than five or fix houses: it was acces-



thip's company did nothing but eat them from the time they November. came on board till night, when, as may reasonably be supposed, great part of them were expended; this, however, gave us no concern, as we knew that not the boat only, but the fhip, might have been loaded, almost in one tide, as the beds are dry at half ebb.

In the morning of Sunday the 12th, two canoes came off Sunday 12: full of people whom we had never feen before, but who appeared to have heard of us by the caution which they used in approaching us. As we invited them to come alongfide with all the tokens of friendship that we could shew, they ventured up, and two of them came on board; the rest traded very fairly for what they had: a fmall canoc also came from the other fide of the bay, and fold us fome very large fish, which they gave us to understand they would have brought yesterday, having caught them the day before, but that the wind was fo high they could not venture to fea.

After breakfast, I went with the pinnace and yawl, accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, over to the north fide of the bay, to take a view of the country, and two fortified villages which we had discovered at a distance. We landed: near the fmallest of them, the situation of which was the most beautifully romantic that can be imagined; it was built upon a fmall rock, detached from the main, and furrounded at high water. The whole body of this rock was perforated by an hollow or arch, which possessed much the largest part of it; the top of the arch was above fixty feet perpendicular above the fea, which at high water flowed through the bottom of it: the whole fummit of the rock above the arch wasfenced round after their manner; but the area was not large enough to contain more than five or fix houses: it was acces-

fible.

November. Sunday 12.

fible only by one very narrow and fleep path, by which the inhabitants, at our approach, came down, and invited us into the place; but we refused, intending to visit a much more confiderable fort of the fame kind at about a mile's distance. We made fome prefents however to the women, and in the mean time we faw the inhabitants of the town which we were going to, coming towards us in a body, men, women, and children, to the number of about one hundred: when they came near enough to be heard, they waved their hands and called out Horomai; after which they fat down among the bushes near the beach: these ceremonies we were told were certain figns of their friendly disposition. We advanced to the place where they were fitting, and when we came up. made them a few prefents, and asked leave to visit their Heppah; they confented with joy in their countenances, and immediately led the way. It is called WHARRETOUWA, and is fituated upon a high promontory or point, which projects into the fea, on the north fide, and near the head of the bay: two fides of it are washed by the sea, and these are altogether inaccessible; two other sides are to the land: up one of them, which is very fleep, lies the avenue from the beach; the other is flat and open to the country upon the hill, which is a narrow ridge: the whole is inclosed by a pallifade about ten feet high, confishing of strong pales bound together with withes. The weak fide next the land is also defended by a double ditch, the innermost of which has a bank and an additional pallisade; the inner pallisades are upon the bank next the town, but at fuch a distance from the top of the bank as to leave room for men to walk and use their arms, between them and the inner ditch: the outermost pallisades are between the two ditches, and driven obliquely into the ground, fo that their upper ends incline over the inper ditch: the depth of this ditch, from the bottom to the

343

Novembers Sunday 12.

the top or crown of the bank, is four and twenty feet-Close within the innermost pallisade is a stage, twenty feet high, forty feet long, and fix broad; it is supported by flrong posts, and is intended as a flation for those who defend the place, from which they may annoy the affailants by darts and stones, heaps of which lay ready for use. Another stage of the same kind commands the steep avenue from the beach, and stands also within the pallisade; on this fide of the hill there are some little outworks and huts, not intended as advanced posts, but as the habitations of people who for want of room could not be accommodated within the works, but who were, notwithstanding, desirous of placing themselves under their protection. The pallisades, as has been observed already, run round the whole brow of the hill, as well towards the fea as towards the land; but the ground within having originally been a mount, they have reduced it not to one level, but to feveral, rifing in flages one above the other, like an amphitheatre, each of which is inclosed within its separate pallifade; they communicate with each other by narrow lanes, which might eafily be stopped up, so that if an enemy should force the outward pallifade, he would have others to carry before the place could be wholly reduced, fuppofing these places to be obstinately defended one after the other. The only entrance is by a narrow paffage, about twelve feet long, communicating with the fleep afcent from the beach: it passes under one of the fighting stages, and though we faw nothing like a door or gateway, it may be eafily barricaded in a manner that will make the forcing it a very dangerous and difficult undertaking. Upon the whole, this must be considered as a place of great strength, in which a small number of resolute men may defend themselves against all the force which a people with no other arms than those that are in use here

Nevember. Sunday 12.

could bring against it. It seemed to be well furnished for a fiege with every thing but water; we faw great quantities of fern root, which they eat as bread, and dried fish piled up in heaps; but we could not perceive that they had any fresh water nearer than a brook, which runs close under the foot of the hill: whether they have any means of getting it from this place during a fiege, or whether they have any method of floring it within the works in gourds or other veffels, we could not learn; fome refource they certainly have with respect to this article, an indispensable necessary of life, for otherwise the laying up dry provisions could answer no purpose. Upon our expressing a desire to see their method of attack and defence, one of the young men mounted a fighting flage, which they call Porava, and another went into the ditch: both he that was to defend the place, and he that was to affault it, fung the war-fong, and danced with the fame frightful gesticulations that we had feen used in more ferious circumstances, to work themselves up into a degree of that mechanical fury, which, among all uncivilized nations, is the necessary prelude to a battle; for dispassionate courage, a firength of mind that can furmount the fense of danger, without a flow of animal spirits by which it is extinguished, feems to be the prerogative of those who have projects of more lafting importance, and a keener fense of honour and difgrace, than can be formed or felt by men who have few pains or pleafures besides those of mere animal life, and fcarcely any purpose but to provide for the day that is passing over them, to obtain plunder, or revenge an infult: they will march against each other indeed in cool blood, though they find it necessary to work themselves into passion before they engage; as among us there have been many instances of people who have deliberately made themselves drunk, that they might execute a project which they formed when they

they were fober, but which, while they continued fo, they did not dare to undertake.

November Sunday 12.

On the fide of the hill, near this inclosure, we saw about half an acre planted with gourds and sweet potatoes, which was the only cultivation in the bay: under the foot of the point upon which this fortification stands, are two rocks, one just broken off from the main, and the other not perfectly detached from it: they are both small, and seem more proper for the habitations of birds than men; yet there are houses and places of defence upon each of them. And we saw many other works of the same kind upon small islands, rocks, and ridges of hills, on different parts of the coast, besides many fortified towns, which appeared to be much superior to this.

The perpetual hostility in which these poor favages, who have made every village a fort, must necessarily live, will account for there being so little of their land in a state of cultivation; and, as mischiefs very often reciprocally produce each other, it may perhaps appear, that there being fo little land in a state of cultivation, will account for their living in perpetual hostility. But it is very strange, that the same invention and diligence which have been used in the conftruction of places fo admirably adapted to defence, almost without tools, should not, when urged by the same necessity, have furnished them with a fingle missile weapon except the lance, which is thrown by hand: they have no contrivance like a bow to discharge a dart, nor any thing like a sling to affift them in throwing a stone; which is the more furprising, as the invention of flings, and bows and arrows, is much more obvious than of the works which these people conflruct, and both these weapons are found among much ruder nations, and in almost every other part of the world. Besides

November. Sunday 12. the long lance and Patoo-Patoo, which have been mentioned already, they have a flaff about five feet long, fometimes pointed, like a Serjeant's halberd, fometimes only tapering to a point at one end, and having the other end broad, and fhaped fomewhat like the blade of an oar. They have also another weapon, about a foot shorter than these, pointed at one end, and at the other shaped like an axe. The points of their long lances are barbed, and they handle them with such strength and agility, that we can match them with no weapon but a loaded musquet.

After taking a flight view of the country, and loading both the boats with celery, which we found in great plenty near the beach, we returned from our excursion, and about five o'clock in the evening got on board the ship.

Wednes. 15.

On the 15th, I failed out of the bay, and at the fame time had feveral canoes on board, in one of which was our friend Toiava, who faid, that as foon as we were gone he must repair to his Heppah or fort, because the friends of the man who had been shot by Mr. Gore on the 5th, had threatened to revenge his death upon him, whom they had reproached as being our friend. Off the north point of the bay, I saw a great number of islands, of various extent, which lay scattered to the north west, in a direction parallel with the main as far as I could see. I steered north east for the north eastermost of these islands; but the wind coming to the north west, I was obliged to stand out to sea.

To the bay which we had now left I gave the name of MERCURY BAY, on account of the observation which we had made there of the transit of that planet over the sun. It lies in latitude 36° 47′ S.; and in the longitude of 184° 4′ W.: there are several islands lying both to the southward and northward of it, and a small island or rock in the middle of

the entrance: within this island the depth of water no where exceeds nine fathom: the best anchoring is in a fandy bay, which lies just within the fourth head, in five and four fathom, bringing a high tower or rock, which lies without the head, in one with the head, or just shut in behind it. This place is very convenient both for wooding and watering, and in the river there is an immense quantity of oysters and other shell-sish: I have for this reason given it the name of OYSTER RIVER. But for a ship that wants to stay here any time, the best and safest place is in the river at the head of the bay; which, from the number of mangrove trees about it, I have called MANGROVE RIVER. To fail into this river. the fouth shore must be kept all the way on board. The country on the east fide of the river and bay is very barren, its only produce being fern, and a few other plants that will grow in a poor foil. The land on the north west side is covered with wood, and the foil being much more fertile, would doubtless produce all the necessaries of life with proper cultivation: it is not however fo fertile as the lands that we have feen to the fouthward; nor do the inhabitants, though numerous, make fo good an appearance: they have no plantations; their canoes are mean, and without ornament; they fleep in the open air; and fay, that Teratu, whose sovereignty they do not acknowledge, if he was to come among them, would kill them. This favoured our opinion of their being outlaws; yet they told us, that they had Heppahs or flrong holds, to which they retired in time of imminent danger.

- We found, thrown upon the shore, in several parts of this bay, great quantities of iron-sand, which is brought down by every little rivulet of fresh water that finds its way from the country; which is a demonstration that there is ore of

November. Wednef. 15. that metal not far inland: yet neither the inhabitants of this place, or any other part of the coast that we have feen, know the use of iron, or set the least value upon it; all of them preferring the most worthless and useless trifle, not only to a nail, but to any tool of that metal.

Before we left the bay, we cut upon one of the trees near the watering-place the ship's name, and that of the Commander, with the date of the year and month when we were there; and, after displaying the English colours, I took a formal possession of it in the name of his Britannic Majesty King George the Third.

CHAP. IV.

The Range from Mercury Bay to the Bay of Islands: An Expedition up the River Thames: Some Account of the Indians who inhabit its Banks, and the fine Timber that grows there: Several Interviews with the Natives on different Parts of the Coast, and a Skirmish with them upon an Island.

Continued plying to windward two days to get under the land, and on the 18th, about feven in the morning, we land, and on the 18th, about feven in the morning, we were abreast of a very conspicuous promontory, being then in latitude 36° 26', and in the direction of N. 48 W. from the north head of Mercury Bay or Point Mercury, which was distant nine leagues: upon this point stood many people, who feemed to take little notice of us, but talked together with great earnestness. In about half an hour, several canoes put off from different places, and came towards the ship; upon which the people on the point also launched a canoe, and about twenty of them came in her up with the others. When two of these canoes, in which there might be about fixty men, came near enough to make themselves heard, they fung their war-fong; but feeing that we took little notice of it, they threw a few stones at us, and then rowed off towards the shore. We hoped that we had now done with them, but in a short time they returned, as if with a fixed refolution to provoke us into a battle, animating themselves by their fong as they had done before. Tupia, without any directions

November. Saturday 18.

directions from us, went to the poop, and began to expollulate: he told them, that we had weapons which would deftroy them in a moment; and that, if they ventured to attack us, we should be obliged to use them. Upon this, they flourished their weapons, and cried out, in their language, " Come on fhore, and we will kill you all:" Well, faid Tupia, but why fhould you molest us while we are at fea? as we do not wish to fight, we shall not accept your challenge to come on shore; and here there is no pretence for a quarrel, the fea being no more your property than the ship. This eloquence of Tupia, though it greatly furprifed us, having given him no hints for the arguments he used, had no effect upon our enemies, who very foon renewed their battery: a musquet was then fired through one of their boats, and this was an argument of fufficient weight, for they immediately fell aftern and left us.

From the point, of which we were now abreaft, the land trends W. ½ S. near a league, and then S. S. E. as far as we could fee; and, befides the islands that lay without us, we could fee land round by the S. W. as far as the N.W.; but whether this was the main or islands, we could not then determine: the fear of losing the main, however, made me refolve to follow its direction. With this view, I hauled round the point and steered to the southward, but there being light airs all round the compass, we made but little progress.

About one o'clock, a breeze fprung up at east, which afterwards came to N.E. and we steered along the shore S. by E. and S.S.E. having from twenty-sive to eighteen fathom.

At about half an hour after feven in the evening, having run feven or eight leagues fince noon, I anchored in twentythree fathom, not chufing to run any farther in the dark, as I had now land on both fides, forming the entrance of a Rreight, bay, or river, lying S. by E. for on that point we could fee no land.

November.

At day-break, on the 19th, the wind being still favourable, sunday 19. we weighed and stood with an easy fail up the inlet, keeping nearest to the east side: In a short time, two large canoes came off to us from the shore; the people on board said, that they knew Toiava very well, and called Tupia by his name. I invited some of them on board; and as they knew they had nothing to fear from us, while they behaved honesly and peaceably, they immediately complied: I made each of them some presents, and dismissed them much gratissed. Other canoes afterwards came up to us from a different side of the bay; and the people on board of these also mentioned the name of Toiava, and sent a young man into the ship, who told us he was his grandson, and he also was dismissed with a present.

After having run about five leagues from the place where we had anchored the night before, our depth of water gradually decreased to fix fathom; and not chusing to go into less, as it was tide of flood, and the wind blew right up the inlet, I came to an anchor about the middle of the channel, which is near eleven miles over; after which I sent two-boats out to sound, one on one side, and the other on the other.

The boats not having found above three feet more water than we were now in, I determined to go no farther with the ship, but to examine the head of the bay in the boats; for, as it appeared to run a good way inland, I thought this a favourable opportunity to examine the interior part of the country, and its produce.

At day-break, therefore, I fet out in the pinnace and long-Monday 200 boat, accompanied by Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and Tupia;

November. Monday 20.

and we found the inlet end in a river, about nine miles above the ship: into this river we entered with the first of the flood, and within three miles found the water perfectly fresh. Before we had proceeded more than one third of that diftance, we found an Indian town, which was built upon a a fmall bank of dry fand, but intirely furrounded by a deep mud, which possibly the inhabitants might consider as a defence. These people, as foon as they faw us, thronged to the banks, and invited us on shore. We accepted the invitation, and made them a vifit notwithstanding the mud. They received us with open arms, having heard of us from our good old friend Toiava; but our flay could not be long, as we had other objects of curiofity in view. We proceeded up the river till near noon, when we were fourteen miles within its entrance; and then, finding the face of the country to continue nearly the fame, without any alteration in the course of the stream, which we had no hope of tracing to its fource, we landed on the west side, to take a view of the lofty trees which every where adorned its banks. They were of a kind that we had feen before, though only at a distance, both in Poverty Bay and Hawke's Bay. Before we had walked an hundred yards into the wood, we met with one of them which was nineteen feet eight inches in the girt, at the height of fix feet above the ground: having a quadrant with me, I measured its height from the root to the first branch, and found it to be eighty-nine feet: it was as strait as an arrow, and tapered but very little in proportion to its height; fo that I judged there were three hundred and fifty-fix feet of folid timber in it, exclusive of the branches. As we advanced, we faw many others that were flill larger; we cut down a young one, and the wood proved heavy and folid, not fit for masts, but such as would make the finest plank in the world. Our carpenter, who was with us, faid that the timber

timber resembled that of the pitch-pine, which is lightened by tapping; and possibly some such method might be found to lighten thefe, and they would then be fuch masts as no country in Europe can produce. As the wood was fwampy, we could not range far; but we found many flout trees of other kinds, all of them utterly unknown to us, specimens of which we brought away.

1769.

The river at this height is as broad as the Thames at Greenwich, and the tide of flood as flrong; it is not indeed quite fo deep, but has water enough for yessels of more than a middle fize, and a bottom of mud, fo foft that nothing could take damage by running ashore.

About three o'clock, we reimbarked, in order to return with the first of the ebb, and named the river the THAMES, it having some resemblance to our own river of that name. In our return, the inhabitants of the village where we had been ashore, seeing us take another channel, came off to us in their canoes, and trafficked with us in the most friendly manner, till they had disposed of the few trisles they had. The tide of ebb just carried us out of the narrow part of the river, into the channel that run up from the fea, before it was dark; and we pulled hard to reach the ship, but meeting the flood, and a flrong breeze at N. N. W. with showers of rain, we were obliged to defift; and about midnight, we run under the land, and came to a grappling, where we took fuch rest as our situation would admit. At break of Tuesday 220 day, we fet forward again, and it was patt feven o'clock before we reached the ship. We were all extremely tired, but thought ourselves happy to be on board; for before nine it blew fo hard that the boat could not have rowed ahead, and must therefore either have gone ashore, or taken shelter under it.

November.
Tuefday 21.

Wednes, 22.

About three o'clock, having the tide of ebb, we took up our anchor, made fail, and plied down the river till eight in the evening, when we came to an anchor again: early in the morning we made fail with the first ebb, and kept plying till the flood obliged us once more to come to an anchor. As we had now only a light breeze, I went in the pinnace, accompanied by Dr. Solander, to the western shore; but I saw nothing worthy of notice.

When I left the ship, many canoes were about it; Mr. Banks therefore chose to stay on board, and traffic with the natives: they bartered their clothes and arms, chiefly for paper, and behaved with great friendship and honesty. But while fome of them were below with Mr. Banks, a young man who was upon the deck stole a half minute glass which was in the binacle, and was detected just as he was carrying it off. Mr. Hicks, who was commanding officer on board, took it into his head to punish him, by giving him twelve lashes with a cat-o'nine-tails; and accordingly ordered him to be taken to the gang-way, and tied up to the shrouds. When the other Indians who were on board faw him feized, they attempted to rescue him; and being resisted, called for their arms, which were handed up from the canoes, and the people of one of them attempted to come up the ship's side. The tumult was heard by Mr. Banks, who, with Tupia, came haftily upon the deck to fee what had happened. The Indians immediately ran to Tupia, who, finding Mr. Hicks inexorable, could only affure them, that nothing was intended against the life of their companion; but that it was necesfary he should suffer some punishment for his offence, which being explained to them, they feemed to be fatisfied. The punishment was then inflicted, and as foon as the criminal was unbound, an old man among the fpectators, who was **fupposed**

fupposed to be his father, gave him a hearty beating, and fent him down into his canoe. All the canoes then dropped a-stern, and the people faid that they were afraid to come any more near the ship: after much persuasion, however, they ventured back again, but their cheerful confidence was at an end, and their flay was short; they promifed indeed, at their departure, to return with some fish, but we saw no more of them.

On the 23d, the wind being contrary, we kept plying Thursday 23. down the river, and at feven in the evening, got without the N. W. point of the islands lying on the west side of it. The weather being bad, night coming on, and having land on every fide of us, I thought it most advisable to tack, and ftretch in under the point, where we anchored in nineteen fathom. At five in the morning, of the 24th, we weighed, Friday 24and made fail to the N. W. under our courses and double reefed top-fails, the wind being at S. W. by W. and W. S. W. a ftrong gale and fqually. As the gale would not permit us to come near the land, we had but a flight and diffant view of it from the time when we got under fail till noon, during a run of twelve leagues, but we never once lost fight of it. At this time, our latitude, by observation, was 36° 15' 20", we were not above two miles from a point of land on the main, and three leagues and an half from a very high island, which bore N. E. by E.: in this fituation we had twenty-fix fathom water: the farthest point on the main that we could fee bore N. W. but we could perceive feveral fmall islands lying to the north of that direction. The point of land of which we were now a-breaft, and which I called POINT RODNEY, is the N. W. extremity of the river Thames; for under that name I comprehend the deep bay which terminates in the fresh water stream, and the N. E. extremity is the promontory which we passed when we entered it, and

November.

Irlday 24.

which I called CAPE COLVILLE, in honour of the Right Honourable Lord Colville.

Cape Colville lies in latitude 36° 26', longitude 194° 27'; it rifes directly from the fea to a confiderable height, and is remarkable for a lofty rock, which stands to the pitch of the point, and may be diffinguished at a very great diffance. From the fouth point of this Cape the river runs in a direct line S. by E. and is no where lefs than three leagues broad for the distance of fourteen leagues above the Cape, and there it is contracted to a narrow fream, but continues the fame course through a low flat country, or broad valley, which lies parallel with the fea coast, and the end of which we could not fee. On the east fide of the broad part of this river the land is tolerably high and hilly; on the west side it is rather low, but the whole is covered with verdure and wood, and has the appearance of great fertility, though there were but a few fmall fpots which had been cultivated. At the entrance of the narrow part of the river the land is covered with mangroves and other shrubs; but farther, there are immense woods of perhaps the finest timber in the world, of which fome account has already been given: in feveral places the wood extends to the very edge of the water, and where it is at a little diffance, the intermediate fpace is marshy, like some parts of the banks of the Thames in England: it is probable that the river contains plenty of fish, for we saw poles stuck up in many places to set nets for catching them, but of what kinds I do not know. The greatest depth of water that we found in this river was six and twenty fathom, which gradually decreased to one fathom and an half: in the mouth of the fresh water stream it is from four to three fathom, but there are large flats and fand banks lying before it. A ship of moderate draught may, notwithstanding, go a long way up this river with a flowing tide, tide, for it rifes perpendicularly near ten feet, and at the full and change of the moon, it is high water about nine o'clock.

November. Friday 24.

Six leagues within Cape Colville, under the eastern shore, are several small islands, which, together with the main, seem to form good harbours; and opposite to these islands, under the western shore, lie other islands, by which it is also probable that good harbours may be formed: but if there are no harbours about this river, there is good anchoring in every part of it where the depth of water is sufficient, for it is defended from the sea by a chain of islands of different extent, which lie cross the mouth of it, and which I have, for that reason, called BARRIER ISLANDS: they stretch N. W. and S. E. ten leagues. The south end of the chain lies N. E. between two and three leagues from Cape Colville; and the north end lies N. E. four leagues and an half from Point Rodney. Point Rodney lies W. N. W. nine leagues from Cape Colville, in latitude 36° 15' S. longitude 184° 53' W.

The natives residing about this river do not appear to be numerous, considering the great extent of the country. But they are a strong, well-made, and active people, and all of them paint their bodies with red oker and oil from head to foot, which we had not seen before. Their canoes were large and well built, and adorned with carving, in as good a taste as any that we had seen upon the coast.

We continued to ftand along the shore till night, with the main land on one side, and islands on the other, and then anchored in a bay, with sourteen fathom and a sandy bottom. We had no sooner come to an anchor, than we tried our lines, and in a short time caught near one hundred sish, which the people called Sea-bream; they weighed from six to eight pounds a piece, and consequently would supply the whole ship's company with food for two days. From the

fuccess

1769. November. 111day 24. fuccess of our lines here, we called the place Bream Bay: the two points that form it lie north and south, five leagues from each other; it is every where of a good breadth, and between three and four leagues deep: at the bottom of it there appears to be a river of fresh water. The north head of the bay, called Bream Head, is high land, and remarkable for several pointed rocks, which stand in a range upon the top of it: it may also be known by some small islands which lie before it, called the Hen and Chickens, one of which is high, and terminates in two peaks. It lies in latitude 35° 46'S., and at the distance of seventeen leagues and an half from Cape Colville, in the direction of N. 41 W.

The land between Point Rodney and Bream Head, an extent of ten leagues, is low, and wooded in tufts, with white fand banks between the fea and the firm land. We faw no inhabitants, but many fires in the night; and where there are fires, there are always people.

Saturday 25.

At day-break, on the 25th, we left the bay, and fleered along shore to the northward: we found the variation of the compass to be 12° 42′E. At noon, our latitude was 36° 36′S., Bream Head bore south, distant ten miles; and we saw some small islands, to which I gave the name of the Poor Knights, at N. E. by N. distant three leagues; the northermost land in sight bore N. N. W.: we were in this place at the distance of two miles from the shore, and had twenty-six fathom water.

The country appeared low, but well covered with wood: we faw fome straggling houses, three or four fortified towns, and near them a large quantity of cultivated land.

In the evening, feven large canoes came off to us, with about two hundred men: fome of them came on board, and fa'd, that they had heard of us. To two of them, who ap-

peared

359

peared to be Chiefs, I gave presents; but when these were gone out of the ship, the others became exceedingly troublefome. Some of those in the canoes began to trade, and, according to their custom, to cheat, by refusing to deliver what had been bought, after they had received the price: among these was one who had received an old pair of black breeches, which, upon a few fmall shot being fired at him, he threw into the fea. All the boats foon after paddled off to fome distance, and when they thought they were out of reach, they began to defy us, by finging their fong and brandishing their weapons. We thought it advisable to intimidate them, as well for their fakes as our own, and therefore fired first some small arms, and then round shot over their heads; the last put them in a terrible fright, though they received no damage, except by over-heating themselves in paddling away, which they did with astonishing expedition.

In the night we had variable light airs; but towards the Sunday 26, morning a breeze fprung up at S. and afterwards at S. E. with which we proceeded flowly to the northward, along the shore.

Between fix and feven o'clock two canoes came off, and told us that they had heard of yesterday's adventure, notwithflanding which the people came on board, and traded very quietly and honeftly for whatever they had: foon after two canoes came off from a more distant part of the shore; these were of a much larger fize, and full of people: when they came near, they called off the other canoes which were along fide of the ship, and after a short conference they all came up together. The strangers appeared to be persons of a fuperior rank; their canoes were well carved with many ornaments, and they had with them a great variety of weaNovember. Sunday 26. pons: they had patoo-patoos both of flone and whalebone, upon which they appeared to fet a great value; they had also ribs of whale, of which we had before feen imitations in wood, carved and adorned with tufts of dog's hair. Their complexions were browner than those of the people we had feen to the fouthward, and their bodies and faces were more marked with the black stains which they call Amoco: they had a broad spiral on each buttock; and the thighs of many of them were almost intirely black, some narrow lines only being left untouched, so that at first fight they appeared to wear striped breeches. With respect to the Amoco, every different tribe feemed to have a different custom, for all the men, in fome canoes, feemed to be almost covered with it, and those in others had scarcely a stain, except on the lips, which were black in all of them without a fingle exception. These gentlemen, for a long time, refused to part with any of their weapons, whatever was offered for them; at laft, however, one of them produced a piece of tale, wrought into the shape of an ax, and agreed to fell it for a piece of cloth: the cloth was handed over the ship's side, but his honour immediately put off his canoe with the ax. We had recourse to our usual expedient, and fired a musket ball over the canoe, upon which it put back to the ship, and the piece of cloth was returned; all the boats then went ashore, without offering any further intercourfe.

At noon, the main land extended from S. by E. to N. W. by W. a remarkable point of land bearing W. diffant four or five miles; at three we passed it, and I gave it the name of Cape Bret, in honour of Sir Piercy. The land of this Cape is considerably higher than any part of the adjacent coast: at the point of it, is a high round hillock, and N. E. by N. at the distance of about a mile, is a small high island or rock, which, like several that have already been described, was perforated

361

bridge. This Cape, or at least some part of it, is by the natives called Mottle occess and it? perforated quite through, fo as to appear like the arch of a tives called Motugogogo, and it lies in latitude 35° 10' 30" S. Sanday 26. longitude 185° 25' W. On the west side of it is a large and pretty deep bay, lying in S. W. by W. in which there appeared to be feveral fmall islands: the point that forms the N. W entrance, lies W. 1 N. at the distance of three or four leagues from Cape Bret, and I distinguished it by the name of Point POCOCKE. On the west side of the bay we saw several villages, both upon islands and the main, and feveral very large canoes came off to us, full of people, who made a better appearance than any we had feen yet: they were all flout and well-made; their hair, which was black, was tied up in a bunch on the crown of their heads, and fluck with white feathers. In each of the canoes were two or three Chiefs. whose habits were of the best fort of cloth, and covered with dog's fkin, fo as to make an agreeable appearance: most of these people were marked with the Amoco, like those who had been alongfide of us before: their manner of trading was also equally fraudulent; and the officers neglecting either to punish or fright them, one of the midshipmen who had been defrauded in his bargain, had recourfe, for revenge, to an expedient which was equally ludicrous and fevere: he got a fishing line, and when the man who had cheated him was close under the ship's side in his canoe, he heaved the lead with fo good an aim that the hook caught him by the backfide; he then pulled the line, and the man holding back, the hook broke in the shank, and the beard was left flicking in the flefh.

During the course of this day, though we did not range more than fix or eight leagues of the coast, we had along-· fide and on board the ship between four and five hundred of the VOL. II. 3 A

November.

the natives, which is a proof that this part of the country is well inhabited.

Monday 27.

At eight o'clock the next morning, we were within a mile of a group of islands which lie close under the main, at the distance of two and twenty miles from Cape Bret, in the direction of N. W. by W. ½ W. At this place, having but little wind, we lay about two hours, during which time several canoes came off, and sold us some fish, which we called Cavalles, and for that reason I gave the same name to the islands. These people were very insolent, frequently threatening us, even while they were selling their fish; and when some more canoes came up, they began to pelt us with stones. Some small shot were then fired, and hit one of them while he had a stone in his hand, in the very action of throwing it into the ship: they did not, however, desist, till some others had been wounded, and then they went away, and we stood off to sea.

Wednef. 29.

The wind being directly against us, we kept plying to windward till the 29th, when we had rather lost than gained ground; I therefore bore up for a bay which lies to the west-ward of Cape Bret; at this time it was about two leagues to leeward of us; and at about eleven o'clock we anchored under the south west side of one of the many islands which line it on the fouth east, in four fathom and an half water; we shoaled our water to this depth all at once, and if this had not happened I should not have come to an anchor so soon. The Master was immediately sent out with two boats to sound, and he soon discovered that we had got upon a bank, which runs out from the north west end of the island, and that on the outside of it there was from eight to tensathom.

In the mean time the natives, to the number of near four hundred, crouded upon us in their canoes, and fome of them were admitted on board: to one, who feemed to be a Chief, I gave a piece of broad cloth, and distributed some trisling prefents among the reft. I perceived that some of these people had been about the ship when she was off at sea, and that they knew the power of our fire-arms, for the very fight of a gun threw them into manifest confusion: under this impression they traded very fairly; but the people in one of the canoes took the opportunity of our being at dinner to tow away our buoy: a musket was fired over them without effect, we then endeavoured to reach them with some small shot, but they were too far off: by this time they had got the buoy into their canoe, and we were obliged to fire a musket at them with ball: this hit one of them, and they immediately threw the buoy over board: a round fhot was then fired over them, which struck the water and went ashore. Two or three of the canoes immediately landed their people, who ran about the beach, as we imagined, in fearch of the ball. Tupia called to them, and affured them that while they were honest they should be safe, and with a little perfuasion many of them returned to the ship, and their behaviour was fuch as left us no reason to suspect that they intended to give us

After the ship was removed into deeper water, and properly secured, I went with the pinnace and yawl, manned and armed, accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, and landed upon the island, which was about three quarters of a mile distant: we observed that the canoes which were about the ship, did not follow us upon our leaving her, which we thought a good sign; but we had no sooner landed than they crouded to disserent parts of the island and came on shore. We were in a little cove, and in a few minutes were

any farther trouble.

3 A 2

furrounded

363

November. Wednef. 29.

furrounded by two or three hundred people, fome rushing from behind the heads of the cove, and others appearing on the tops of the hills: they were all armed, but they came on in fo confused and straggling a manner that we scarcely sufpected they meant us any harm, and we were determined that hostilities should not begin on our part. We marched towards them, and then drew a line upon the fand between them and us, which we gave them to understand they were not to pass: at first they continued quiet, but their weapons were held ready to ftrike, and they feemed to be rather irrefolute than peaceable. While we remained in this flate of fuspense, another party of Indians came up, and now growing more bold as their number increased, they began the dance and fong, which are their preludes to a battle: still, however, they delayed the attack, but a party ran to each of our boats, and attempted to draw them on shore; this seemed to be the fignal, for the people about us at the fame time began to press in upon our line: our fituation was now become too critical for us to remain longer inactive, I therefore discharged my musket, which was loaded with small shot, at one of the forwardest, and Mr. Banks and two of the men fired immediately afterwards: this made them fall back in fome confusion, but one of the Chiefs, who was at the diftance of about twenty yards, rallied them, and running forward waving his patoo-patoo, and calling loudly to his companions, led them to the charge. Dr. Solander, whose piece was not yet discharged, fired at this champion, who flopped fhort upon feeling the fhot, and then ran away with the reft: they did not however disperse, but got together upon a rifing ground, and feemed only to want fome leader of resolution to renew their attack. As they were now beyond the reach of fmall fhot, we fired with ball, but as none of them took place they still continued in a body, and in

365

this fituation we remained about a quarter of an hour: in the mean time the ship, from whence a much greater number of Indians were feen than could be discovered in our fituation, brought her broad-fide to bear, and intirely dispersed them, by firing a few shot over their heads. In this skirmish only two of the Indians were hurt with the fmall shot, and not a fingle life was loft, which would not have been the case if I had not restrained the men, who, either from fear or the love of mischief, shewed as much impatience to destroy them as a sportsman to kill his game. When we were in quiet possession of our cove, we laid down our arms and began to gather celery, which grew here in great plenty: after a little time we recollected to have feen fome of the people hide themselves in a cave of one of the rocks. we therefore went towards the place, when an old Indian, who proved to be the Chief that I had prefented with a piece of broad cloth in the morning, came out with his wife and his brother, and in a supplicating posture put themselves under our protection. We spoke kindly to them, and the old man then told us that he had another brother, who was one of those that had been wounded by the small shot, and enquired with much folicitude and concern if he would die. We affured him that he would not, and at the fame time put into his hand both a musket ball and some small shot, telling him, that those only who were wounded with the ball would die, and that the others would recover; at the fame time affuring him, that if we were attacked again, we should certainly defend ourselves with the ball, which would wound them mortally. Having now taken courage, they came and fat down by us, and as tokens of our perfect amity, we made them presents of fuch trifles as we happened to have about us.

November. Wednes. 29.

Soon after we re-imbarked in our boats, and having rowed to another cove in the fame ifland, climbed a neighbouring hill, which commanded the country to a confiderable distance. The prospect was very uncommon and romantic, confifting of innumerable islands, which formed as many harbours, where the water was as fmooth as a mill-pool: we faw also many towns, scattered houses, and plantations, the country being much more populous than any we had feen. One of the towns was very near us, from which many of the Indians advanced, taking great pains to fhew us that they were unarmed, and in their gestures and countenances expressing great meekness and humility. In the mean time fome of our people, who, when the Indians were to be punished for a fraud, assumed the inexorable justice of a Lycurgus, thought fit to break into one of their plantations, and dig up some potatoes: for this offence I ordered each of them to be punished with twelve lashes, after which two of them were discharged; but the third, infishing that it was no crime in an Englishman to plunder an Indian plantation, though it was a crime in an Indian to defraud an Englishman of a nail, I ordered him back into his confinement, from which I would not release him till he had received fix lashes more.

Thursday 30.

On the 30th, there being a dead calm, and no probability of our getting to fea, I fent the Master, with two boats to found the harbour; and all the forenoon had feveral canoes about the ship, who traded in a very fair and friendly manner. In the evening we went ashore upon the main, where the people received us very cordially; but we found nothing worthy of notice.

In this bay we were detained by contrary winds and calms feveral days, during which time our intercourse with the natives

natives was continued in the most peaceable and friendly manner, they being frequently about the ship, and we ashore, both upon the islands and the main. In one of our visits to the continent, an old man shewed us the instrument they use in staining their bodies, which exactly resembled those that were employed for the same purpose at Otaheite. We faw also the man who was wounded in attempting to fleal our buoy: the ball had paffed through the fleshy part of his arm, and grazed his breast; but the wound, under the care of Nature, the best surgeon, and a simple diet, the best nurse, was in a good state, and seemed to give the patient neither pain nor apprehension. We saw also the brother of our old Chief, who had been wounded with small shot in our skirmish: they had struck his thigh obliquely, and though feveral of them were still in the slesh, the wound feemed to be attended with neither danger nor pain. We found among their plantations the morus papyrifera, of which these people, as well as those of Otaheite, make cloth; but here the plant feems to be rare, and we faw no pieces of the cloth large enough for any use but to wear by way of ornament in their ears.

November.
Thursday 30.

Having one day landed in a very diffant part of the bay; the people immediately fled, except one old man, who accompanied us wherever we went, and feemed much pleafed with the little prefents we made him. We came at last to a little fort, built upon a small rock, which at high water was furrounded by the sea, and accessible only by a ladder: we perceived that he eyed us with a kind of restless solicitude as we approached it, and upon our expressing a desire to enter it, he told us that his wife was there: he saw that our curiosity was not diminished by this intelligence, and after some hesitation, he said, if we would promise to offer no indecency he would accompany us: our promise was readily given,

November.
Thursday 30.

and he immediately led the way. The ladder confifted of steps fastened to a pole, but we found the ascent both difficult and dangerous. When we entered we found three women, who, the moment they saw us, burst into tears of terror and surprize: some kind words and a few presents soon removed their apprehensions, and put them into good humour. We examined the house of our old friend, and by his interest two others, which were all that the fortistication contained, and having distributed a few more presents, we parted with mutual satisfaction.

December. I neiday 5.

At four o'clock in the morning of the 5th of December, we weighed, with a light breeze, but it being variable with frequent calms, we made little way. We kept turning out of the bay till the afternoon, and about ten o'clock we were fuddenly becalmed, fo that the ship would neither wear nor flay, and the tide or current fetting flrong, she drove towards land fo fast, that before any measures could be taken for her fecurity she was within a cable's length of the breakers: we had thirteen fathom water, but the ground was fo foul that we did not dare to drop our anchor; the pinnace therefore was immediately hoisted out to take the thip in tow, and the men, fensible of their danger, exerting themselves to the utmost, and a faint breeze springing up off the land, we perceived with unspeakable joy that she made head way, after having been fo near the shore that Tupia, who was not fensible of our hair's breadth escape, was at this very time conversing with the people upon the beach, whose voices were distinctly heard, notwithstanding the roar of the breakers. We now thought all danger was over, but about an hour afterwards, just as the man in the chains had cried "feventeen fathom," the ship struck. The shock threw us all into the utmost consternation; Mr. Banks, who had undreffed himfelf and was stepping into bed, ran hastily up to

the deck, and the man in the chains called out " five fathom;" by this time, the rock on which we had struck being to windward, the ship went off without having received the least damage, and the water very foon deepened to twenty fathom.

1769.

This rock lies half a mile W. N. W. of the northermost or outermost island on the fouth east side of the bay. We had light airs from the land, with calms, till nine o'clock the Wednes. 6. next morning, when we got out of the bay, and a breeze fpringing up at N. N. W. we flood out to fea.

This bay, as I have before observed, lies on the west side of Cape Bret, and I named it the BAY OF ISLANDS, from the great number of islands which line its shores, and form feveral harbours equally fafe and commodious, where there is room and depth for any number of shipping. That in which we lay is on the fouth west side of the fouth westermost island, called MATUARO, on the fouth east side of the bay. I have made no accurate furvey of this bay, being difcouraged by the time it would cost me; I thought also that it was fufficient to be able to affirm that it afforded us good anchorage, and refreshment of every kind. It was not the feafon for roots, but we had plenty of fish, most of which, however, we purchased of the natives, for we could catch very little ourselves either with net or line. fhewed the natives our feine, which is fuch as the King's thips are generally furnished with, they laughed at it, and in triumph produced their own, which was indeed of an enormous fize, and made of a kind of grass, which is very ftrong: it was five fathom deep, and by the room it took up, it could not be lefs than three or four hundred fathom long. Fishing seems indeed to be the chief business of life in this part of the country; we faw about all their towns a great 3 B Vol. II. number December., Wednes. 6. number of nets, laid in heaps like hay-cocks, and covered with a thatch to keep them from the weather, and we fcarcely entered a house where some of the people were not employed in making them. The fish we procured here were sharks, sling-rays, sea-bream, mullet, mackrel, and some others.

The inhabitants in this bay are far more numerous than in any other part of the country that we had before vifited; it did not appear to us that they were united under one head, and though their towns were fortified, they feemed to live together in perfect amity.

It is high water in this bay at the full and change of the moon, about eight o'clock, and the tide then rifes from fix to eight feet perpendicularly. It appears, from fuch obfervations as I was able to make of the tides upon the feacoast, that the flood comes from the southward; and I have reason to think that there is a current which comes from the westward, and sets along the shore to the S. E. or S. S. E. as the land happens to lie.

CHAP. V.

Range from the Bay of Islands round North Cape to Queen Charlotte's Sound; and a Description of that Part of the Coaft.

N Thursday the 7th of December, at noon, Cape Bret bore S.S. E. & E. distant ten miles, and our latitude, by observation, was 34° 59' S.; foon after we made several obfervations of the fun and moon, the refult of which made our longitude 185° 36' W. The wind being against us, we had made but little way. In the afternoon, we flood in shore, and fetched close under the Cavalles, from which islands the main trends W. by N.: feveral canoes put off and followed us, but a light breeze fpringing up, I did not chuse to wait for them. I kept standing to the W. N. W. and N. W. till the next morning ten o'clock, when I tacked and flood Friday 8, in for the shore, from which we were about five leagues diftant. At noon, the westermost land in fight bore W. by S. and was about four leagues diffant. In the afternoon, we had a gentle breeze to the west, which in the evening came to the fouth, and continuing fo all night, by day-light Saturday o. brought us pretty well in with the land, feven leagues to the westward of the Cavalles, where we found a deep bay running in S. W. by W. and W. S. W. the bottom of which we could but just fee, and there the land appeared to be low and level. To this bay, which I called Doubtless Bay, the entrance is formed by two points, which lie W.N.W. and E. S. E. and are five miles distant from each other.

1769.

December.
Saturday 9.

wind not permitting us to look in here, we fleered for the westermost land in fight, which bore from us W. N. W. about three leagues, but before we got the length of it it fell calm.

While we lay becalmed, feveral canoes came off to us, but the people having heard of our guns, it was not without great difficulty that they were perfuaded to come under our flern: after having bought fome of their cloaths, as well as their fifh, we began to make enquiries concerning their country, and learnt, by the help of Tupia, that, at the diftance of three days rowing in their canoes, at a place called MOORE-WHENNUA, the land would take a fhort turn to the fouthward, and from thence extend no more to the west. This place we concluded to be the land discovered by Tafman, which he called CAPE MARIA VAN DIEMEN, and finding these people so intelligent, we inquired farther, if they knew of any country besides their own: they answered, that they never had visited any other, but that their ancestors had told them, that to the N. W. by N. or N. N. W. there was a country of great extent, called ULIMAROA, to which some people had failed in a very large canoe; that only part of them returned, and reported, that after a passage of a month they had feen a country where the people eat hogs. Tupia then enquired whether these adventurers brought any hogs with them when they returned; they faid No: then, replied Tupia, your flory is certainly false, for it cannot be believed that men who came back from an expedition without hogs, had ever vifited a country where hogs were to be procured. It is however remarkable, notwithstanding the shrewdness of Tupia's objection, that when they mentioned hogs it was not by description but by name, calling them Booab, the name which is given them in the South-sea islands; but if

the animal had been wholly unknown to them, and they had had no communication with people to whom it was known, they could not possibly have been acquainted with the name.

1769. December. Saturday q.

About ten o'clock at night, a breeze fprung up at W. N. W. with which we flood off north; and at noon the next day, the Sunday 10. Cavalles bore S. E. by E. distant eight leagues; the entrance of Doubtless Bay S. by W. distant three leagues; and the north west extremity of the land in fight, which we judged to be the main, bore N. W. by W.: our latitude by observation was 34° 44' S. In the evening, we found the variation to be 12° 41' E. by the azimuth, and 12° 40' by the amplitude.

Early in the morning, we flood in with the land, feven Monday 11, leagues to the westward of Doubtless Bay, the bottom of which is not far diffant from the bottom of another large bay, which the shore forms at this place, being separated only by a low neck of land, which juts out into a peninfula that I have called Knuckle Point. About the middle of this bay, which we called SANDY BAY, is a high mountain, standing upon a distant shore, to which I gave the name of Mount CAMEL. The latitude here is 34° 51' S. and longitude 186° 50'. We had twenty-four and twenty-five fathom water, with a good bottom; but there feems to be nothing in this bay that can induce a ship to put into it; for the land about it is utterly barren and defolate, and, except Mount Camel, the fituation is low: the foil appears to be nothing but white fand, thrown up in low irregular hills and narrow ridges, lying parallel with the shore. But barren and desolate as this place is, it is not without inhabitants: we faw one village on the west side of Mount Camel, and another on the east fide; we saw also sive canoes full of people, who pulled after the ship, but could not come up with us. At

nine

1769. December. Monday 11. nine o'clock, we tacked and flood to the northward; and at noon, the Cavalles bore S. E. by E. distant thirteen leagues; the north extremity of the land in fight, making like an island, bore N.W. : N. distant nine leagues; and Mount Camel bore S.W. by S. distance fix leagues.

Tuefday 12.

The wind being contrary, we kept plying northward till five o'clock in the evening of the 12th, when, having made very little way, we tacked and flood to the N. E. being two leagues to the northward of Mount Camel, and about a mile and a half from the shore, in which situation we had two and twenty fathom water.

Wednef, 13.

At ten, it began to blow and rain, which brought us under double reefed topfails; at twelve, we tacked and flood to the westward till seven the next morning, when we tacked and flood again to the N.E. being about a mile to windward of the place where we tacked last night. Soon after it blew very hard at N.N.W. with heavy fqualls and much rain, which brought us under our courses, and split the maintopfail; fo that we were obliged to unbend it and bend another: at ten, it became more moderate, and we fet the topfails, double reefed: at noon, having strong gales and heavy weather, we tacked and flood to the westward, and had no land in fight for the first time fince we had been upon this coaft.

We had now firong gales at W. and W.S.W.; and at half an hour past three we tacked and flood to the northward. Soon after, a finall ifland lying off Knuckle Point bore S. W. diffant half a league. In the evening, having fplit the fore and mizen topfails, we brought the ship under her courses; and at midnight, we wore, and flood to the fouthward till Thursday 11. five in the morning; when we tacked and stood to the N.W. and faw land bearing fouth, at the diffance of eight or nine

leagues;

leagues; by this we discovered that we had fallen much to the leeward fince yesterday morning. At noon, our latitude by observation was 34° 6'S.; and the same land which we had feen before to the N. W. now bore S. W. and appeared to be the northern extremity of the country. We had a large fwell rolling in from the westward, and therefore concluded that we were not covered by any land in that quarter. At eight in the evening, we tacked and flood to the westward, with as much fail as we could bear; and at noon the next Friday 150 day, we were in latitude 34° 10', longitude 185° 45' W. and by estimation about seventeen leagues from the land, notwithstanding our utmost endeavours to keep in with it.

On the 16th, at fix in the morning, we faw land from the Saturday 16: mast-head, bearing S.S.W.; and at noon it bore S. by W. distant fourteen leagues: while we were standing in for the fhore we founded feveral times, but had no ground with ninety fathom. At eight, we tacked in a hundred and eight fathom, at about three or four miles from the shore, which was the same point of land that we had to the N.W. before we were blown off. At noon it bore S. W. distant about three miles; Mount Camel bore S. by E. distant about eleven leagues, and the westermost land in fight bore S. 75 W.; the latitude by observation was 34° 20'S. At four o'clock, we tacked and stood in shore, in doing which, we met with a strong rippling, and the ship fell fast to leeward, which we imputed to a current fetting east. At eight, we tacked and flood off till eight the next morning; when we tacked and Sunday 17. flood in, being about ten leagues from the land: at noon, the point of land which we were near the day before, bore S.S.W. distant five leagues. The wind still continued at west; and at feven o'clock, we tacked in thirty-five fathom, when the point of land which has been mentioned before, bore N.W. by N. distant four or five miles; so that we had not gained

December. Sunday 17.

one inch to windward the last twenty-four hours, which confirmed our opinion that there was a current to the eaftward. The point of land I called North Cape, it being the northern extremity of this country. It lies in latitude 34° 22' S. longitude 186° 55' W. and thirty-one leagues diftant from Cape Bret, in the direction of N. 63 W. It forms the north point of Sandy Bay, and is a peninfula jutting out N. E. about two miles, and terminating in a bluff head that is flat at the top. The ishmus which joins this head to the main land is very low, and for that reason the land of the Cape, from feveral fituations, has the appearance of an island. It is still more remarkable when it is seen from the fouthward, by the appearance of a high round island at the S.E. point of the Cape; but this also is a deception; for what appears to be an ifland is a round hill, joined to the Cape by a low narrow neck of land. Upon the Cape we faw a Hippah or village, and a few inhabitants; and on the fouth east fide of it there appears to be anchorage, and good shelter from the fouth west and north west winds.

Thursday 21.

Saturday 23.

Sunday 24.

We continued to stand off and on, making N. W. till noon on the 21st, when North Cape bore S. 39 E. distant thirty-eight leagues. Our situation varied only a few leagues till the 23d, when, about seven o'clock in the evening, we saw land from the mast-head, bearing S. ½ E. At eleven the next morning, we saw it again, bearing S. S. E. at the distance of eight leagues: we now stood to the S. W.; and at four o'clock, the land bore S. E. by S. distant four leagues, and proved to be a small island, with other islands or rocks, still smaller, lying off the south west end of it, and another lying off the north east end, which were discovered by Tasman and called the Three Kings. The principal island lies in latitude 34° 12′ S. longitude 187° 48′ W. and distant sources or sisteen leagues from North Cape, in the direction of W. 14 N. At midnight, we

tacked and flood to the N. E. till fix the next morning, which was Christmas day, when we tacked and stood to the fouthward. At noon, the Three Kings bore E. 8 N. distant five or fix leagues. The variation this morning by the azimuth was 11° 25' E.

1769. December. Monday 25.

On the 26th, we flood to the fouthward close upon a wind; Tuesday 26. and at noon, were in latitude 35° 10' S. longitude 188° 20' W. the Three Kings bearing N. 26 W. distant twenty-two leagues. In this fituation we had no land in fight; and yet, by observation, we were in the latitude of the Bay of Islands; and by my reckoning but twenty leagues to the westward of North Cape: from whence it appears, that the northern part of this island is very narrow; for otherwise we must have seen some part of the west side of it. We stood to the southward till twelve at night, and then tacked and flood to the northward.

At four o'clock in the morning, the wind freshened, and Wednes, 27, at nine, blew a florm; fo that we were obliged to bring the thip to under her mainfail. Our course made good between noon this day and yesterday was S.S.W. 1 W. distance eleven miles. The Three Kings bore N. 27 E. distant feventy-feven The gale continued all this day, and till two the miles. next morning, when it fell, and began to veer to the fouth- Thursday 28. ward and S. W. where it fixed about four, when we made fail and steered east in for the land, under the fore-fail and mainfail; but the wind then rifing, and by eight o'clock being increased to a hurricane, with a prodigious sea, we were obliged to take in the main-fail; we then wore the ship, and brought her to with her head to the north west. At noon the gale was fomewhat abated, but we had flill heavy fqualls. Our course made good this day, was north, a little eafterly, twenty-nine miles; latitude by account 34° 50' S. Vol. II. 3 C longitude

December.
Thurfday 23.

Friday 29.

longitude 188° 27′ W.; the Three Kings bore N. 41 E. distant fifty-two miles. At feven o'clock in the evening, the wind being at S. W. and S. W. by W. with hard squalls, we wore and lay on the other tack; and at fix the next morning spread more fail. Our course and distance since yesterday was E. by N. twenty-nine miles. In the afternoon, we had hard

Saturday 30.

fqualls at S. W.; and at eight in the evening, wore and flood to the N.W. till five the next morning; and then wore and flood to the S.E. At fix, we faw the land bearing N.E. diftant about fix leagues, which we judged to be Cape Maria Van Diemen, and which corresponded with the account that had been given of it by the Indians. At midnight we wore and flood to the S.E. And on the next day at noon. Cape

Sunday 21.

Van Diemen, and which corresponded with the account that had been given of it by the Indians. At midnight we wore and stood to the S. E. And on the next day at noon, Cape Maria Van Diemen bore N. E. by N. distant about five leagues. At seven in the evening, we tacked and stood to the westward, with a moderate breeze at S. W. by S. and S. W. Mount Camel then bore N. 83 E. and the northermost land, or Cape Maria Van Diemen, N. by W.; we were now distant from the nearest land about three leagues, where we had something more than forty fathom water; and it must be remarked, that Mount Camel, which when seen on the other side did not seem to be more than one mile from the sea, seemed to be but little more when seen from this side; which is a demonstration that the land here cannot be more than two or three miles broad, or from sea to sea.

1770. January. Monday 1. At fix o'clock in the morning of January the 1st, 1770, being New-year's Day, we tacked and stood to the eastward, the Three Kings bearing N. W. by N. At noon, we tacked again, and stood to the westward, being in latitude 34° 37'S.; the Three Kings bearing N. W. by N. at the distance of ten or eleven leagues; and Cape Maria Van Diemen N. 31 E. distant about four leagues and an half: in this situation we had fifty-four fathom water.

- During this part of our navigation two particulars are very remarkable; in latitude 35° S. and in the midft of fummer, I met with a gale of wind, which for its strength and continuance was fuch as I had fcarcely ever been in before, and we were three weeks in getting ten leagues to the westward, and five weeks in getting fifty leagues, for at this time it was fo long fince we passed Cape Bret. During the gale, we were happily at a confiderable distance from the land, otherwise it is highly probable that we should never have returned to relate our adventures.

At five o'clock in the evening, having a fresh breeze to the westward, we tacked and stood to the southward: at this time North Cape bore E. 3 N. and just open of a point that lies three leagues W. by N. from it.

This Cape, as I have observed before, is the northermost extremity of this country, and the eastermost point of a peninfula, which runs out N. W. and N. W. by N. feventeen or eighteen leagues, and of which Cape Maria Van Diemen is the westermost point. Cape Maria lies in latitude 34° 30'S. longitude 187° 18' W.; and from this point the land trends away S.E. by S. and S.E. beyond Mount Camel, and is every where a barren shore, consisting of banks of white fand.

On the 2d, at noon, we were in latitude 35° 17'S. and Cape Tuefday 20 Maria bore north, diffant about fixteen leagues, as near as we could guess; for we had no land in fight, and did not dare to go nearer, as a fresh gale blew right on shore, with a rolling fea. The wind continued at W.S.W. and S.W. with frequent fqualls; in the evening we shortened fail, and at midnight tacked, and made a trip to the N.W. till two in the morning, when we wore and flood to the fouthward. At Wedness; break of day, we made fail, and edged away, in order to make

January. Wedness. 3. land; and at ten o'clock, we faw it, bearing N.W. It appeared to be high, and at noon extended from N. to E. N.E. distant by estimation eight or ten leagues. Cape Maria then bore N. 2° 30′ W. distant thirty-three leagues; our latitude by observation was 36° 2′S. About seven o'clock in the evening, we were within fix leagues of it; but having a fresh gale upon it, with a rolling sea, we hauled our wind to the S.E. and kept on that course close upon the wind all night, sounding several times, but having no ground with one hundred, and one hundred and ten fathom.

Thursday 4.

At eight o'clock the next morning, we were about five leagues from the land, and off a place which lies in latitude 36° 25' and had the appearance of a bay or inlet. It bore east; and in order to see more of it, we kept on our course till cleven o'clock, when we were not more than three leagues from it, and then difcovered that it was neither inlet nor bay, but a tract of low land, bounded by higher lands on each fide, which produced the deception. At this time, we tacked and flood to the N.W.; and at noon, the land was not diffant more than three or four leagues. We were now in latitude 36° 31' S. longitude 185° 50' W. Cape Maria bore N. 25 W. distant forty-four leagues and an half; fo that the coast must be almost strait in the direction of S.S.E. 3 E. and N.N.W. 3 W. nearly. In about latitude 35° 45' is fome high land adjoining to the fea; to the fouthward of which the fhore is also high, and has the most desolate and inhospitable appearance that can be imagined. Nothing is to be feen but hills of fand, on which there is fcarcely a blade of verdure; and a vast sea, impelled by the westerly winds, breaking upon it in a dreadful furf, renders it not only forlorn, but frightful; complicating the idea of danger with defolation, and impressing the mind at once with a sense of misery

misery and death. From this place I steered to the northward, refolving never more to come within the fame distance of the coast, except the wind should be very favourable indeed. I flood under a fresh fail all the day, hoping to get an offing by the next noon, and we made good a course of a hundred and two miles N. 38 W. Our latitude by observation was 35° 10'S.; and Cape Maria bore N. 10 E. distance forty-one miles. In the night, the wind shifted from S. W. by S. to S. and blew fresh. Our course to the noon of the Friday 5. 5th was N. 75 W. distance eight miles.

At day-break on the 6th, we faw the land which we took Saturday 6. to be Cape Maria, bearing N, N. E. distant eight or nine leagues: and on the 7th, in the afternoon, the land bore Sunday 7. east: and some time after, we discovered a turtle upon the water; but being awake, it dived infantly, fo that we could not take it. At noon, the high land, which has just been mentioned, extended from N. to E. at the distance of five or fix leagues; and in two places, a flat gave it the appearance of a bay or inlet. The course that we made good the last four and twenty hours was S. 33 E. fifty-three miles; Cape Maria bearing N. 25 W. distant thirty leagues.

We failed within fight of land all this day, with gentle gales between the N.E. and N.W.; and by the next noon Monday S. had failed fixty-nine miles, in the direction of S. 37 E.; our latitude by observation was 36° 39'S. The land which on the 4th we had taken for a bay, now bore N. E. by N. distant five leagues and an half; and Cape Maria N. 29 W. fortyfeven leagues.

On the 9th, we continued a fouth east course till eight Tuesday 9. o'clock in the evening, having run feven leagues fince noon, with the wind at N. N. E. and N. and being within three or four leagues of the land, which appeared to be low and fandy,

January.

fandy. I then fleered S. E. by S. in a direction parallel with the coast, having from forty-eight to thirty-four fathom water, with a black fandy bottom. At day-break the next morning, we found ourselves between two and three leagues from the land, which began to have a better appearance, rifing in gentle flopes, and being covered with trees and herbage. We faw a fmoke and a few houses, but it appeared to be but thinly inhabited. At feven o'clock, we fleered S. by E. and afterwards S. by W. the land lying in that direction. At nine, we were abreaft of a point which rifes with an eafy afcent from the fea to a confiderable height: this point, which lies in latitude 37° 43', I named Woody Head. About eleven miles from this Head, in the direction of S.W. W. lies a very fmall island, upon which we faw a great number of gannets, and which we therefore called GANNET ISLAND. At noon, a high craggy point bore E. N. E. distant about a league and a half, to which I gave the name of ALBETROSS Point: it lies in latitude 38° 4' S. longitude 184° 42' W.: and is distant seven leagues in the direction of S. 17 W. from Woody Head. On the north fide of this point the shore forms a bay, in which there appears to be anchorage and shelter for shipping. Our course and distance for the last twentyfour hours was S. 37 E. fixty-nine miles; and at noon this day Cape Maria bore N. 30 W. distant eighty-two leagues. Between twelve and one, the wind shifted at once from N. N. E. to S. S. W. with which we flood to the westward till four o'clock in the afternoon; and then tacked, and flood again in shore till seven; when we tacked again and stood to the westward, having but little wind. At this time, Albetrofs Point bore N.E. distant near two leagues, and the fouthermost land in fight bore S.S.W. 1/2 W. being a very high mountain, and in appearance greatly refembling the Pike of Teneriffe. In this fituation we had thirty fathom water, and having

1770. lanuary.

having but little wind all night, we tacked about four in the morning, and flood in for the shore. Soon after, it fell calm; and being in forty-two fathom water, the people caught a few fea-bream. At eleven, a light breeze fprung up from the west, and we made fail to the fouthward. We continued to fleer S. by W. and S. S. W. along the shore, at the distance of about four leagues with gentle breezes from between N. W. and N. N. E. At feven in the evening, we faw the top of the Peak to the fouthward, above the clouds which concealed it below. And at this time, the fouthermost land in fight bore S. by W. the variation, by feveral azimuths which were taken both in the morning and the evening, appeared to be 14° 15' eafterly.

At noon on the 12th, we were diffant about three leagues Friday 12. from the shore which lies under the Peak, but the Peak itfelf was wholly concealed by clouds: we judged it to bear about S. S. E.; and fome very remarkable peaked islands, which lay under the shore, bore E.S.E. distant three or fourleagues. At feven in the evening we founded, and had forty-two fathom, being diffant from the shore between two and three leagues: we judged the Peak to bear eaft; and after it was dark, we faw fires upon the shore.

At five o'clock in the morning we faw, for a few minutes, Saturday 176 the fummit of the Peak, towering above the clouds, and covered with fnow. It now bore N.E.; it lies in latitude 39° 16' S. longitude 185° 15' W.; and I named it Mount EGMONT, in honour of the Earl. It feems to have a large base, and to rise with a gradual ascent; it lies near the sea, and is furrounded by a flat country, of a pleafant appearance, being clothed with verdure and wood, which renders it the more conspicuous, and the shore under it forms a large cape, which I have named CAPE EGMONT. It lies

S.S.W.

January.
Saturday 13.

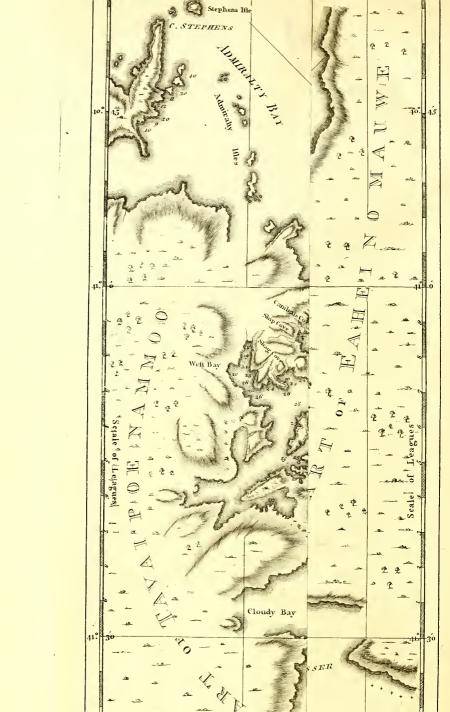
S.S.W. W. twenty-seven leagues distant from Albetross Point, and on the north side of it are two small islands, which lie near a remarkable point on the main, that rises to a considerable height in the form of a sugar-loaf. To the southward of the Cape, the land trends away S.E. by E. and S.S. E. and seems to be every where a bold shore. At noon, Cape Egmont bore about N.E.; and in this direction, at about four leagues from the shore, we had forty fathom of water. The wind during the rest of the day was from W. to N.W. by W. and we continued to steer along the shore S.S. E. and S. E. by E. keeping at the distance of between two and three leagues. At half an hour after seven, we had another transient view of Mount Edgcombe, which bore N. 17 W. distant about ten leagues.

Egmont

Sunday 14.

At five the next morning, we fleered S. E. by S. the coast inclining more foutherly; and in about half an hour, we faw land bearing S. W. by S. for which we hauled up. At noon the north west extremity of the land in fight bore S. 63 W. and fome high land, which had the appearance of an island lying under the main, bore S.S.E. distant five leagues. We were now in a bay, the bottom of which bearing fouth we could not fee, though it was clear in that quarter. Our latitude by observation was 40° 27'S. longitude 184° 39' W. At eight in the evening, we were within two leagues of the land which we had discovered in the morning, having run ten leagues fince noon: the land which then bore S. 63 W. now bore N. 59 W. at the distance of seven or eight leagues, and had the appearance of an island. Between this land and CAPE EGMONT lies the bay, the west side of which was our fituation at this time, and the land here is of a confiderable height, and diversified by hill and valley.



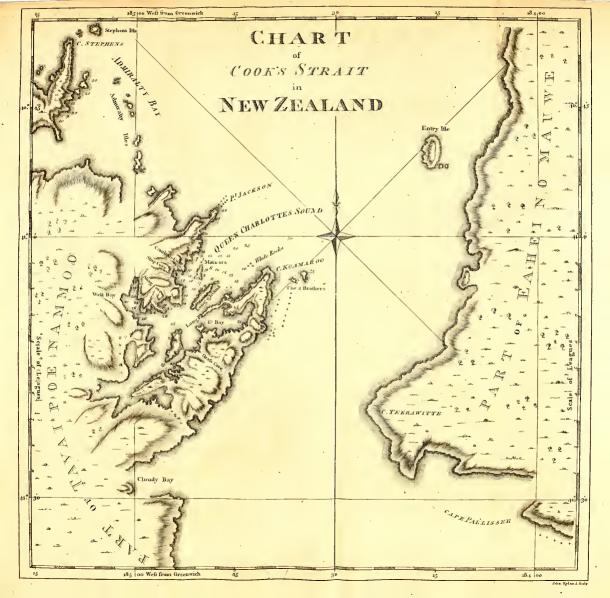


CHAP. VI.

Transactions in Queen Charlotte's Sound: Passage through the Streight which divides the two Islands, and back to Cape Turnagain: Horrid Custom of the Inhabitants: Remarkable Melody of Birds: A Visit to a Heppah, and many other Particulars.

HE shore at this place seemed to form several bays, into one of which I proposed to carry the ship, which was become very foul, in order to careen her, and at the same time repair fome defects, and recruit our wood and water.

With this view, I kept plying on and off all night, having from eighty to fixty-three fathom. At day-break the next morning, I flood for an inlet which runs in S.W.; and at Monday 15. eight I got within the entrance, which may be known by a reef of rocks, stretching from the north west point, and some rocky islands which lie off the fouth east point. At nine o'clock, there being little wind, and what there was being variable, we were carried by the tide or current within two cables' length of the north west shore, where we had fifty-four fathom water, but by the help of our boats we got clear. Just at this time we saw a sea-lion rise twice near the shore the head of which exactly resembled that of the male which has been described in the Account of Lord Anson's Voyage. We also faw some of the natives in a canoe cross the bay, and a village fituated upon the point of an island which lies seven or eight miles within the entrance. At noon, we were the length of this island, but there being little wind, the boats VOL. II. 3 D were



CHAP. VI.

Transactions in Queen Charlotte's Sound: Passage through the Streight which divides the two Islands, and back to Cape Turnagain: Horrid Custom of the Inhabitants: Remarkable Melody of Birds: A Visit to a Heppah, and many other Particulars.

THE shore at this place seemed to form several bays, into one of which I proposed to carry the ship, which was become very foul, in order to careen her, and at the fame Sunday 14. time repair fome defects, and recruit our wood and water.

1770.

With this view, I kept plying on and off all night, having from eighty to fixty-three fathom. At day-break the next morning, I flood for an inlet which runs in S.W.; and at Monday 15. eight I got within the entrance, which may be known by a reef of rocks, stretching from the north west point, and some rocky islands which lie off the fouth east point. At nine o'clock, there being little wind, and what there was being variable, we were carried by the tide or current within two cables' length of the north west shore, where we had fifty-four fathom water, but by the help of our boats we got clear. Just at this time we saw a sea-lion rise twice near the shore the head of which exactly refembled that of the male which has been described in the Account of Lord Anson's Voyage. We also faw some of the natives in a canoe cross the bay, and a village fituated upon the point of an island which lies feven or eight miles within the entrance. At noon, we were the length of this island, but there being little wind, the boats VOL. II. 3 D were

January.

Monday 15.

were ordered ahead to tow. About one o'clock, we hauled close round the fouth west end of the island; and the inhabitants of the village which was built upon it, were immediately up in arms. About two, we anchored in a very safe and convenient cove, on the north west side of the bay, and facing the fouth west end of the island, in eleven fathom water, with soft ground, and moored with the stream anchor.

We were about four long cannon shot distant from the the village or Heppah, from which four canoes were immediately dispatched, as we imagined to reconnoitre, and if they should find themselves able, to take us. The men were all well armed, and dreffed nearly as they are represented in the sigure published by Tasman; two corners of the cloth which they wrapped round the body were paffed over the shoulders from behind, and being brought down to the upper edge of it before, were made fast to it just under the breaft; but few, or none, had feathers in their hair. They rowed round the ship several times, with their usual tokens of menace and defiance, and at last began the assault by throwing fome stones: Tupia exposulated with them. but apparently to very little purpose; and we began to fear that they would oblige us to fire at them, when a very old man in one of the boats expressed a desire of coming on board. We gladly encouraged him in his defign, a rope was thrown into his canoe, and the was immediately alongfide of the ship: the old man rose up, and prepared to come up the ship's side, upon which all the rest expostulated with great vehemence against the attempt, and at last laid hold of him, and held him back: he adhered however to his purpose with a calm but fleady perfeverance, and having at length difengaged himfelf, he came on board. We received him with all possible expressions of friendship and kindness, and after after some time dismissed him, with many presents to his companions. As foon as he was returned on board his canoe, the people in all the rest began to dance, but whether as a token of enmity or friendship we could not certainly determine, for we had feen them dance in a disposition both for peace and war. In a short time, however, they retired to their fort, and foon after I went on shore, with most of the gentlemen, at the bottom of the cove, a-breast of the Thip.

We found a fine stream of excellent water, and wood in the greatest plenty, for the land here was one forest, of vast extent. As we brought the feine with us, we hauled it once or twice, and with fuch fuccess that we caught near three hundred weight of fish of different forts, which was equally distributed among the ship's company.

At day-break, while we were bufy in careening the ship, Tuesday 16. three canoes came off to us, having on board above a hundred men, besides several of their women, which we were pleafed to fee, as in general it is a fign of peace; but they foon afterwards became very troublefome, and gave us reafon to apprehend fome mischief from them to the people that were in our boats alongfide the ship. While we were in this fituation, the long-boat was fent ashore with some water casks, and some of the canoes attempting to follow her, we found it necessary to intimidate them by firing some fmall shot: we were at such a distance that it was impossible to hurt them, yet our reproof had its effect, and they defined from the purfuit. They had some fish in their canoes which they now offered to fell, and which, though it flunk, we confented to buy: for this purpose a man in a small boat was fent among them, and they traded for some time very fairly. At length, however, one of them watching his opportunity,

January. Tuefday 16.

fnatched at fome paper which our market-man held in his hand, and missing it, immediately put himself in a posture of defence, flourishing his patoo-patoo, and making show as if he was about to strike; fome small shot were then fired at him from the ship, a few of which struck him upon the knee: this put an end to our trade, but the Indians still continued near the ship, rowing round her many times, and converfing with Tupia, chiefly concerning the traditions they had among them with respect to the antiquities of their country. To this fubject they were led by the enquiries which Tupia had been directed to make, whether they had ever feen fuch a veffel as ours, or had ever heard that any fuch had been upon their coast. These enquiries were all answered in the negative, so that tradition has preserved among them no memorial of Tasman; though, by an obfervation made this day, we find that we are only fifteen miles fouth of Murderer's bay, our latitude being 41° 5′ 32″, and Murderer's bay, according to his account, being 40° 50'.

The women in these canoes, and some of the men, had a head-dress which we had not before seen. It consisted of a bunch of black seathers, made up in a round form, and tied upon the top of the head, which it intirely covered, and made it twice as high, to appearance, as it was in reality.

After dinner, I went in the pinnace with Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, Tupia, and fome others, into another cove, about two miles diftant from that in which the fhip lay: in our way we faw fomething floating upon the water, which we took for a dead feal, but upon rowing up to it, found it to be the body of a woman, which to all appearance had been dead fome days. We proceeded to our cove, where we went on fhore, and found a fmall family of Indians, who appeared to be greatly terrified at our approach, and all ran

Tuesday 16.

389

away except one. A conversation between this person and Tupia soon brought back the rest, except an old man and a child, who still kept aloof, but stood peeping at us from the woods. Of these people, our curiosity naturally led us to enquire after the body of the woman which we had seen floating upon the water: and they acquainted us, by Tupia, that she was a relation, who had died a natural death; and that, according to their custom, they had tied a stone to the body, and thrown it into the sea, which stone, they supposed, had by some accident been disengaged.

This family, when we came on shore, was employed in dreffing fome provisions: the body of a dog was at this time buried in their oven, and many provision baskets stood near it. Having cast our eyes carelessly into one of these, as we passed it, we saw two bones pretty cleanly picked, which did not feem to be the bones of a dog, and which, upon a nearer examination, we discovered to be those of a human body. At this fight we were fruck with horror, though it was only a confirmation of what we had heard many times fince we arrived upon this coaft. As we could have no doubt but the bones were human, neither could we have any doubt but that the flesh which covered them had been eaten. They were found in a provision basket; the slesh that remained appeared manifeltly to have been dreffed by fire, and in the griftles at the end, were the marks of the teeth which had gnawed them: to put an end however to conjecture, founded upon circumstances and appearances, we directed Tupia to ask what bones they were; and the Indians, without the least hesitation, answered, the bones of a man: they were then asked what was become of the flesh, and they replied that they had eaten it; but, faid Tupia, why did you not eat the body of the woman which we faw floating upon the water: the woman, faid they, died of difease; besides, she

January. Tuesday 16. was our relation, and we eat only the bodies of our enemies, who are killed in battle. Upon enquiry who the man was whose bones we had found, they told us, that about five days before, a boat belonging to their enemies came into the bay, with many perfons on board, and that this man was one of feven whom they had killed. Though ftronger evidence of this horrid practice prevailing among the inhabitants of this coast will scarcely be required, we have still ftronger to give. One of us asked if they had any human bones with the flesh remaining upon them, and upon their answering us that all had been eaten, we affected to disbelieve that the bones were human, and faid that they were the bones of a dog; upon which one of the Indians with fome eagerness took hold of his own fore-arm, and thrusting it towards us, faid, that the bone which Mr. Banks held in his hand had belonged to that part of a human body; at the fame time, to convince us that the flesh had been eaten, he took hold of his own arm with his teeth, and made shew of eating: he also bit and gnawed the bone which Mr. Banks had taken, drawing it through his mouth, and shewing, by figns, that it had afforded a delicious repaft; the bone was then returned to Mr. Banks, and he brought it away with him. Among the persons of this family, there was a woman who had her arms, legs, and thighs frightfully cut in feveral places; and we were told that she had inflicted the wounds upon herself, in token of her grief for the loss of her husband, who had been lately killed and eaten by their enemies, who had come from fome place to the eastward, towards which the Indians pointed.

Wednef. 17.

The ship lay at the distance of somewhat less than a quarter of a mile from the shore, and in the morning we were awakened by the singing of the birds: the number was incredible, and they seemed to strain their throats in emulation

391

of each other. This wild melody was infinitely fuperior to any that we had ever heard of the fame kind; it feemed to be like fmall bells, most exquisitely tuned, and perhaps the distance, and the water between, might be no small advantage to the found. Upon enquiry, we were informed that the birds here always began to fing about two hours after midnight, and continuing their musick till sun-rise, were, like our nightingales, filent the rest of the day. In the forenoon, a fmall canoe came off from the Indian village to the thip, and among those that were in it, was the old man who had first come on board at our arrival in the bay. As soon as it came alongfide, Tupia renewed the conversation, that had passed the day before, concerning their practice of eating human flesh, during which they repeated what they had told us already: but, faid Tupia, where are the heads? do you cat them too? Of the heads, faid the old man, we cat only the brains, and the next time I come I will bring fome of them to convince you that what we have told you is truth. After some farther conversation between these people and Tupia, they told him that they expected their enemies to come very fhortly, to revenge the death of the feven men whom they had killed and caten.

On the 18th, the Indians were more quiet than usual, no Thursday 18. canoe came near the ship, nor did we see one of them moving on the shore, their sishing, and other usual occupations being totally fuspended. We thought they expected an attack on this day, and therefore attended more diligently to what passed on shore; but we saw nothing to gratify our curiofity.

After breakfast, we went out in the pinnace, to take a view of the bay, which was of vast extent, and consided of numberless small harbours and coves, in every direction: we

confined

January. Thursday 18.

confined onr excursion, however, to the western side, and the country being an impenetrable forest where we landed, we could fee nothing worthy of notice: we killed, however, a good number of fhaggs, which we faw fitting upon their nests in the trees, and which, whether roasted or stewed, we confidered as very good provision. As we were returning, we faw a fingle man in a canoe fishing; we rowed up to him, and to our great furprize he took not the least notice of us, but even when we were alongfide of him, continued to follow his occupation, without adverting to us any more than if we had been invisible. He did not, however, appear to be either fullen or flupid: we requested him to draw up his net, that we might examine it, and he readily complied: it was of a circular form, extended by two hoops, and about feven or eight feet in diameter: the top was open, and feaears were fastened to the bottom as a bait: this he let down fo as to lie upon the ground, and when he thought fish enough were affembled over it, he drew it up by a very gentle and even motion, fo that the fifh rose with it, scarcely fenfible that they were lifted, till they came very near the furface of the water, and then were brought out in the net by a fudden jerk. By this fimple method he had caught abundance of fish, and indeed they are so plenty in this bay, that the catching them requires neither much labour nor

This day, fome of our people found in the skirts of the wood, near a hole or oven, three human hip-bones, which they brought on board; a farther proof that these people eat human sless. Mr. Monkhouse, our Surgeon, also brought on board, from a place where he saw many deserted houses, the hair of a man's head, which he had found, among many other things, tied up to the branches of trees.

In the morning of the 19th, we fet up the armourer's forge to repair the braces of the tiller, and other iron-work, all hands on board being fill bufy in careening, and other necessary operations about the vessel: this day, some Indians came on board from another part of the bay, where they faid there was a town which we had not feen: they brought plenty of fish, which they fold for nails, having now acquired fome notion of their use; and in this traffick no unfair practice was attempted.

1770. Friday 19.

In the morning of the 20th, our old man kept his promife. Saturday 204 and brought on board four of the heads of the feven people who had been so much the subject of our enquiries: the hair and flesh were entire, but we perceived that the brains had been extracted; the flesh was soft, but had by some method been preferved from putrefaction, for it had no difagreeable fmell. Mr. Banks purchased one of them, but they fold it with great reluctance, and could not by any means be prevailed upon to part with a fecond; probably they may be preserved as trophies, like the scalps in America, and the jaw-bones in the islands of the South Seas. Upon examining the head which had been bought by Mr. Banks, we perceived that it had received a blow upon the temples, which had fractured the skull. This day we made another excursion in the pinnace, to furvey the bay, but we found no flat large enough for a potatoe garden, nor could we discover the least appearance of cultivation: we met not a fingle Indian, but found an excellent harbour; and about eight o'clock in the evening returned on board the ship.

On the 21st, Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went a fishing standay at. with hook and line, and caught an immenfe quantity every where upon the rocks, in between four and five fathom water: the feine was hauled every night, and feldom failed

January. Sunday 21. to fupply the whole ship's company with as much fish as they could eat. This day all the people had leave to go on shore at the watering-place, and divert themselves as they should think proper.

Monday 22.

In the morning of the 22d, I fet out again in the pinnace, accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, with a defign to examine the head of the inlet, but after rowing about four or five leagues without fo much as coming in fight of it, the wind being contrary, and the day half spent, we went on shore on the south east side, to try what might be discovered from the hills.

Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander immediately employed themfelves in botanizing near the beach, and I, taking a feaman with me, afcended one of the hills: when I reached the fummit, I found a view of the inlet intercepted by hills, which in that direction rose still higher, and which wererendered inacceffible by impenetrable woods; I was, however, abundantly compensated for my labour, for I saw the fea on the eastern fide of the country, and a passage leading from it to that on the west, a little to the eastward of the entrance of the inlet where the ship now lay. The main land which lay on the fouth east fide of this inlet, appeared to be a narrow ridge of very high hills, and to form part of the fouth west side of the streight; the land on the opposite side. appeared to trend away east as far as the eye could reach; and to the fouth east there appeared to be an opening to the fea, which washed the eastern coast: on the east side of the inlet also I saw some islands which I had before taken to be part of the main land. Having made this discovery, I defcended the hill, and as foon as we had taken fome refreshment, we fet out on our return to the ship. In our way, we examined the harbours and coves which lie behind the iflands

islands that I had discovered from the hill; and in this rout we faw an old village, in which there were many houses that feemed to have been long deferted: we also faw another village which was inhabited, but the day was too far fpent for us to visit it, and we therefore made the best of our way to the ship, which we reached between eight and nine o'clock at night.

1770.

The 23d I employed in carrying on a furvey of the place; Tuefday 23. and upon one of the iflands where I landed, I faw many houses which seemed to have been long deserted, and no appearance of any inhabitant.

On the 24th, we went to visit our friends at the Hippah or Wednes. 24. village on the point of the island near the ship's station, who had come off to us on our first arrival in the bay. They received us with the utmost considence and civility, shewing us every part of their habitations, which were commodious and neat. The island or rock on which this town is fituated, is divided from the main by a breach or fiffure fo narrow, that a man might almost leap from one to the other: the sides of it are every where fo fleep as to render the artificial fortification of these people almost unnecessary: there was, however, one flight pallifade, and one fmall fighting-flage, towards that part of the rock where access was least difficult.

The people here brought us out feveral human bones, the flesh of which they had eaten, and offered them to fale; for the curiofity of those among us who had purchased them as memorials of the horrid practice which many, notwithstanding the reports of travellers, have professed not to believe, had rendered them a kind of article of trade. In one part of this village we observed, not without some surprize, a cross exactly like that of a crucifix; it was adorned with feathers,

January. Wedness, 24. and upon our enquiring for what purpose it had been set up, we were told that it was a monument for a man who was dead: we had before understood that their dead were not buried, but thrown into the sca; but to our enquiry how the body of the man had been disposed of, to whose memory this cross had been crested, they refused to answer.

When we left these people, we went to the other end of the island, and there taking water, crossed over to the main, where we saw several houses, but no inhabitants, except a few in some straggling canoes, that seemed to be sishing. After viewing this place, we returned on board the ship to dinner.

During our visit to the Indians this day, Tupia being always of our party, they had been observed to be continually talking of guns, and shooting people: for this subject of their conversation we could not at all account; and it had fo much engaged our attention, that we talked of it all the way back, and even after we got on board the ship: we had perplexed ourselves with various conjectures, which were all given up in their turn; but now we learnt, that on the 21st one of our officers, upon pretence of going out to fish, had rowed up to the Hippah, and that two or three canoescoming off towards his boat, his fears fuggefted that an attack was intended, in consequence of which three musketswere fired, one with fmall shot, and two with ball, at the Indians, who retired with the utmost precipitation, having probably come out with friendly intentions, for fuch their behaviour both before and afterwards expressed, and having no reason to expect such treatment from people who had always behaved to them not only with humanity, but kindnefs, and to whom they were not confcious of having given offence.

397

January.

On the 25th, I made another excursion along the coast, in the pinnace, towards the mouth of the inlet, accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, and going on fhore at a little cove, to shoot shaggs, we fell in with a large family of Indians, whose custom it is to disperse themselves among the different creeks and coves, where fill is to be procured in the greatest plenty, leaving a few only in the Hippah, to which the rest repair in times of danger. Some of these people came out a good way to meet us, and gave us an invitation to go with them to the rest of their party, which we readily accepted. We found a company of about thirty, men, women, and children; who received us with all poffible demonstrations of friendship: we distributed among them a few ribands and beads, and in return, received the kiffes and embraces of both fexes, both young and old: they gave us also some fish, and after a little time we returned. much pleased with our new acquaintance.

In the morning of the 26th, I went again out in the boat, Friday 26. with Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, and entered one of the bays, which lie on the east side of the inlet, in order to get another fight of the streight, which passed between the eaftern and western seas. For this purpose, having landed at a convenient place, we climbed a hill of very confiderable height, from which we had a full view of it, with the land on the opposite shore, which we judged to be about four leagues distant; but as it was hazey in the horizon, we could not fee far to the fouth east: I resolved however to fearch the passage with the ship, as soon as I should put to fea. Upon the top of this hill we found a parcel of loofe ftones, with which we erected a pyramid, and left in it fome musket balls, small shot, beads, and other things, which we happened to have about us, that were likely to fland the teft of time, and not being of Indian workmanship, would con-

January. Friday 26.

vince any European who should come to the place and pull it down, that other natives of Europe had been there before him. When this was done, we defcended the hill, and made a comfortable meal of the shaggs and fish which our guns and lines had procured us, and which were dreffed by the boat's crew in a place that we had appointed: in this place we found another Indian family, who received us, as usual with firong expressions of kindness and pleasure, shewing us where to procure water, and doing us fuch other good offices as were in their power. From this place we went to the town, of which the Indians had told us, who vifited us on the 10th: this, like that which we had feen before, was built upon a fmall island or rock, so difficult of access, that we gratified our curiofity at the rifk of our necks. The Indians here also received us with open arms, carried us to every part of the place, and shewed us all that it contained: this town, like the other, confifted of between eighty and an hundred houses, and had only one fighting-stage. We happened to have with us a few nails and ribands, and fome paper, with which our guests were so gratified, that at our coming away they filled our boat with dried fish, of which we perceived they had laid up great quantities.

Baturday 27. Sunday 28. The 27th and 28th were spent in resitting the ship for the sea, fixing a transom for the tiller, getting stones on board to put into the bottom of the bread-room, to bring the ship more by the stern, in repairing the casks, and catching sish.

Monday 29.

On the 29th, we received a vifit from our old man, whose name we found to be Topaa, and three other natives, with whom Tupia had much conversation. The old man told us, that one of the men who had been fired upon by the officer who had visited their Hippah, under pretence of fishing, was dead; but to my great comfort I afterwards discovered that this report was not true, and that if Topāa's discourses were

Monday 29.

399

taken literally, they would frequently lead us into mistakes. Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander were feveral times on fhore during the last two or three days, not without fuccess, but greatly circumscribed in their walks by climbers of a most luxuriant growth, which were fo interwoven together, as to fill up the space between the trees about which they grew, and render the woods altogether impassable. This day also I went on fhore again myfelf, upon the western point of the inlet, and from a hill of confiderable height, I had a view of the coast to the N. W. The farthest land I could see in that quarter, was an island which has been mentioned before, at the distance of about ten leagues, lying not far from the main: between this island and the place where I stood, I difcovered, close under the shore, several other islands, forming many bays, in which there appeared to be good anchorage for shipping. After I had set off the different points for my furvey, I erected another pile of flones, in which I left a piece of filver coin, with fome musket balls and beads. and a piece of an old pendant flying on the top. In my return to the ship, I made a visit to several of the natives. whom I faw along the shore, and purchased a small quantity of fish.

On the 30th, early in the morning, I fent a boat to one of Tuesday 200, the islands for celery, and while the people were gathering it, about twenty of the natives, men, women, and children, landed near fome empty huts: as foon as they were on fhore, five or fix of the women fat down upon the ground together, and began to cut their legs, arms, and faces, with shells, and sharp pieces of tale or jasper, in a terrible manner. Our people understood that their husbands had lately been killed by their enemies; but while they were performing this horrid ceremony, the men fet about repairing the huts, with the utmost negligence and unconcern.

January.
Tuefday 30.

The carpenter having prepared two posts to be left as memorials of our having vifited this place, I ordered them to be infcribed with the ship's name, and the year and month; one of them I fet up at the watering-place, hoisting the Union flag upon the top of it; and the other I carried over to the island that lies nearest to the sea, called by the natives Mo-TUARA. I went first to the village or Hippah, accompanied by Mr. Monkhouse and Tupia, where I met with our old man, and told him and feveral others, by means of Tupia, that we were come to fet up a mark upon the island, in order to fhow to any other ship which should happen to come thither. that we had been there before. To this they readily confented, and promifed that they never would pull it down: I then gave fomething to every one prefent; and to the old man I gave a filver threepence, dated 1736, and fome fpike nails, with the king's broad arrow cut deep upon-them; things which I thought most likely to remain long among them: I then took the post to the highest part of the island, and after fixing it firmly in the ground, I hoisted upon it the Union-flag, and honoured this inlet with the name of Queen CHARLOTTE'S SOUND, at the fame time taking formal poffession of this and the adjacent country, in the name and for the use of his Majesty King George the Third. We then drank a bottle of wine to her Majesty's health, and gave the bottle to the old man who had attended us up the hill, and who was mightily delighted with his prefent.

While the post was setting up, we enquired of the old man concerning the passage into the eastern sea, the existence of which he confirmed; and then asked him about the land to the S. W. of the streight, where we were then situated: this land, he said, consisted of two Whennuas or islands, which might be circumnavigated in a few days, and which he called Tovy Poenammoo; the literal translation of this word

is "the water of green tale:" and probably if we had underflood him better, we should have found that Tovy Poenammoo was the name of fome particular place where they got the green tale or stone of which they make their ornaments and tools, and not a general name for the whole fouthern diffrict: he faid, there was also a third Whennua, on the east side of the ftreight, the circumnavigation of which would take up many moons: this he called EAHEINOMAUWE; and to the land on the borders of the streight he gave the name of TIERA WITTE. Having fet up our post, and procured this intelligence, we returned on board the ship, and brought the old man with us, who was attended by his canoe, in which, after dinner, he returned home.

On the 31st, having completed our wooding, and filled all Wednes, 31. our water casks, 4 fent out two parties, one to cut and make brooms, and another to catch fish. In the evening, we had a ffrong gale from the N. W. with fuch a heavy rain that our little wild musicians on shore suspended their song, which till now we had conflantly heard during the night, with a pleafure which it was impossible to lose without regret.

On the 1st, the gale increased to a storm, with heavy gusts February. from the high land, one of which broke the hawfer, that we had fastened to the shore, and obliged us to let go another anchor. Towards midnight, the gale became more moderate, but the rain continued with fuch violence, that the brook which had fupplied us with water overflowed its banks, and carried away ten fmall casks which had been left there full of water, and notwithstanding we searched the whole cove, we could never recover one of them.

On the 3d, as I intended to fail the first opportunity, I went Saturday 3. wer to the Hippah on the east fide of the Sound, and purchased a considerable quantity of split and half-dried fish, for VOL. II. 3 F fca

February.
Saturday 3.

fea flores. The people here confirmed all that the old man had told us concerning the flreight and the country, and about noon I took leave of them: fome of them feemed to be forry, and others glad, that we were going: the fifth which I had bought they fold freely, but there were fome who shewed manifest signs of disapprobation. As we returned to the ship, some of us made an excursion along the shore to the northward, to traffick with the natives for a farther supply of fish; in which, however, they had no great success. In the evening, we got every thing off from the shore, as I intended to fail in the morning, but the wind would not permit.

Sunday 4.

Monday 5.

On the 4th, while we were waiting for a wind, we amused ourfelves by fifhing, and gathering shells and feeds of various kinds: and early in the morning of the 5th, we cast off the hawfer, hove fhort on the bower, and carried the kedge anchor out in order to warp the ship out of the cove, which having done about two o'clock in the afternoon, we hove up the anchor and got under fail; but the wind foon failing, we were obliged to come to an anchor again a little above Motuara. When we were under fail, our old man Topāa came on board to take his leave of us, and as we were still defirous of making farther enquiries whether any memory of Tafman had been preferved among these people. Tupia was directed to ask him whether he had ever heard that fuch a veffel as ours had before vifited the country. To this he replied in the negative, but faid, that his ancestors had told him there had once come to this place a fmall veffel, from a distant country, called ULIMAROA, in which were four men, who, upon their coming on shore, were all killed: upon being asked where this distant land lay, he pointed to the northward. Of Ulimaroa we had heard fomething before, from the people about the Bay of Islands, who

faid that their ancestors had visited it; and Tupia had also talked to us of Ulimaroa, concerning which he had fome confused traditionary notions, not very different from those of our old man, fo that we could draw no certain conclusion from the accounts of either.

Soon after the ship came to an anchor the second time, Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went on shore, to see if any gleanings of natural knowlege remained, and by accident fell in with the most agreeable Indian family they had feen, which afforded them a better opportunity of remarking the perfonal fubordination among these people, than had before offered. The principal perfons were a widow, and a pretty boy about ten years old: the widow was mourning for her husband with tears of blood, according to their custom, and the child, by the death of its father, was become proprietor of the land where we had cut our wood. The mother and the fon were fitting upon matts, and the rest of the family, to the number of fixteen or feventeen, of both fexes, fat round them in the open air, for they did not appear to have any house, or other shelter from the weather, the inclemencies of which, custom has probably enabled them to endure without any lasting inconvenience. Their whole behaviour was affable, obliging, and unfuspicious; they presented each person with fish, and a brand of fire to dress it, and pressed them many times to flay till the morning, which they would certainly have done if they had not expected the ship to fail, greatly regretting that they had not become acquainted with them fooner, as they made no doubt but that more knowlege of the manners and disposition of the inhabitants of this country would have been obtained from them in a day, than they had yet been able to acquire during our whole stay upon the coaft.

February.
Tuesday 6.

On the 6th, about fix o'clock in the morning, a light breeze fprung up at north, and we again got under fail, but the wind proving variable, we reached no farther than just without Motuara; in the afternoon, however, a more steady gale at N. by W. set us clear of the Sound, which I shall now describe.

The entrance of Queen Charlotte's Sound is fituated in Iatitude 41° S. longitude 184° 45' W. and near the middle of the fouth west side of the streight in which it lies. The land of the fouth east head of the Sound, called by the natives KOAMAROO, off which lie two finall islands and fome rocks, makes the narrowest part of the streight. From the north west head a reef of rocks runs out about two miles, in the direction of N. E. by N.; part of which is above the water; and part below. By this account of the heads, the Soundi will be fufficiently known: at the entrance, it is three leagues: broad, and lies in S.W. by S.S.W. and W.S.W. at least tenleagues, and is a collection of fome of the finest harbours in the world, as will appear from the plan, which is laid down with all the accuracy that time and circumstances would admit. The land forming the harbour or cove in which we lay, is called by the natives Totarranue: the harbour itself, which I called Ship Cove, is not inferior to any in the Sounds either for convenience or fafety: it lies on the west side of the Sound, and is the fouthermost of three coves, that are fituated within the island of Motuara, which bears east of it. Ship Cove may be entered, either between Motuara and a long island, called by the natives HAMOTE, or between Motuara and the western shore. In the last of these channels, are two ledges of rocks, three fathom under water, which may eafily be known by the fea-weed that grows upon them. In failing either in or out of the Sound, with little wind, attention

405

tention must be had to the tides, which slow about nine or ten o'clock at the full and change of the moon, and rise and fall between seven and eight feet perpendicularly. The slood comes in through the streight from the S. E. and sets strongly over upon the north west head, and the reef that lies off it: the ebb sets with still greater rapidity to the S. E. over upon the rocks and islands that lie off the south east head. The variation of the compass we found from good observation to be 13° 5′ E.

The land about this found, which is of fuch a height that we faw it at the distance of twenty leagues, confists wholly of high hills and deep vallies, well stored with a variety of excellent timber, fit for all purposes except masts, for which it is too hard and heavy. The sea abounds with a variety of sish, so that without going out of the cove where we lay, we caught every day, with the seine and hooks and lines, a quantity sufficient to serve the whole ship's company: and along the shore we found plenty of shags, and a few other species of wild-fowl, which those who have long lived upon falt provisions will not think despicable food.

The number of inhabitants fcarcely exceeds four hundred, and they live dispersed along the shores, where their foods consisting of fish and fern roots, is most easily procured; for we saw no cultivated ground. Upon any appearance of danger, they retire to their Hippahs, or forts; in this situation we found them, and in this situation they continued for some time after our arrival. In comparison of the inhabitants of other parts of this country, they are poor, and their canoes are without ornament: the little traffic we had with them was wholly for fish, and indeed they had scarcely any thing else to dispose of. They seemed, however, to have some knowlege of iron, which the inhabitants of some other parts

... 46

February.
Tuefday 6.

had not; for they willingly took nails for their fifth, and fometimes feemed to prefer it to every thing else that we could offer, which had not always been the case. They were at first very fond of paper; but when they found that it was spoiled by being wet, they would not take it: neither did they fet much value upon the cloth of Otaheite; but English broad cloth, and red kersey, were in high estimation; which shewed that they had sense enough to appretiate the commodities which we offered by their use, which is more than could be said of some of their neighbours, who made a much better appearance. Their dress has been mentioned already, particularly their large round head-dresses of feathers, which were far from being unbecoming.

As foon as we got out of the Sound, I flood over to the eastward, in order to get the streight well open before the tide of ebb came on. At feven in the evening, the two fmall islands which lie off Cape Koamaroo, the fouth east head of Queen Charlotte's Sound, bore east, distant about four miles: at this time it was nearly calm, and the tide of ebb fetting out, we were, in a very short time, carried by the rapidity of the stream close upon one of the islands, which was a rock rifing almost perpendicularly out of the fea: we perceived our danger increase every moment, and had but one expedient to prevent our being dashed to pieces, the fuccess of which a few minutes would determine. We were now within little more than a cable's length of the rock, and had more than feventy-five fathom water; but upon dropping an anchor, and veering about one hundred and fifty fathom of cable, the ship was happily brought up: this, however, would not have faved us, if the tide which fet S. by E. had not, upon meeting with the island, changed its direction to S. E. and carried us beyond the first point. fituation, we were not above two cables' length from the rocks;

0

407

rocks; and here we remained in the ftrength of the tide, which fet to the S. E. after the rate of at least five miles an hour, from a little after feven till near midnight, when the tide abated, and we began to heave. By three in the morn- Wednef. 7. ing the anchor was at the bows, and having a light breeze at N.W. we made fail for the eastern shore; but the tide being against us, we made but little way: the wind however afterwards freshened, and came to N. and N. E. with which, and the tide of ebb, we were in a fhort time hurried through the narrowest part of the streight, and then stood away for the fouthermost land we had in fight, which bore from us S. by W. Over this land appeared a mountain of stupendous height, which was covered with fnow.

The narrowest part of the streight, through which we had been driven with fuch rapidity, lies between Cape Tierawitte, on the coast of Eaheinomauwe, and Cape Koamaroo: the distance between them I judged to be between four or five leagues, and notwithstanding the tide, now its strength is known, may be passed without much danger. It is however fafest to keep on the north east shore, for on that side there appeared to be nothing to fear; but on the other shore there are not only the islands and rocks which lie off Cape Koamaroo, but a reef of rocks stretching from these islands fix or feven miles to the fouthward, at the distance of two or three miles from the shore, which I had discovered from the hill when I took my fecond view of the streight from the east to the western sea. The length of the streight we had paffed I shall not pretend to assign, but some judgment may be formed of it from a view of the chart.

About nine leagues north from Cape Tierawitte, and under the fame shore, is a high and remarkable island which may be distinctly seen from Queen Charlotte's Sound, from which February.
Wednes. 7.

which it is diffant about fix or feven leagues. This island, which was noticed when we passed it on the 14th of January, I have called ENTRY ISLE.

On the east side of Cape Tierawitte, the land trends away S. E. by E. about eight leagues, where it ends in a point, and is the southermost land on Eaheinomauwe. To this point I have given the name of Cape Palliser, in honour of my worthy friend Captain Palliser. It lies in latitude 41° 34′ S. longitude 183° 58′ W. and bore from us this day at noon S. 79 E. distant about thirteen leagues, the ship being then in the latitude of 41° 27′ S.; Koamaroo at the same time bearing N. ½ E. distant seven or eight leagues. The southermost land in sight bore S. 16 W. and the snowy mountain S. W. At this time we were about three leagues from the shore, and abreast of a deep bay or inlet, to which I gave the name of Cloudy Bay, and at the bottom of which there appeared low land covered with tall trees.

At three o'clock in the afternoon we were abreaft of the fouthermost point of land that we had seen at noon, which I called Cape Campbel; it lies S. by W. distant between twelve and thirteen leagues from Cape Koamaroo, in latitude 41° 44′ S. longitude 183° 45′ W.; and with Cape Palliser forms the southern entrance of the streight, the distance between them being between thirteen and source leagues W. by S. and E. by N.

From this Cape we fleered along the fhore S.W. by S. till eight o'clock in the evening, when the wind died away. About half an hour afterwards, however, a fresh breeze sprung up at S.W. and I put the ship right before it. My reason for this, was a notion which some of the officers had just started, that Eahienomauwe was not an island, and that the land might stretch away to the S.E. from between Cape

Turnagain

Turnagain and Cape Pallifer, there being a space of between twelve and fifteen leagues that we had not feen. I had indeed the ftrongest conviction that they were mistaken, not Wednes, 7. only from what I had feen the first time I discovered the flreight, but from many other concurrent testimonies that the land in question was an island; but being resolved to leave no possibility of doubt with respect to an object of such importance, I took the opportunity of the wind's shifting, to fland eaftward, and accordingly fleered N. E. by E. all the night. At nine o'clock in the morning we were abreaft of Thursday 8. Cape Palliser, and found the land trend away N. E. towards Cape Turnagain, which I reckoned to be distant about twentyfix leagues: however, as the weather was hazy, fo as to prevent our feeing above four or five leagues, I still kept flanding to the N. E. with a light breeze at fouth; and at noon Cape Pallifer bore N. 72 W. distant about three leagues.

About three o'clock in the afternoon, three canoes came up to the ship with between thirty and forty people on board, who had been pulling after us with great labour and perseverance for some time: they appeared to be more cleanly, and a better class, than any we had met with fince we left the Bay of Islands, and their canoes were also distinguished by the same ornaments which we had seen upon the northerly part of the coast. They came on board with very little invitation; and their behaviour was courteous and friendly: upon receiving presents from us, they made us presents in return, which had not been done by any of the natives that we had feen before. We foon perceived that our guests had heard of us, for as soon as they came on board, they asked for Whow, the name by which nails were known among the people with whom we had trafficked: but though they had heard of nails, it was plain they had feen 3 G Vol. II. none:

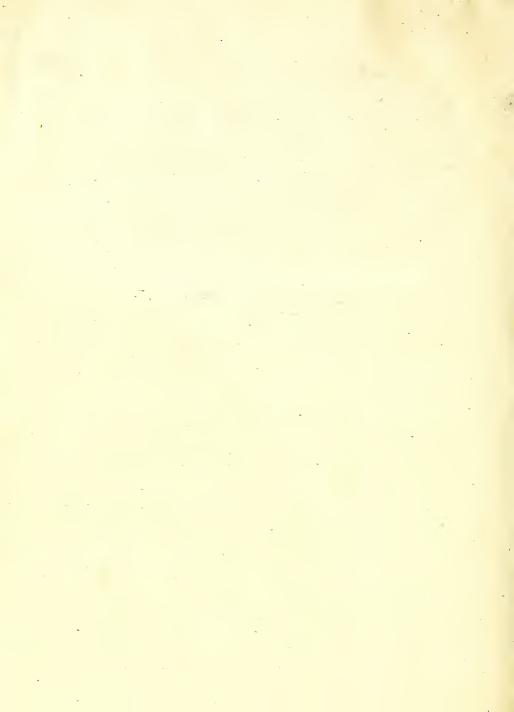
February.
Thursday 8.

none; for when nails were given them, they asked Tupia what they were. The term Whow, indeed, conveyed to them the idea not of their quality, but only of their use; for it is the fame by which they diffinguish a tool, commonly made of bone, which they use both as an augur and a chiffel. However, their knowing that we had Whow to fell, was a proof that their connections extended as far north as Cape Kidnappers, which was diffant no less than forty-five leagues; for that was the fouthermost place on this side the coast where we had had any traffic with the natives. It is also probable, that the little knowlege which the inhabitants of Oueen Charlotte's Sound had of iron, they obtained from their neighbours at Tierawitte; for we had no reason to think that the inhabitants of any part of this coast had the least knowlege of iron or its use before we came among them, especially as when it was first offered they seemed to disregard it as of no value. We thought it probable, that we were now once more in the territories of Teratu; but upon enquiring of these people, they faid that he was not their King. After a short time, they went away, much gratified with the presents that we had made them; and we pursued our course along the shore to the N. E. till eleven o'clock the next morning. About this time, the weather happening to clear up, we faw Cape Turnagain, bearing N. by E. . E. at the distance of about seven leagues: I then called the officers upon deck, and asked them, whether they were not now fatisfied, that Eahienomauwe was an ifland; they readily answered in the affirmative, and all doubts being now removed, we hauled our wind to the eastward.

Friday 9.

END OF THE SECOND VOLUME.







7609 Business Park Drive Greensboro, NC 27409 336-665-1317

Customer Name. The University of Pittsburgh
SWO#_13 183 Item #
Title: Hawkesworth Voyages V.2
TREATMENT PERFORMED TEXTBLOCK: Dry cleaned surface Removed tape w. Deacidified. aqueous/non-aqueous w. Encapsulated in polyester film Mended leaves/pages:
BINDING: Guarded sections: Resewn: Rebound: Rebound: Repared joints: Restored original binding Consolidated leather w. Housing Phase box Phase box Clamshell Portfolio Pamphlet Binder Polyester film jacket
Comments:
Date: April, 2004 Conservator. Stefani Hobbick

